



DA 750.B2 N0114



a31188000454062b

DA  
750  
B2  
no.114

Royal letters,  
charters, and tracts,  
relating to the  
colonization of New  
Scotland.

CALL No.

51376

DA  
750  
B2  
no.114

Royal letters, charters, and  
tracts, relating to the  
colonization of New Scotland.

THE LIBRARY



UNIVERSITY OF GUELPH  
Arts Division

Date due

96 09 04

KING PRESS NO. 303













ROYAL LETTERS,  
CHARTERS, AND TRACTS,

RELATING TO

THE COLONIZATION OF NEW SCOTLAND,

AND THE INSTITUTION OF

THE ORDER OF KNIGHT BARONETS OF NOVA SCOTIA.

1621—1638.



EDINBURGH: M.DCCC.LXVII.

PRINTED BY GEORGE ROBB (SUCCESSOR TO JOHN HUGHES) THISTLE STREET, EDINBURGH.

THE LIBRARY  
UNIVERSITY OF GUELPH

THE LIBRARY  
UNIVERSITY OF GUELPH

THIS VOLUME,  
CONTAINING TRACTS REPRINTED  
AT THE EXPENSE OF  
THE BANNATYNE CLUB,  
IS COMPLETED  
AND PRESENTED TO THE MEMBERS  
BY THE EDITOR.

THE BANNATYNE CLUB.

---

RIGHT HON. SIR WILLIAM GIBSON CRAIG, BART., LORD CLERK REGISTER.

THE MARQUESS OF DALHOUSIE, K.T.—(DECEASED.)

THE EARL OF DALHOUSIE, K.T.

GEORGE HOME DRUMMOND, Esq.

HENRY DRUMMOND, Esq., M.P.—(DECEASED.)

30 RIGHT HON. SIR DAVID DUNDAS.

GEORGE DUNDAS, Esq.

WILLIAM PITT DUNDAS, Esq.

THE EARL OF ELLESMERE, K.G.—(DECEASED.)

JOSEPH WALTER KING EYTON, Esq.

LIEUT.-COL. ROBERT FERGUSON.

SIR CHARLES DALRYMPLE FERGUSSON, BART.—(DECEASED.)

THE COUNT DE FLAHAULT.

THE EARL OF GOSFORD, K.P.—(DECEASED.)

WILLIAM GOTT, Esq.—(DECEASED.)

40 ROBERT GRAHAM, Esq.—(DECEASED.)

THE EARL OF HADDINGTON, K.T.—(DECEASED.)

THE DUKE OF HAMILTON AND BRANDON.—(DECEASED.)

SIR THOMAS BUCHAN HEPBURN, BART.

JAMES MAITLAND HOG, Esq.—(DECEASED.)

PROFESSOR COSMO INNES.

DAVID IRVING, LL.D.—(DECEASED.)

JAMES IVORY, Esq.—(DECEASED.)

DAVID LAING, Esq.—(*SECRETARY*.)

JOHN BAILEY LANGHORN, Esq.

50 THE EARL OF LAUDERDALE.—(DECEASED.)

VERY REV. PRINCIPAL JOHN LEE, D.D.—(DECEASED.)

THE LORD LINDSAY.

JAMES LOCH, Esq.—(DECEASED.)

THE MARQUESS OF LOTHIAN.

THE LORD LOVAT.

JAMES MACKENZIE, Esq.

JOHN WHITEFOORD MACKENZIE, Esq.

KEITH STEWART MACKENZIE, Esq.

WILLIAM FORBES MACKENZIE, Esq.—(DECEASED.)



THE BANNATYNE CLUB.

---

60 JAMES MAIDMENT, Esq.

SIR WILLIAM MAXWELL, BART.

THE VISCOUNT MELVILLE.—(DECEASED.)

THE HON. WILLIAM LESLIE MELVILLE.—(DECEASED.)

THE EARL OF MINTO, G.C.B.—(DECEASED.)

JAMES MONCREIFF, Esq.

JAMES PATRICK MUIRHEAD, Esq.

HON. SIR JOHN A. MURRAY, LORD MURRAY.—(DECEASED.)

ROBERT NASMYTH, Esq.

HON. CHARLES NEAVES, LORD NEAVES.

70 THE EARL OF NORTHESK.

ALEXANDER PRINGLE, Esq.—(DECEASED.)

JOHN RICHARDSON, Esq.—(DECEASED.)

THE DUKE OF ROXBURGHE, K.T.

REV. HEW SCOTT, D.D.

JAMES ROBERT HOPE SCOTT, Esq.

THE EARL OF SELKIRK.

PROFESSOR SIR JAMES YOUNG SIMPSON, BART., M.D.

ALEXANDER SINCLAIR, Esq.

JAMES SKENE, Esq.—(DECEASED.)

80 WILLIAM SMYTHE, Esq.

JOHN SPOTTISWOODE, Esq.—(DECEASED.)

EDWARD STANLEY, Esq.

PROFESSOR WILLIAM STEVENSON, D.D.

THE HON. CHARLES FRANCIS STUART.—(DECEASED.)

THE DUKE OF SUTHERLAND, K.G.—(DECEASED.)

ARCHIBALD CAMPBELL SWINTON, Esq.

ALEXANDER THOMSON, Esq.

SIR WALTER CALVERLY TREVELYAN, BART.

ADAM URQUHART, Esq.—(DECEASED.)

90 ALEXANDER MACONCHIE WELWOOD, Esq.—(DECEASED.)

---

THE BANNATYNE CLUB.

---

LIBRARIES.

THE BRITISH MUSEUM.

THE SOCIETY OF LINCOLN'S INN, LONDON.

THE FACULTY OF ADVOCATES, EDINBURGH.

THE SOCIETY OF ANTIQUARIES OF SCOTLAND.

THE SOCIETY OF WRITERS TO H. M. SIGNET, EDINBURGH.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE.

THE UNIVERSITY OF EDINBURGH.

THE UNIVERSITY OF GLASGOW.

TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN.

100 THE SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION, WASHINGTON, UNITED STATES.

---

THE ABBOTSFORD LIBRARY.

THE ROYAL LIBRARY, BERLIN.

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE
PREFACE, with ROYAL LETTERS, ACTS OF PRIVY COUNCIL, &c., 1621-1636,—	
I. Captain JOHN MASON . . . . .	3
II. THE KING'S PATENT FOR THE PLANTATION OF NEW SCOTLAND, 1621	8
III. Sir WILLIAM ALEXANDER OF MENSTRIE . . . . .	9
IV. Sir ROBERT GORDON OF LOCHINVAR . . . . .	102
V. JOHN BURNETT OF ABERDEEN, 1638 . . . . .	111
VI. NOVA SCOTIA PAPERS SUBSEQUENT TO 1640 . . . . .	112
VII. ROLL OF THE KNIGHT BARONETS OF NOVA SCOTIA, FROM 1625 to 1638	116
 CHARTERS UNDER THE GREAT SEAL OF SCOTLAND, &c., 1621-1628,—	
I. Carta Dom. WILL. ALEXANDER Equitis Dominii et Baronie Novæ Scotie in America, 10 Sept. 1621 . . . . .	3
II. Carta Dom. ROBERTI GORDON de Lochinvar Militis Baronie de Galloway in Nova Scotia, 8 Nov. 1621 . . . . .	16
III. Carta Dom. WILL. ALEXANDER Militis Dominii Novæ Scotiæ, 12 Julij 1625 . . . . .	27
IV. Carta Dom. WILL. ALEXANDER Militis de Dominio Canadæ, &c., 2 Febr. 1628 . . . . .	46

## TRACTS,—

- I. A BRIEF DISCOURSE OF THE NEW-FOUND-LAND. By Captain JOHN MASON. Edinburgh, 1620, seven leaves.
- II. NOVA SCOTIA, THE KING'S PATENT TO SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER, Knight, FOR THE PLANTATION OF NEW SCOTLAND, IN AMERICA, AND HIS PROCEEDINGS THEREIN. London, 1625, five leaves.
- III. AN ENCOURAGEMENT TO COLONIES. By Sir WILLIAM ALEXANDER, Knight. London, 1624, twenty-seven leaves.  
Title-page of the same Tract re-issued, as "The Mapp, and Description of New England." London, 1630, one leaf.
- IV. ENCOURAGEMENTS FOR NEW GALLOWAY, IN AMERICA. By [Sir ROBERT GORDON of] LOCHINVAR. Edinburgh, 1625, fifteen leaves.

## P R E F A C E .

---

THE Tracts contained in the present volume relate to the earliest attempts made in Scotland for the establishment of Colonies in North America. It is several years since they were reprinted for the Bannatyne Club. They were not circulated at the time, as it was proposed that the volume should embrace an extensive series of Original Letters and other documents, not only in connexion with this subject, but more especially with the institution of the Order of Knights Barons of Nova Scotia. This hereditary dignity, it is well known, had its origin in having been engrafted upon the schemes of colonization which were projected in this kingdom by Sir William Alexander in the year 1621.

After collecting from the public Records, and from Sir William Alexander's Register of Letters while Secretary of State for Scotland, and other sources, the chief materials for this portion of the intended volume, its completion was deferred, partly in the expectation that some important documents might be obtained from originals deposited in H.M. State Paper Office. But when in London in 1853, I was informed that the permission which the Home Secretary had previously granted, and which enabled me, as occasion offered, to examine and transcribe papers relating to Scotland during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, did not include such as were classed under the Colonial Department. I had therefore to make a special application to the Foreign Office, but after explaining the

object in view, as it was deemed inexpedient, from particular circumstances, to allow these papers to be examined or printed, the application was accordingly withdrawn. Since that time, these early Colonial Papers have been transferred to the Public Record Office, and are now of easy access for historical purposes, through the liberal arrangements sanctioned by the Master of the Rolls, besides the advantage of having an elaborate Calendar of them in a printed form.<sup>1</sup>

I afterwards obtained for the Club transcripts of such papers from this great repository as seemed to be particularly suited for the present volume. But my hands being full of other work for the Club when it was drawing to a termination, this particular volume it was thought might be reserved for the last of the series, to be completed either in a larger or in a more restricted form, according to the means that should remain at the disposal of the Committee. Latterly, it became sufficiently evident that there would be no surplus funds to carry out the original design to its full extent. Had it even been otherwise, the anxious desire to bring the affairs of the Club to a speedy close would have kept me from interposing any protracted delay in completing the volume. I have, however, along with notices of the authors of the Tracts, given a very copious selection of all the original letters, and Acts of Privy Council which appeared to be of importance, without enlarging either on the subject of Nova Scotia Baronets, or attempting to prepare any detailed account of this unsuccessful episode of Scottish enterprise.

DAVID LAING.

*October 1866.*

<sup>1</sup> Calendar of State Papers, Colonial Series, 1574-1660, preserved in the State Paper Department of Her Majesty's Public Record Office. Edited by W. Noël Sainsbury. Lond. 1860, royal 8vo.

## I.—CAPTAIN JOHN MASON.

JOHN CABOTO, a Venetian, resident in Bristol, and his three sons, obtained from Henry the Seventh of England letters patent, dated 5th March 1496, for a voyage of discovery, and they reached the island of Newfoundland, 24th June 1497. A second patent, dated 3d February 1498, specially refers to "the Lande and Isles" late found by the said John,<sup>1</sup> he having reached the continent of North America, sailing from the confines of Labrador to the coast of Virginia, twelve months before Columbus, in his third voyage, by landing on the South American continent, had completed his own great discovery. Nearly a century later Sir Humphrey Gilbert, with a comprehensive patent granted by Queen Elizabeth, took possession of Newfoundland; and various settlements were attempted at subsequent times, among others, by Alderman Guy of Bristol in 1610, by Captain Whitbourne in 1615, by William Vaughan, and by Captain Mason, and others. John Guy was governor of the English colony there, and remained with his family for two years. Purchase, in his *Pilgrimes*, inserts the chief part of a patent granted by King James for New-found-land, together with a letter from Guy, to the Council of the New-found-land Plantation, dated at Cuper's Cove, 16th May 1611.<sup>2</sup>

But the person who was most successful in directing the attention of the people of England to this settlement was Captain Richard Whitbourne of Exmouth. He states that he became an adventurer into foreign countries at fifteen years of age, was captain of a vessel of his own in 1588, and rendered good service at the time of the Spanish invasion. Having been employed more than forty years in making voyages to and from the island, he says, as "for the Newfoundland, it is almost so familiarly known to me as my owne contrey." He was

<sup>1</sup> See Biddle's *Life of SEBASTIAN CABOT* (one of the sons), to whom he assigns the honour of this discovery, compared with Bancroft's *Hist. of the United States*, vol. i. p. 9.

<sup>2</sup> Vol. iv. p. 1876. Lond. 1625, folio.

the author of "A Discourse and Discovery of Newfoundland," Lond., 1620, 4to., "A Discourse, containing a loving Invitation," &c., Lond., 1622, 4to., and a republication of both, with alterations and additions, in the same year. In a letter addressed to George Duke of Buckingham, in 1626, Whitbourne states that his "Large Discourse" had been presented to King James, and that his Majesty had ordered it to be printed, and distributed in every parish throughout England, to shew the benefits of settling a plantation in Newfoundland.<sup>1</sup>

CAPTAIN JOHN MASON, on the other hand, addressed himself to his friends in Scotland, and his account of Newfoundland may have largely influenced the proposed schemes for founding colonies on the continent, in Nova Scotia. He seems to have been a native of England, but his name first occurs in the years 1610 and 1611, when engaged on the west coast of Scotland, along with Andrew Knox, Bishop of the Isles,<sup>2</sup> in attempting to curb the restless and predatory disposition of the islanders. In this enterprise Captain Mason was employed for fourteen months, and must have possessed means to have incurred considerable expense, amounting to £2,238 sterling, which still remained due in 1629, as we learn from the subjoined Declaration.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, Sainsbury's Calendar, p. 82.

<sup>2</sup> Bishop Knox had received, in 1609, a commission for life as Steward and Justice of all the North and West Isles of Scotland. A brief account of his proceedings at this time is given in Donald Gregory's *History of the Western Highlands and Isles of Scotland*, from A.D. 1493 to A.D. 1625. Edinb. 1836, 8vo.

<sup>3</sup> "TO THE KINGES MOST EXCELLENT MA<sup>TIE</sup>.—The humble Declaracion of Capt. JOHN MASON Treasurer for your Ma<sup>ties</sup> Army, concerning his service flowerteene Monethes in the Redshankes Islandes

"Humbly sheweth That having in the yeares 1610 and 1611 bin ymployed by the especial order of his late Ma<sup>tie</sup> yor ffather of famons memory, gevin at Thetford, for furnishing and setting forth of Two Shippes of Warr and Two Pynnasses to attend his Ma<sup>ties</sup> service conioyntly with Mr Andrew Knox, then Bishopp of the Isles, for subduing of the then rebellious Redshankes in the Hebrides Ilandes, and for settling the Lawes of the Realme of Scotland there; which accordingly tooke good effect. In which ymployment the said Capt. John Mason was engaged personally w<sup>th</sup> his said Two shippes and Two pynnasses and flowterscore Marriners, besides certaine Gentlemen volunteers, in warlike manner, furnished by the space of flowerteene monethes, vppon an Aggreement made by the Earle of Dunbarr then Lord Chancellour and Thesaurer of Scotland in his Ma<sup>ties</sup> name, to pay the whole freight, victualls, and wages, and other charges of the Expedition. Bnt the said Earle dying ere the voyage fynished and noe course by him taken for satisfacion, the said Capt. John Mason was enforced to discharge the whole debt,



Being of an active enterprising disposition, Mason, who was for some time governor of Newfoundland, undertook a careful survey of the island. In a letter addressed "To the right worshipfull Mr John Scot of Scottisterbatt, in Scotland, Director to His Majesties Court of Chancery there, at his house on the Cawsey of Edenborough," he promises to send him some account of his discoveries. The letter is dated "from the plantacion of Cuper's Cove in Terra Nova. ult. Augusti 1617."<sup>1</sup> After alluding to the various hindrances to his duty, he expresses the hope that "I shall affoord you a Mapp thereof (Newfoundland), with a particular relacon of their severall parts, natures, and qualities." He then continues,—"I am now a setting my foote into that path where I ended last, to discover to the westward of this land; and for two months absence, I have fittid myselve with a small new galley of 15 tonnes, and to rowe with fourteen oares (having lost our former). We shall visite the naturalls (natives) of the country, with whom I purpose to trade, and thereafter shall give you a tast of the event, hoping that withall *Terra nova* will produce *Dona nova*, to manifest our gratificacion. Untill which tyme, I rest and shall remayne *tuus dum suus*, JOHN MASON."

The "Brief Discourse" which Mason sent to Sir John Scot was

viz. Two Thowsand Two hundred thirty and eight poundes. An Accompt whereof particularly drawn vpp, he then offered to your Matys ffather with a certificate also vnder the handes of the Bishopp of the Isles and other Lords Temporall of his good services done, by many yet justifiable. Wherevpon was delivered vnto him, his Matys letter to the Earle of Dumfermlin then the Lord Chancellor and to the Lordes of the Councell of Scotland for passing of a grant of the King's Assise Herring due from all the fishing Shippes and Boates on those coastes, to the said Capt. John Mason; who forthwith receaved commission therefore, and made collection of some part of the same in anno 1611. But vppon the marriage of the Queene of Bohemia the States Ambassador after congratulacion of the said marriage, and presents delivered, made suit to the King for a Remission of the Payments of the said Assise Herring due by their Nation; which was granted to the disannulling of the said Capt. John Mason his whole interest therein, who never since receaved one penny towards recompence, saving onely a promise of certain Lands in Ireland, which tooke noe effect. Your Maties most humble and obedient Servant JOHN MASON."

There is annexed "An Accompt for the Interest" due on the principal sum of £2,238, for nineteen years, at the rate of 10 per cent, which, with the accumnulations, reached, in 1629, to the large sum of £12,489, 7s. sterling; which probably he never received.—State Paper Office, Scotland, 1625-1638.

<sup>1</sup> Epistolæ Virorum Doct. ad Jo. Scot. &c. MS. (Advocates Library).

published by the latter at Edinburgh in 1620. The original tract, now reprinted, consists of seven leaves, and is so rare, that only three copies are known to be preserved.

It is not necessary to trace Captain Mason's subsequent history. At a later time he is styled "Vice-President of the Council for and Vice-Admiral of New England." He was alive in 1639. Several grants and papers relating to him among the Colonial Papers are described by Mr Sainsbury in his Calendar. One of these is a protest of Joseph Mason on behalf of Ann, widow of Captain John Mason, with respect to her lands in New England, July 4th, 1651.

In 1628 there appeared a quaint bombastic work, entitled "Quodlibets, lately come over from New Britaniola, Old Newfoundland. Epigrams and other small parcels, both morall and divine. . . . All of them composed and done at Harbor-Grace, in Britaniola, anciently called Newfound-Land. By R. H. (Robert Hayman), sometimes Gouverneur of the Plantation there." London, 1628, 4to. One portion the author dedicates "To the far admired, admirably fair, vertuous, and witty Beauties of England." His lines addressed to Captain Mason, and to Sir William Alexander, may be quoted.

THE SECOND BOOKE OF R. HAYMAN'S QUODLIBETS, p. 31.

79. *The foure Elements in Newfound-land. To the Worshipfull Captaine John Mason, who did wisely and worthily governe there divers yeeres.*

The Aire, in Newfound-Land is wholesome, good,  
 The Fire, as sweet as any made of wood;  
 The Waters, very rich, both salt and fresh;  
 The Earth more rich, you know it is no lesse.  
 Where all are good, *Fire, Water, Earth, and Aire,*  
 What man made of these foure would not live there?

80. *To all those worthy Women, who have any desire to live in Newfound-Land, specially to the modest and discreet Gentlewoman Mistress Mason, wife to Captaine Mason, who lived there divers yeeres.*

Sweet Creatures, did you truly understand  
 The pleasant life you'd live in Newfound-land,  
 You would with *teares* desire to be brought thither:  
 I wish you, when you goe, faire wind, faire weather:  
 For if you with the passage can dispence,  
 When you are there, I know you'll ne'er come thence.

95. *To the right Honorable Knight, Sir William Alexander, Principall and prime Planter in New Scotland: To whom the King hath giuen a Royall gift to defray his great charges in that worthy busines.*—P. 35.

Great Alexander wept, and made sad mone,  
 Because there was but one World to be wonne.  
 It ioyes my heart, when such wise men as you,  
 Conquer new Worlds which that *Youth* neuer knew.  
 The King of Kings assist, blesse you from Heauen;  
 For our King hath you wise assistance giuen.  
 Wisely our King did aide on you bestow:  
 Wise are all Kings who all their gifts giue so.  
 'Tis well giuen, that is giuen to such a One,  
 For seruice done, or seruice to be done.  
 By all that know you, 'tis well understood,  
 You will dispend it for your Conntries good.  
     Old *Scotland* you made happy by your birth,  
     *New-Scotland* you will make a happy earth.

96. *To the same Wise, Learned, Religious Patriot, most excellent Poet.*

You are a *Poet*, better ther's not any,  
 You have one super-vertue 'mongst your many;  
 I wish I were your equall in the one,  
 And in the other your Companion.  
     With one I'd giue you your deserued dne,  
     And with the other, serue and follow you.

Hayman addresses verses to other persons connected with New Foundland, such as:—"To the right worthy, learned, and wise Master William Vaughan, chief Vndertaker for the Plantation in Cambrioll, the Southermost part of Newfound-Land, who with penne, purse, and person hath, and will proue the worthines of that enterprise." Also, "To the same industrious Gentleman, who, in his *Golden-Fleece*, styles himself Orpheus Junior."

Among the persons who had undertaken to plant large circuits in the southern part of "the island, commonly called the Newfoundland," was this William Vaughan of Tarracod, in the county of Carmarthen, Doctor of the Civil Law. Under the assumed name of Orpheus Junior, he published at London, in 1626, a fantastic work, entitled "*The Golden Fleece* . . . . Transported from Cambrioll Colchos, out of the southernmost part of the island, commonly called the Newfoundland, by

Orpheus Junior, for the general and perpetuall good of Great Britains." London, 1626, 4to. He mentions in terms of high commendation Captain Mason, Sir William Alexander, and other adventurers; and gives an engraved map of the Island, by Captain Mason (of which an accurate facsimile accompanies this reprint of Mason's Tract, 1620). But it forms no part of the design of the present collection to enlarge on the history of Newfoundland, and its great importance to this country for the fisheries and navigation.<sup>1</sup>

## II.—THE KING'S PATEN FOR THE PLANTATION OF NEW SCOTLAND, 10th September 1621.

This Patent or Charter is printed at full length, in a subsequent part of this volume, from the Great Seal Register. The abridged extract, contained in the well known and valuable work Purchase's Pilgrimes,<sup>2</sup> is given on account of the information which is added in regard to the proceedings for the Plantation. It is here accompanied with an extract from a rare tract, published at London in 1622 by the President and Council of New England.

<sup>1</sup> Copies of the following early tracts are preserved in the British Museum. For this note, I am indebted to the kindness of W. C. Hazlitt, Esq.

1. A Letter written by Captaine Edward Winne, to the Right Honourable, Sir *George Calvert*, Knight, his Maesties Principall Secretary: From *Ferryland* in *Newfoundland*, the 26 of August, 1621. Imprinted MDCXXI. Sm. 8vo. 12 leaves. . . Includes a 2d Letter not mentioned on the title: Another Letter of the 28 of August, from the said Captaine *Winne*, unto Master Secretary *Calvert*. This occupies the 11th and 12th leaves.

2. A Letter from Captaine *Edward Wynne*, *Gouverneur of the Colony* at *Ferryland*, within the Province of *Analon*, in *Newfound-land*, unto the Right Honourable Sir *George Calvert* Knight, his Maesties Principall Secretary. July, 1621. 4to. 9 leaves. . . Includes Letters to Calvert from Capt. Dan. Powell, and Capt. Wynne [17 Aug. 1622] and even from N. H. a Gentleman living at *Ferryland* to his friend W. P. 18 Aug. 1622. There is no regular title, but the above headline occurs on Sign. A. The last leaf is marked C.

3. A Short Discourse of the New-Fovnd-Land: containi[n]g Diverse Reasons and inducements, for the planting of that *Countray*. Published for the satisfaction of all such as shall be willing to be *Adventurers* in the said *Plantatioun*. Dyblin, Printed by the Societie of Stationers. M.D.C. xxiii. 4to. 14 leaves. . . Dedicated by T. C. to "The Right Honovrable Henry Lo: Cary, Viscount of Falkland," &c.

<sup>2</sup> Vol. iv. p. 1871.

## III.—SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER OF MENSTRIE.

SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER of Menstrie, Viscount and afterwards EARL OF STIRLING, is usually said to have been born in 1580.<sup>1</sup> It is more likely that it was two or three years earlier. Some persons would trace his descent from Alexander or Allister, or Mackallister, whose progenitor was Donald, King of the Isles, son of Reginald, King of Man and the Isles.<sup>2</sup> This has a magniloquent sound, and suits the style of peerage writers, but no proof has or can be adduced to confirm it. Alexander Alschinder (as the name Alexander was frequently written during the sixteenth century) was the son of Andrew Alexander of Menstrie, and Catherine Graham. He, with Elizabeth Douglas, his spouse, and Andrew, their son and apparent heir, had two charters from Colin, Earl of Argyle, of part of the barony of Menstrie, in 1529, confirmed under the Great Seal, 20th April 1530.<sup>3</sup> He died in 1545.

Andrew Alexander, mentioned in these charters, predeceased his father. His wife's name is not recorded; but we may infer from what follows that she was the daughter of Alane Coutis.

Alexander Alschinder of the Mains of Menstrie appears as a witness, along with his grandfather, of the same name, in a seisin dated 19th April 1541. Instead of surviving till 1594, as stated in Douglas' Peerage, his death occurred on the 10th of February 1580-1. His last will was confirmed by the Commissaries of Edinburgh on the 24th of May 1581.<sup>4</sup> Five days before his decease he nominated James Alexander, his father's brother, John Alexander of Pitgogar, and Elizabeth Alexander, relict

<sup>1</sup> Marshall's portrait, rarely found in the copies of the Earl's "Recreations with the Muses," Lond., 1637 (see frontispiece to the present volume), represents the Earl of Stirling ætatis sue lvii.; but it is not certain that 1637 was the actual date of the engraving.

<sup>2</sup> See Buchanan of Auchmar's Highland Clans, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Regist. Magni Sigilli, Lib. xxiii. No. 196.

<sup>4</sup> Edinburgh Commiss. Confirmed Instruments, vol. ix.

of umquhile John Leicheman, burges of Striveling, his executors ; also his gude Lord and maister Coline, Earl of Argyle, and Alane Coutis, his guidsehir (maternal grandfather), as oversmen ; at the same time he constituted the said James Alschinder to be " tutor-testamentar to his bairnes, to wait thairupon for putting of his roomes and gudis to proffit for the sustentation of his bairnes, and uphald of the hous to thame, and putting of thair geir to proffit quhill thair perfyte aige," &c. ; or, failing his acceptance of this trust, John Alexander of Pitgogar, who seems to have undertaken it. In the list of debts awand be the said Alexander Alschinder of Menstrie there was one to my Lord of Argyle, maister of the ground, in anno 1580, 24 bolls of wheat, at £4 the boll ; 24 bolls of bear, at £3, 6s. 8d. ; and 24 bolls of meal, at £2, 10s. 6d. ; and to Margaret Alschinder, his sister, 100 merkis. The names of the children are unfortunately not given, and no mention being made of his wife, she had most likely predeceased him.

No particulars are recorded of Sir William's early history and education. He probably studied at St Andrews, without remaining to take his degree of Master of Arts. Sir John Scot states, "that he travelled through Italy and France with his Lord superior the Earl of Argyle, where he attained to the French and Italian languages."<sup>1</sup> This must have been Archibald seventh Earl of Argyle, born in 1576 ; and we may suppose that their visit to the Continent was before the close of that century. His first appearance as an author was in 1603, having published at Edinburgh "The Tragedie of Darius. By William Alexander of Menstrie ;" and, addressing the Reader, he says, "I present to thy favourable viewe and censure the first essay of my rude and unskilfull Muse in a Tragicall poem." It was dedicated "To the most excellent, high, and mightie Prince James the 6. King of Scots, my dreade Sovereigne :"

Whose Sacred brow a twofolde laurell beares,  
To whom Apollo his owne harpe resignes,  
And everlasting Trophies vertue reares.

In the following year Alexander published, at London, "Aurora, containing the first fancies of the Author's youth," being a collection of Love

<sup>1</sup> Scot's Staggering State of Scots Statesmen.

Sonnets, Sextains, &c., dedicated to the Lady Agnes Dowglas, Countesse of Argyle. At the same time his *Darius*, somewhat polished in its style, was reprinted, with the dedication "To His Sacred Majestic," amplified from three eight-line stanzas to thirteen stanzas. His tragedy of *Cræsus* was joined to this republication, along with his, "*Paraenesis to the Prince*. In 1607, these and his other tragedies, in rhyme, the *Alexandriean*, and *Julius Cæsar*, formed one volume, with a general title, "*THE MONARCHICKE TRAGEDIES, &c., Newly enlarged*." In a complimentary sonnet to the author, Sir Robert Aytoun, in reference to this title, says,—

The worthiest Monarch that the sunne can see,  
Doth grace thy labours with his glorious Name,  
And daignes Protector of thy birth to be:  
Thus all Monarchick, patron, subject, stile  
Make thee the Monarch-tragick of this Isle.

But leaving his tragedies, and other poetical works, it may be noticed, that like many of his countrymen, Alexander had followed James to London, to seek preferment at Court, and was appointed Gentleman of the Prince's Privy Chamber. Before Prince Henry's untimely death, in November 1612,<sup>1</sup> he appears to have obtained the honour of knight-hood; and shortly afterwards the King made him Master of Requests for Scotland.

During his residence at Court, Sir William, who could not be ignorant of the English settlements in Virginia or New England, of the French possessions in Acadie or Canada, and of the great importance of Newfoundland for its fisheries, was led to contemplate the advantages of an intermediate settlement on the same coast. In this, he says, "being much encouraged heereunto by Sir Ferdinando Gorge, and some others of the undertakers for New England, I shew them that my countrymen would never adventure in such an enterprize, unless it were as there was a New France, a New Spaine, and a New England, that they might likewise have a New Scotland." Having thus resolved to embark in colonial adventure, with a due regard to his personal dignity and pecu-

<sup>1</sup> The date usually given is 1614. But on the title page of "*An Elegie on the death of Prince Henrie*," Edinburgh, 1612, 4to, his name occurs signed as "*Sr. William Alexander of Menstrie, Gentleman of his Privie Chamber*," and, at the end, "*S. W. A.*"



niary interests, he had no difficulty in obtaining from King James a grant of a large and extensive territory on the mainland, to the East of the river St Croix, and South of the St Lawrence, "lying between our colonies of New England and Newfoundland," as a foreign plantation. On this subject the King addressed the following important letter to the Lord Chancellor and the members of the Privy Council of Scotland, which is here given from the original,<sup>1</sup> and is probably now first printed.

JAMES R.

1621.  
August 5.

RIGHT trusty and welbeloued Cosens and Counsellours and right trusty and welbeloued Counsellours Wee greete you well. Haueing euer beene ready to embrace anie good occasion whereby the hono<sup>r</sup> or proffete of that our Kingdome might be advanced, and considering that no kynd of conquest can be more easie and innocent than that which doth proceede from Plantationes specially in a countrey commodious for men to live in yet remayneing altogether desert or at least onely inhabited by Infidells the conversion of whom to the Christian fayth (intended by this meanes) might tend much to the glory of God; Since sundry other Kingdomes as likewyse this our Kingdome of late, vertuously aduentring in this kynd haue renued their names, imposeing them thus vpon new lands, considering (prayed to God) how populous that our kingdome is at this present and what necessity there is of some good meanes wherby ydle people might be employed preventing worse courses Wee think there are manie that might be spared who maie be fitt for such a forraigne Plantation being of mynds as resolute and of bodyes as able to overcome the difficulties that such aduenturers must at first encounter with as anie other Nation whatsoever, and such an enterprise is the more fitt for that our kingdome that it doth craue the transportation of nothing from thence, but only men, women, cattle, and victuals, and not of money, and maie giue a good returne of other commodities affording the meanes of a new trade at this tyme when traffique is so much decayed. For the causes abouespecifeit Wee haue the more willingly harkened to a motion made vnto vs by o<sup>r</sup> trusty and welbeloued Counsellour SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER knight who hath a purpose to procure a forraigne Plantation haueing made choice of lands lying betweene our Colonies of New England and Newfoundland both the Gouvernours whereof haue encouraged him thereunto, therefore that he and such as will vndertake with him by getting of good security maie be the better enabled hereunto Our pleasure is that after due consideratione if you finde this course as Wee haue conceaued it to be for the

<sup>1</sup> Royal Letters, 1607-1624, General Register House.



good of that our Kingdome That yow graunt vnto the sayd Sir William his heires and assignes or to anie other that will joyne with him in the whole or in any part thereof a Signatour vnder our Great Seale of the sayd lands lying betweene New England and Newfoundland as he shall designe them particularely vnto yow To be holden of vs from our kingdome of Scotland as a part thereof united therewith by anie such tenure and as freely as yow shall finde vs to haue formerly granted in the like case here, or that yow shall think fitt for the good of the sayd plantation with as great priuiledges and fauours for his and their benefite both by sea and land, and with as much power to him and his heires and their deputyes to inhabite, gouerne, and dispose of the sayds lands, as hath at anie tyme bene graunted by vs heretofore to anie of our subjects whatsoeuer for anie forraigne plantation or that hath benee graunted by anie Christian prince of anie other kingdome for the like cause in giueing authority power benefite or hono<sup>r</sup> within the bounds to be plaunted to them or by warranting them to conferre the like vpon any particular enterpriser there who shall deserue the samen, adding any further conditiones for the furtherance hereof as yow shall think requisite and that the said Signatour be past and exped with all expedition And likewise Our pleasure is that yow giue all the lawfull ayde that can be afforded for furthering of this enterprise which Wee will esteeme as good seruice done to vs for doing whereof these presents shall be your warrant from Our Court at Beauer the 5th of August 1621.

(Indorsed)—

To our Right trusty and welbeloued Cosen and Counsellour The Earle of Dumfermling oure Chancellour of Scotland And to our right trusty and welbeloued Counsellours The remanent Earles Lords and others of our Priuy Councell of our sayd Kingdome.

Proceeding on this authority, the royal warrant or signature for a charter was accordingly prepared, and signed by the King, at Our Castle of Windsor, on the 10th September 1621, and the charter under the Great Seal was duly passed and registered on the 29th of that month, as printed in this collection. Sir William Alexander in this charter is alleged, somewhat gratuitously, to have been the first of our subjects who, at his own expense, endeavoured to plant this foreign colony, on the lands which it describes, while the privileges and liberties conferred on him as the King's hereditary lieutenant-general were almost unlimited. In making this grant the fact was overlooked, or kept altogether out of view, that this region had already been included in the French provinces of Acadie or New France, in virtue

of previous settlement, by a grant of Henry IV. of France in the year 1603. Sir William seems to have been aware of this, as he uses the words, "designing the bounds for me *in that part, which hath been questioned by the French*;" but he considered that in his patent the boundaries were clearly enough defined, as "marching upon the West towards the River of Saint Croix, now Tweed (where the Frenchmen did designe their first habitation) with New England, and on all other parts it is compassed by the great Ocean, and the great River of Canada." Notwithstanding this, it was found, from using the same name for different localities, that the actual boundaries were by no means well ascertained; and it so happened that during the whole of this and part of the following century it became a fruitful source of dispute between France and Britain.<sup>1</sup>

On the 8th of November 1621, a similar charter was granted to Sir Robert Gordon of Lochinvar and his second son Robert, with the view of promoting the great object of colonization. This charter is also included in the present volume. Sir William Alexander having received his patent, the Privy Council passed the following Act in his favour, to have a seal as his Majesty's lieutenant, with the King's portrait and arms.

*Apud Edinburgh xvij Julij 1622.*

#### SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER.<sup>2</sup>

1622.  
July 18.

Forsamekle as in the Patent grantit to SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER Knight anent the new Plantatioun intendit and vnderthane be him of landis lyand betuix his Majesteis Coloneis of New England and the newfundland, thair is a Commissioun of Lieutenandrie Justiciarie and Admiraltie insert and for the gritair solemnitie in using of the saidis Officeis It is appointit and ordanit be the said Patent that he sall haif ane Scale according to the forme vnderwritten Thairfor the Lordis of Secreit Counsell ordanis and commandis Charlis Dikkiesoun sinkair of his Maisteis Irnis, to mak grave and sink in dew and comelie forme Ane scale haueand on the ane syde his Majesteis armes within a sheild, the Scottis armes being in the first

<sup>1</sup> As detailed in the voluminous Memorials published by the French Government previously to the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle in 1763, with regard to the boundaries of New France and Nova Scotia.

<sup>2</sup> Acta Reg. Secr. Concilii, fol. 83 b.

place, with a close crowne above the armes, with this circomscriptioun *Sigillum Regis Scotiæ Angliæ Franciæ et Hiberniæ*, and on the other syde of the seale his Maiesteis portrait in armour with a crowne on his heade ane sceptour in the ane hand, and ane globe in the other hand, with this circomscriptioun *Pro Nouæ Scotiæ locum tenente* Anent the makeing graveing and sinking of the whilk seale The extract of this Act salbe vnto the said Charlis ane sufficient warrande.

As it became necessary that some active measures should be adopted, Sir William states that, after receiving his patent, he procured a vessel at London, in March 1622, and sent it to Kirkcudbright for men, provisions, &c. that it might sail direct from Scotland. But he enlarges on the delays, the increased expense of provisions, and the difficulty experienced in persuading artisans and other suitable persons<sup>1</sup> to set out for far distant and unknown lands. It was late in the season when the vessel came within sight of the shore near Cape Breton, but, beaten back by contrary winds, no landing was effected, and the company resolved to pass the winter in St John's harbour, Newfoundland, while the vessel was sent home "for a new supply of such things as were needful." The next spring another vessel was freighted, and sailed with not much better success. On arriving, in June, at St John's, they found the former company dispersed, or engaged in various occupations; and after sailing along the coast, making a partial survey of the harbours and adjacent lands, the proposed establishment of a colony there was again postponed, and the company returned to England.

With the hope of exciting a greater interest in the proposed scheme, Sir William Alexander published under the title of "*AN ENCOURAGEMENT TO COLONIES*," London, 1624, the tract now reprinted page for page with the original, of which some copies have the date 1625. It seems not to have had much success, as six years later, the copies were reissued with the more attractive title of "*THE MAPP AND DESCRIPTION OF NEW ENGLAND; together with A Discourse of Plantation, and Collonies*," &c. London, 1630. The two books, excepting the title pages, are precisely

<sup>1</sup> Lord Bacon has some useful suggestions on this subject, in his *Essay on Plantations*; and it would have been well had Sir William completed his arrangements before the vessel had been sent to Kirkcudbright.

the same, but the author's dedication "To the most Excellent Prince (Charles)," was cancelled in the later copies, and no other substituted. The engraved map occurs in both, and was also used by Purchase, in the Fourth Part of his *Pilgrimes*, 1625, where he has a short chapter on the subject. A fac-simile of this Map is given in the present volume. The author concludes his *Encouragement to Colonies* by acknowledging that no one man could accomplish such an undertaking by his own private fortunes, but if it shall please the King to give his help accustomed, "making it appear to be a work of his own, I must trust to be supplied by some publike helpes, such as hath beene had in other parts," for the advancing of so worthy a work, "which may prove for the credit or benefit of my Nation, to whom I wish all happinesse."

In this expectation Sir William Alexander was not disappointed. The scheme which had proved successful in the year 1609 for colonizing certain districts in the province of Ulster, by creating the Order of Knights Baronets in the kingdom of Ireland, and dividing the lands and annexing the title to those who undertook to pay a fixed sum, and furnish a certain number of settlers, suggested the adoption of a similar plan for Scotland, under the title of Knights Baronets of Nova Scotia. Sir William had sufficient influence with the King to persuade him heartily to approve of the scheme, and to write, "We ar so hopefull of that enterprize that we purpose to make it a work of our owne." This project is so well set forth in King James's letter to the Privy Council of Scotland, and in their reply, 18th October and 23d November 1624, that these may here be printed in full, along with the Council's Proclamation on the last of November. It announced the King's resolution on the 1st of April following to proceed to the creating and ranking the one hundred proposed Baronets; and the Knights and Esquires who intended to become undertakers and receive this honour were directed previously to that day to appear and have their names enrolled in the Books of Privy Council. There is also added the letter of Prince Charles, on the 17th, and another of the King's, the 23d of March 1625. But four days before the 1st of April had arrived, and only four days after the King had signed that letter, his reign had come to its termination.

FROM HIS MAJESTIE ANENT BARONETTIS.<sup>1</sup>1624.  
October 18.

[JAMES R.]

Right trustie and welbeloued Counsellour Richt trustie and welbeloued Cosens and Counsellors and trustie and welbeloued Counsellours We greate you weil The Letter ye sent giving us thankes for renueing of the name of that our ancient Kingdome within AMERICA intreateing our favour for the furthering of a Plantatioun ther, was verie acceptable vnto vs and reposing vpoun the experience of vthers of oure subiects in the like kinde We ar so hopefull of that enterprise that We purpose to make it a worke of oure Owne And as We wer pleased to erect the honour of KNIGHT BARRONETTS within this oure Kingdome for advancement of the Plantatioun of Ireland, So We doe desire to conferr the like honour within that our Kingdome vpoun suche as wer worthie of that degree and will agree for some proportion of ground within NEW SCOTLAND furnisheing furth such a number of persones as salbe condescended vpoun to inhabite there Thus sall both these of the cheife sorte (avoydeing the vsuall contentions at publick meetings) being by this Hereditarie honour preferred to others of meaner qualitie know ther owne places at home and likwyse sall haue ther due abroad from the subiects of our other countreys accordeing to the course apointed for that our ancient Kingdome And the mentioning of so noble a cause within ther Pattents sall both serue the more by suche a singular merite to honour them and by so goode a ground to iustifie our iudgement with the posteritie But though the conferring of honour be meere Regall and to be done by Vs as We please yet We would proceed in no matter of suche moment without youre advyse OUR PLEASURE is haucing considered of this purpose if ye find it as We conceive it to be both fitt for the credit of that Our Kingdome and for the furtherance of that intended Plantatioun that ye certifie vs your opinione concerning the forme and conveniencis thairof, together with your further advyce what may best aduance this so worthie worke which We doe verie much affect but will vse no meanes to induce onie man thereunto further then the goodnes of the busines and his awne generous dispositione shall perswade Neither doe We desire that onie man salbe sent for or travelled with by you for being Barronet, but after it is founde fitt will leave it to their owne voluntarie choise, not doubteing (howsoever some for want of knowledge may be averse) but that ther wilbe a greater number than we inttend to make of the best sorte to embrace so noble a purpose whereby bothe they in particular and the whole Natione generally may have honour and profite And We wishe you rather to thinke how

<sup>1</sup> Regist. Secr. Concilii.—(Royal Letters, Sept. 19, 1623, May 17, 1632.)

remedies may be provyded against any inconveniences that may happin to ocure then by conjecturing difficulties to looso so faire and vnrecouerable occasion whiche other Nations at this instant are so earnest to vndertake. And for the better directinge of your iudgement We haue appointed ane printed copie of that Order quhiche was taken concerning the Barronettis of this our Kingdome to be sent vnto you as it was published by authoritie from Vs.<sup>1</sup> So desiringe you to haste back your ansueire that We may signifie our further pleasure for this purpose We bid you Fairweill. From Our Courte at Roystoun the 18 day of October 1624.

1624.  
November 23.

### TO HIS MAJESTIE ANENT THE BARONETTIS.

#### MOST SACRED SOUERANE,

We haue considerit of your Maiesties letter concerning the Barronettis and doe thereby persave your Maiesties great affectioun towards this your ancient Kingdome and your Maiesties most iudicious consideratioun in makeing choise of so excellent meanes both noble and fitt for the goode of the same, wherein seing your Maiestie might haue proceedit without our advyce, and vnacquenting vs with your Maiesties royall resolutioun therein, we ar so muche the more boundin to rander vnto your Maiestie our most humble thanks for your gracious respect vnto vs not onlie in this but in all vther thinges importeing this estate outhir in credito or profit And we humblye wisse that this honour of Barronet sould be conferrit vpoun none but vpoun Knichtis and Gentlemen of chiefe respect for their birth, place or fortunies, and we haue taken a course by Proclamatioun to mak this your Maiesties gracious intentione to be publicklye knowen that non heirafter praetending ignorance take occasion inwardlye to compleyne as being neglected bot may accuse thameselfis for neglecting of so fair ane opportunitie And whereas we ar given to vnderstand that the country of NEW SCOTLAND being dividit in twa Provinces and eache province in severall Dioceses or Bishopricks, and eache diocese in thrie Counteyis, and eache countey into ten Baronyis, everie baronie being thrie myle long vpon the coast and ten myle vp into the countrie, dividit into sex parochies and eache parochie contening sax thousand aikars of land and that everie Baronett is to be ane Barone of some one or other of the saids Barronies and is to haif therein ten thowsand aikars of propertie besydis his sax thowsand aikars belongeing to his bur<sup>gh</sup> of baronie To be holdin free blanshe and in a free baronie of your Maiestie as the barronies of this Kingdome ffor the onlie setting furth of sex men towardis your Maiesties Royall Colonie armed, appareld, and

<sup>1</sup> This might either be "His Maiesties Commission as touching the creation of Baronets." London, 1611, 4to, or "Three Patents concerning the Honourable Degree and Dignitie of Baronets." London, 1617, 4to.



victuald for two yeares And everie Baronet paying SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER Knight ane thousand merkis Scottis money only towards his past charges and endeavouris Thairfore our humble desire vnto your Maiestie is that care be taken by suirtie actit in the bookis of Secreit Counsall, as was in the Plantatioun of Vlster that the said number of men may be dewlie transported thither with all provisions necessar and that no Baronet be maid but onlie for that cause And by some such one particular course onlie as your Maiestie sall appointe And that Articles of Plantatioun may be set furth for encourageing and inducing all others who hes habilitie and resolutioun to transport themselffis hence for so noble a purpose.

Last we consave that if some of the Englishe who ar best acquainted with such forrayn enterpreises wald joyne with the saids Baronetts heir (as it is liklie the lyker condition and proportioun of ground wald induce thame to doe) That it wald be ane grite encouragement to the furtherance of that Royall worke quhilk is worth[ie] of your Maiesties care And we doubt not sindrie will contribute their help heirunto. So expecting your Maiesties forder directioun and humblie submitting our opinione to your Maiesties incomparable iudgement We humblie tak our leave prayeing the Almightie God to blisse your Maiestie with long and happie Reigne. From Edinbrugh the 23 of November 1624.

(*Sic subscribitur*)

GEO. HAY.	LAUDERDAILL.
MAR.	L. ARESKINE.
ST ANDROIS.	CARNEGIE.
MORTOUN.	B. DUMBLANE.
LINLITHGOW.	A. NEPER.
MELROS.	S. [W.] OLIPHANT.

#### PROCLAMATIOUN ANENT BARONETIS.<sup>1</sup>

*Apud Edinburgh ultimo die mensis Novembris 1624.*

1624.  
November 30.

At Edinburgh the last day of November The yeir of God 1600 Twentie four yearis Our Soverane Lord being formarlie gratuslie pleased to erect the heritable honnour and title of ane Baronet as ane degree, state and place nixt and immediatlie following the younger sones of Vicounts and Lordis Baronis of Parliament as ane new honnour whairwith to rewaird new meritis Haveing conferrit the same honnour place and dignitie upoun sundrie of the Knights and Esquhyris of Ingland and Ireland to thame and thair airis mail for ever In consideratioun of thair help and assistance toward that happie and successfull plantatioun of ULSTER IN IRELAND To the grite strenth of that his Majesties Kingdome, incesse of his Hienes revonues and help to manie of his Majesties goode subjects And quhairas our said

<sup>1</sup> Regist. Secreti Concilii.—(Acta, Jan. 1621—Mar. 1625, fol. 218.)

Soverane Lord being no les hopefull the plantatioun of NEW SCOTLAND in the narrest part of America alreadie discovered and surveyed be some of the subjects of his Majesties Kingdome of Scotland joyning unto NEW INGLAND quhairin a grite pairt of his Hienes nobilitie, gentrie, and burrowis of Ingland ar particularlie interessed and hes actuallie begun thair severall Plantations thairof And for that conceaving that manie his Majesties subjects of this his ancient Kingdome emulating the vertewes and industrious interpryssis of utheris And being of bodies and constitutionis most able and fitt to undergo the Plantatioun thairof and propagatioun of Christiane religioun will not be deficient in anie thing quhilk may ather advance his Majesties Royall intentioun towards that Plantatioun or be beneficiall and honnourable to this his Hienes ancient Kingdome in generall or to thameselfis in particular The samyn being ano fitt, warrandable and convenient means to disburding this his Majesties said ancient Kingdome of all such younger brether and meane gentlemen quhois moyens ar short of thair birth worth or myndis who otherwayes most be troublesome to the houses and freindis from whence they ar descendit (the common ruynes of most of the ancient families) Or betak thameselfis to forren warko or baisser chifts to the discredite of thair ancestouris and cuntrey And to the grite losse of manie of his Majesties goode subjects who may be better preservit to his Hienes use, honnour of thair freindis, and thair awne comfort and subsistance Gif transplantit to the said cuntrey of NEW SCOTLAND, most worthie and most easie to be plantit with christiane people and most habill by the fertilitie and multitude of commodities of sea and land, to furnish all things necessarie to manteine thair estaitis and dignitie as Landislordis thairof and subjects to his Majestie to be governed by the Lawis of this his ancient Kingdome of Scotland And our said Soverane Lord being most willing and desyreous that this his said ancient Kingdome participate of all such otheris honnouris and dignities as ar erected in anie of his Majesties others Kingdomes To the effect that the Gentrie of this his Hienes said ancient Kingdome of Scotland may both haif thair dew abroad amonge the subjects of utheris his Majesties Kingdomes and at home amonge thameselfis according to thair degree and dignitie As alsua his Majestie being most graciouslie pleisit to confer the said honnour of heretable Baronet as ane speciaill mark of his Heighnes princelie favour upoun the Knights and Esqyris of principall respect ffor thair birth worth and fortouns Togidder with large proportionis of Landis within the said cuntrey of NEW SCOTLAND who sall be generouslie pleisit to set furth some men in his Hienes Royal Colonie nixt going thither for that plantatioun THAIRFORE his Majestie ordanis his Hienes lettres to be direct chargeing Herauldis Pursevantis and Messengeris of Armes to pas to the mercat Cros of Edinburgh and vtheris placeis neidfull and thair be oppin proclamatioun to mak publicatioun of the premises And that it is his Majesties princelie



pleasure and expres resolutioun, to mak and creat the number of Ane hundreth heretable Baronettis of this his Hienes Kingdome of Scotland be patentis under his Majesties grite seale thairof Who and thair airis mail sall haif place and precedencie nixt and immediatlíe after the youngest sones of the Vicounts and Lordis Barrounis of Parliament and the addition of the word SIR to be prefixed to thair proper name and the style and the title of BARONETT subjoynd to the surname of everie ane of thame and thair airis mail Together with the appellatioun of Ladie, Madame, and Dame, to thair Wyffis in all tyme comeing with precedencie befor all others Knights alsweill of the Bath, as Knights Bachelouris and Bannarrettis (except these onlie that beis Knighted be his Majestie his airis and successouris in proper persone, in ane oppin feild with banner displayed with new additioun to thair armes and haill utheris prærogatives formarlíe grantit be oure said Soverane Lord to the saidis Barronettis of Ingland and Ireland Conforme to the printed patent thairof in all poynts And that no persone or personis whatsumevir sall be created and maid Barronetts bot onlie such principall Knights and Esquyris as will be generouslie pleisit to be Undertakeris of the said Plantatioun of New SCOTLAND And for that effect to act thameselfis or some sufficient cautioneris for thame in the buikis of Secreit Counsaill befor the first day of Apryll nixt to come in this insueing year of God 1600 Tuentie fyve yearis To sett furth sex sufficient men artificeris or laboureris sufficientlie armeit apparelit and victuallit for tua yeiris towards his Majesties Royall Colonie to be established God willing thair for his Hienes use dureing that space And that within the space of yeir and day efter the dait of the said Actis under the pane of tua thowsand merkis usuall money of this realme As also to pay to Sir WILLIAME ALEXANDER Knight Maister of Requests of this Kingdome and Lieutenant to his Majestie in the said Cuntrey of NEW SCOTLAND the sowme also of ane thowsand merkis money foirsaid for his past chargeis in discoverie of the said Cuntrey and for surrendering and resigning his interest to the saidis Landis and Barronies quhilks ar to be grantit be our said Soverane Lord to the saidis Barronettis and everie one of thame To be halden in frie blensh of his Majestie his airis and successouris as frie Barronies of Scotland in all tyme comeing And as of the Crowne of the samyne Kingdome and under his Hienes grite seale thairof without onie other fyne or compositioun to be payit to his Majestie or his hienes thesaurar for the tyme thairfore Quhilks barronies and everie one of thame sal be callit be suche names as seemes meetest to the saids Barronetts And sall border on the sea coast or some portative river of the said Cuntrey and containe threttie thowsand aikers quhairof sextene thowsand aikers is intendit for everie one of the saidis Baronetis thair airis and assignayis quhatsumevir with ane Burgh of Barronie thairupoun And the remanent fourtene thowsand aikeris for such other publick use and uses as for the Crowne,

Bishops, Universities, Colledge of Justice, Hospitals, Clargie, Phisitiounis, Schools, Souldiouris and utheris at lenth mentionat in the Articles and Plattforme of the said Plantatioun And forder that his Majesties will and pleasure is That publict intimatioun be maid as afoirsaid To all the saidis Knights and Esquyris who desyris to accept the said dignitie of Baronett and Baronie of Land upoun the conditionis above exprest that betuix and the first day of Apryle nixt to come they repair in persoun or by some Agent sufficientlie instructed to the Lordis of his Majesties privie Counsall or to suche as sal be nominat be his Hienes and intimat to thame be the saidis Lordis to inroll thair names and ressave forder informatioun fra thame concerning the said plantatioun and for passing of thair infeftmentis and patents accordingle And sicklyk that all otheris personis who intendeth not to be Barronetts and that hath suche affectioun to his Majesties service as they will also be Undertakers of some proportionis of Land in NEW SCOTLAND (as the nobilitie gentrie and burrowis of England hath done in New England) may herafter tak notice of the printed Articles<sup>1</sup> of the Plantatioun of New Scotland and informe thameselfis by all laughfull wayes and meanis thairof With certificatiounn to all his Majesties lieges and subjects that immediatlie after the said first day of Apryle nixt to come Our said Soverane Lord will proceid to the creatioun and ranking of the saidis Barronettis, and passing of thair patents and infeftments without respect to ony that sall happin to neglect to cum in before the said day who ar heirby requyrit to tak notice heirof and inroll thair names that thair neglect may be rather imput unto thameselfis then to his Majestie who is so graciously pleasit to make offer to thame of so fair ane occasioun of heretable preferment honnour and benefite.

1625.  
March 17.

CHARLES P.

#### ANENT BARONETTIS.<sup>2</sup>

Right trustie and right welbeloued Cosens and Counsellouris and right trustie and welbeloued Counsellouris, Whereas it hath pleased the Kingis Majestie in favour of the Plantatioun of NOVA SCOTIA to honnour the Vndertakiris being of the ancientest gentrie of Scotland with the honnour of Barronetts and thairin haif trusted and recommentit SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER of Menstrie to his Counsell to assist him by all laughfull meanis and to countenance the bussienes by their authoritie In like maner We do recomment the said Sir William and the bussines to your best assistance hereby declairing that we favour bothe the bussines and the persone that followeth it in suche sort That your willingness to further it in all you can sall be vnto us very acceptable service So We bid you hartelic farewell From the Court at Theobalds, the 17 of Marche 1625.

<sup>1</sup> No copy of these Printed Articles has been discovered.

<sup>2</sup> Regist. Secr. Concilli.—(Royal Letters, 1623-1632.)

## ANENT BARONETTIS.

JAMES R.

1625.  
March 23.

Right trustie and welbeloued Counsellour Right trustie and welbeloued Cosens and Counsellours and trustie and welbeloued Counsellours We greete you weele We persave by your letters directit vnto us what care you haif had of that bussienes which We recommendit vnto you concerning the creatting of KNIGHT BARONETTIS within that our Kingdome for the Plantatioun of New Scotland, and ar not onlie weele satisfied with the course that you haif taikin thairin but likeways it doeth exceidinglie content ws that We haif so happielie fund a meanis for expressing of our affectionioun towards that our ancient Kingdome as we find by the consent of you all so much tending to the honnour and profite thairof, and as we haif begun so we will continue requireing you in like maner to perseuere for the furthering of this Royall work that it may be brought to a full perfectioun And as you haif done weele to warne the auncient Gentry by Proclamatioun assigneing thame a day for coming in and that you are carefull to secure that which they sould performe Our pleasure is to this end that this bussienes may be carried with the lesse noice and trouble that everie one of them that doeth intend to be Baronet give in his name to our trustie and welbeloued SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER Knight our Lieutenant for that enterprise or in cais of his absence to our trustie and welbeloued Counsellour SIR JOHN SCOTT Knight that one of thame after the tyme appoyntit by the Proclamatioun is expyred may present the names of the whole number that ar to be created unto thame whome We sall appoynt Commissionaris for marshalling of them in due ordour And becaus it is to be the fundatioun of so grite a work bothe for the good of the Kingdome in generall and for the particular enterest of everie Baronet who after this first protectionarie Colony is seatled for secureing of the cuntry may the rather thairefter adventure for the planting of their awne proportion whiche by this meanis may be maid the more hopefull That the sinceritie of our intentioun may be seen Our further pleasure is that if any of the Baronettis sall chuse rather to pay two thowsand merkis than to furnishe furth sex men as is intendit that then the whole Baronettis mak chois of some certaine persones of thair number to concurr with our said Lieutennant taking a strict course that all the said monie be onlie applied for setting furth of the number intendit or at the least of so many as it can convenientlie furnishe And as we will esteeme the better of suche as ar willing to imbrace this course so if any do neglect this samine and sue for any other degree of honnour hereafter We will think that they deserve it the lesse since this degree of Baronet is the next steppe vnto a further And so desiring you all to further this purpose als far as convenientlie you can We bid you Farewell, from our Court at Theobaldes, the 23 of Marche 1625.

King James died at Theobalds, London, on Sunday the 27th day of March 1625. At the close of his charter or original patent, granted to Sir William Alexander in October 1621, he engaged that all the privileges and liberties it so bountifully conferred should be ratified, approved, and confirmed in our next Parliament of our said Kingdom of Scotland. No subsequent Parliament was held during his reign; but this scheme was not allowed to drop. King Charles, within three months of ascending the throne, granted a Charter of Novodamus, under the Great Seal, in which the former one is recited, with additional clauses respecting the order of Baronets, and confirming to Sir William Alexander, in the most ample form, the lands and lordship of Nova Scotia, and also engaging to have the same ratified and confirmed by Parliament. The King, however, showed as little inclination to convoke a meeting of Parliament in Scotland as he did in England. But active measures in the meanwhile were pursued for the creation of Baronets, and Sir William, who was appointed, in 1626, one of the Principal Secretaries of State for Scotland, was raised to the peerage by the title of Viscount of Stirling and Lord Alexander, 4th of September 1630. Three years later, at the King's coronation at Holyrood, his Lordship was raised to the dignity of Earl of Stirling, Viscount of Canada, &c., by letters patent, 14th of June 1633.

The Royal Letters and proceedings of the Privy Council of Scotland during the early part of the reign of Charles the First, which relate to Sir William Alexander's various schemes, are too numerous to be given in whole; but the following series, it is believed, includes all that are of any importance in regard to Nova Scotia. They do not require any special comment; but it will be observed that these papers run much more on the creation of Knights Baronets than the enforcing on such undertakers the patriotic scheme of Colonization, and, by the payment of certain fines, they were released from the obligation of sending "out men, women, and provisions" to the intended Colonies, until, in fact, it may be said, the whole matter degenerated into an easy mode of raising money by the sale of hereditary titles. The following documents, unless it may be otherwise stated, are given from either Original letters, the Acts of Privy Council, or the Register of letters kept by

Sir W. Alexander, afterwards Earl of Stirling, while Principal Secretary of State for Scotland.<sup>1</sup> The following Precept may serve as an example of the form or warrant issued for preparing a Charter under the Great Seal, to convey, with the grant of lands, the title and honours of a Nova Scotia Baronet.

## PRECEPT OF A CHARTER TO WILLIAM EARL MARISCHAL.

1625.  
May 25.

PRECEPTUM CARTE fact. per S. D. N. Regem predilecto suo consanguineo Willielmo Mariscalli Comiti Dno. Keith et Altrie &c. Regni Scotie Mariscallo heredibus suis masculis et assignatis quibuscunque hrie. [hereditarie] super tota et integra illa parte seu portione regionis et domini Nove Scotie vt sequitur bondat. et limitat. viz. incipien. a maxima meridionali parte terre ex orientali latere fluvii nunc Tweid appellat. prius autem Sancti Crucis et exinde pergendo orientaliter sex miliaria per maris et littus et exinde pergendo borealiter a maris littore in terra firma ex orien. latere ejusdem fluvii observando semper sex milliaria in latitudine a dicto fluvio orientaliter donec extendat. ad numerum quadraginta octo millium acrarum terre cum castris turribus fortaliciis &c. Quequidem terre aliaque in dict. carta ad Dominum Gulielmum Allexander de Menstrie hereditarie pertinuerunt et resignate fuerunt per ipsum in manibus dict. S. D. N. Regis pro hac Nova Carta et infeodatione Prefato predicto suo consanguineo Willielmo Mariscalli Comiti &c. desuper conficienda Preterea cum clausula vnionis in unam integram et liberam baroniam et regalitatem omni tempore futuro Baroniam de Keith Marschell nuncupand. tenen. de dict. S. D. N. Rege et successoribus suis de corona et regno Scotie in libera alba firma pro annua solutione vnus denarii vsualis monete dicti regni Scotie super solum et fundum dictarum terrarum nomine albe firme si petatur tantum vel alicujus earundem partis in die festo nativitatis Domini nomine albe firme si petatur tantum Et quod vnica sasina apud Castellum de Edinburgh capienda et erit sufficiens pro omnibus et singulis terris aliisque particulariter et generaliter superscript. in dicta carta content. et cetera in communi forma cartarum Baronetis concess. Apud Aulam de Quhythall vigesimo octavo die mensis Maii Anno Dni. Millesimo sexcentesimo vigesimo quinto.

*Per Signetum.*

<sup>1</sup> This Register consists of three volumes. The first and most important is deposited in the General Register House, and contains Letters from January 26, 1626, to last of December 1631. The other volumes are in the Advocates Library: they contain, besides a portion of an earlier date, Letters from February 12, 1626, to July 1627; and from July 14, 1630, to June 24, 1635, being duplicate copies, so far as the dates correspond, each volume thus supplying portions not in the others.

1625.  
July 10.

TO THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF SCOTLAND ANENT BARONETTIS.

CHARLES R.

RIGHT trustie and right wel-beloued counsellour, right trustie and right wel-beloued cosens and counsellouris, and trustie and wel-beloued counsellouris, We GREETE YOU WELE. UNDERSTANDING that our late deare Father, after due deliberatioun, for furthering the Plantatioun of NEW SCOTLAND, and for sindrie other goode consideratiounis, did determine the creatting of Knight Baronettis thair; and that a proclamatioun wes maid at the mercatt croce of Edinburgh, to gif notice of this his Royall intentioun, that those of the best sort knowing the same might haif tyme to begin first, and be preferred unto otheris, or than want the said honnour in their awne default: AND UNDERSTANDING likeways, that the tyme appoyntit by the Counsell for that purpois is expyred, We being willing to accomplishe that whiche wes begun by our said deare Father, haif preferred some to be Knight Baronettis, and haif grantit unto thame signatouris of the said honnour, togither with thrie mylis in breadth and six in lenth of landis within New Scotland, for thair severall proportionnes: AND now that the saidis Plantatiounes intendit thair, tending so much to the honnour and benefite of that our Kingdome, may be advanced with diligence, and that preparatiounes be maid in due tyme for setting furthe a Colonie at the next Spring, to the end that those who are to be Baronettis, and to help thairunto, may not be hinderit by comeing unto us for procurcing thair grantis of the saidis landis and dignitie, bot may haif thame there with lesse trouble to themselfis and unto us, We haif sent a Commissioun unto you for accept-ing surrenderis of landis, and for conferring the dignitie of Baronet upon suche as salbe fund of qualitie fitt for the samine, till the number appoynted within the said commissioun be perfited: AND THEREFORE OUR PLEASURE IS, That you exped the commissioun through the sealis with all diligence, and that you, and all otheris of our Privie Counsell thair, give all the lawfull assistance, that you can convenientlie afford for accomplisheing the said worko, whereby Colonies could be sett furth; and certifie from us, that as we will respect thame the more who imbrace the said dignitie and further the said plantatioun, so if ony Knight who is not a Baronet presume to tak place of one who is Baronet, or if ony who is not Knight stryve to tak place of one who hes the honnour from us to be a Knight, inverting the order usuall in all civile pairtis, WE WILL that you censure the pairty transgressing in that kynd, as a manifest contempnar of oure authoritie, geving occasioun to disturbe the publick peace. So recommending this earnestlie to your care, We bid you farewell. Windsore, the 19th of July 1625.



## PROCLAMATIOUN CONCERNING BARONNETTIS.

1625.  
August 31.*Apud Edinburgh penultimo die mensis Augusti 1625.*

Forsameikle as our Souerane Lordis umquhile dearest Father of blissed memorie for diverse goode ressonis and considderationis moveing his Ma<sup>tie</sup> and speciallie for the better encouragement of his Hienes subjectis of this his ancient Kingdome of Scotland towardis the plantatioun of New Scotland in America being gracioslie pleased to erect the heretable dignitie and title of Baronet as a degree of honour within the said kingdome (as formerlie he had done in England for the plantatioun of Vlster in Ireland) And being of intention to confer the said title and honnour of Barronet onlie vpoun suche his Ma<sup>ties</sup> subjectis of the said ancient Kingdome of Scotland as wald be vndertakeris and furtheraris of the Plantatioun of New Scotland and performe the conditionis appoyntit for that effect Causit publict proclamation to be maid at the Mercat Croce of Edinburgh be advise of his Ma<sup>s</sup> Counsell of the said Kingdome geving notice to the cheiff gentrie and all his Ma<sup>ties</sup> subiectis of that Kingdome of his Royall intention concerning the creating of Baronettis there, and that after a certain day now of a long tyme bypast prescryed be the said proclamation his Ma<sup>tie</sup> wald proceed to the creating of Barronettis and conferring the said title and honnour vpoun suche personis as his Ma<sup>tie</sup> sould think expedient having performed the conditionis appoyntit for the said Plantatioun To the effect the cheifest Knightis and Gentlemen of the Kingdome haveing notice of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> princelie resolution might (if thay pleasit be Vndertakeris in the said Plantatioun and performe the appoyntit conditionis) be first preferred be his Ma<sup>tie</sup> and haue the said heretable honnour and title conferred vpoun thame and there aires maill for ever or otherwayes be there awne neglect and default want the same And now our Souerane Lord being most carefull and desireous that his said vmquhile deerest Fatheris resolution tak effect for the weele of this his said Kingdome and the better furtherance of the said Plantatioun and otheris good considderationis moveing his Hienes, His Ma<sup>tie</sup> hathe already conferred the said heretable honnour and title of Barronet vpoun diverse his Ma<sup>s</sup> subjectis of this his said kingdome, of goode parentage, meanis and qualitie and grantit chartouris to thame and there airis maill for evir vnder the Grite Scale of the said kingdome containeing his Ma<sup>s</sup> grant vnto thame of the said dignitie and of the particular landis and boundis of New Scotland designit vnto thame of the said dignitie, and of the particular landis and boundis of New Scotland designit vnto thame and diverse liberties and priviledgeis contenit in there saidis patentis and is of the intention to grant the like to otheris And for the better furtherance of the said

Plantatioun and performe the conditionis appoyntit for that effect and to haif the said honour and title conferred vpon thame may not be hinderit nor delayit be going to Court to procure from his Ma<sup>tie</sup> there severall patentis and grantis of the said dignity and landis in New Scotland to be grantit to thame but may haif the same heir in Scotland with lesse trouble to his Ma<sup>tie</sup> and chargis and expenssis to thame selffis His Ma<sup>tie</sup> of his royall and princelie power and special favour hathe gevin and grantit a commission and full power to a select number of the Nobilitie and Counsell of this Kingdome whose names are particularlie therein insert or any five of thame the Chancellair Thesaurair and Secretair being thrie of the five to ressaue resignationis of all landis within New Scotland whilk sal happin to be resignit be Sir William Alexander knight Maister of Requestis to his Ma<sup>tie</sup> for the said kingdome and his Ma<sup>tie</sup> Lieutenant of New Scotland in favouris of whatsomevir personis and to grant patentis and infetmentis thairof againe to thame Together with the said heretable honour and title thay haveing alwayes first performed to the said Sir William Alexander his aires or assignayis or thair laughfull commissioneris or procuraturis haveing there powers the Conditionis appoyntit for the furtherance of the said Plantatioun and bringing thame a certificat thairof in write vnder the handis of the said Sir Williame or his foirsaidis to be shewn and producit before the saidis commissioneris And his Ma<sup>tie</sup> haveing likeways gevin informatioun to the Lordis of his Secreit Counsell of this kingdome to certifie his subjectis thereof concerning his princelie will and pleasure anent the place due to the Barronettis and Knightis of the said Kingdome THAIRFORE the saidis Lordis of Secreit Counsell to the effect that nane pretend ignorance Ordanis letteris to be direct chargeing herauldis and officiaris of armeis to pas to the mercat croce of Edinburgh and all otheris placeis neidfull and mak publict intimatioun to all his Ma<sup>tie</sup> leiges and subiectis of this kingdome That all suche as intend to be Barronettis and Vndertakeris in the said Plantatioun and to performe to the said Sir Williame or his foirsaidis the Conditionis appoyntit for the furtherance of the said Plantatioun and haueing a certificat vnder his hand as said is may repair and resort to the saidis Commissioneris at all tymes convenient and ressaue grantis and patentis from thame vnder the Grite Seale of this Kingdome of the landis of New Scotland to be resignit in there favouris to the said Sir Williame or his foirsaidis with the like liberties and priviledgeis and otheris whatsoever as ar grantit to the Barronettis alreadie maid in thair patentis alreadie past vnder the said Grite Seale, and of the said heretable title and honour of Barronett to thame and there aires mail for ever and tak place and precedence according to the dates of their severall patentis to be grantit to thame and no otherways. And in like maner to mak publicatioun that his Ma<sup>tie</sup> princelie will and pleasure is That the Barronettis of this Kingdome maid and to be maid, haif, hald, tak, and enjoy in



all tyme comeing freele but ony impediment the place prioritie and precedence in all respectis grantit to thame in thair severall patentis vnder the said Grite Seale and that no Knight, Laird, Esquire, or Gentleman whatsoever who is not a Barronett presume in ony conventioun or meeting or at ony tyme place or occasioun whatsoever to tak place præcedence or præminence befor ony who is or sal heirafter be maid a Baronet neyther ony who is not a Knight tak place befor ony who hathe the honnour to be a Knight thereby inverting the ordour vsed in all civile pairtis Certifeing all his Ma<sup>s</sup> leiges and subjectis of this his kingdome and everie ane of thame who sall præsume to do in the contrair heiroyf That thay sall be most seveirlye punist be his Ma<sup>tie</sup> and the saidis Lordis of his Counsell as manifest contemptaris of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> royall power and prærogative and thereby geving occasioun to disturb the publict peace.

*Subscribitur ut supra.*

[GEO. CANCELL.	ROXBURGH.
MORTOUN.	MELROS.
WINTOUN.	LAUDERDAILL.]
BUGCLEUGH.	

#### CONVENTIOUN OF ESTATES:—ANENT BARONETTIS.

1625.  
November 2.

*Apud Edinburgh secundo die mensis Novembris 1625.*

Anent the Petitioun gevin in be the small Barronis propoirting that thay sustent verie grite prejudice by this new erectit Ordour of Barronettis and the præcedencie grantit to thame befor all the small Baronis and Freehalderis of this kingdome whairin thay pretendit grit præjudice in thair priviledgeis and dignityis possesst be thame and thair prædecessouris in all præceding aiges and thairfoir thay desyrit that the Estaittis wald joyne with thame in thair humble petitioun that his Ma<sup>tie</sup> might be intreated to suspend the præcedencie grantit to thir Barronettis vntill the tyme that the Plantatioun for the whilk this dignitie is conferred be first performed be the Vndertakeris Whairupon Sir William Alexander cheiff vndertaker of this Plantatioun being hard and he having objectit unto thame his Ma<sup>s</sup> royall prærogative in conferring of honnouris and titles of dignitie in matteris of this kynd importing so far the honnour and credite of the cuntrey and that his Ma<sup>s</sup> prærogative wald not admitt ony sort of opposition, and that this suspensioun of the Vndertakeris præcedencie wald frustratt the whole Plantatioun After that the small Barronis had most humble protestit that the least derogation to his Ma<sup>s</sup> royall prærogative sould never enter in thair hairtis and that thair

Petioun was in no sort contrair to the same, and that thay acknowledged that the conferring of honnouris did properlie belong to his Ma<sup>tie</sup> as a poynt of his royall prærogative And thay undertooke that if it wer fund meete be his Ma<sup>tie</sup> and the Estaittis that this Plantatioun should be maid that thay vpoun thair awin chairgis wald vndertak the same without any retributioun of honnour to be gevin thairfoir. The Estaittis haveing at lenth hard both the partyis It was fund be pluralitie of voittis that the Estaittis sould joyne with thame in thair petitioun foirsaid.

#### EXTRACT FROM THE COUNSALL'S LETTER.<sup>1</sup>

1625.  
November 8.

##### MOST SACRED SOVERAINE

The Convention of your Majesties Estaittis, which, by your Ma<sup>s</sup> direction wes callit to the tuentie sevent day of October last being that day verie solemnlie and with a frequent and famous number of the Nobilitie Clergy and Commisionaris for the Shyres and Burrowis præceislie kept, and the Taxatioun grantit, as our former letter to your Majestie did signifie.

Upon the first second and thrid day of this moneth the Estaittis having proceeded to the consideratioun of the Propositions and Articles sende downe be your Ma<sup>tie</sup> &c.

After that all thir Articles wer propouned hard discussit and answeirit be the Estaittis in maner foirsaid Thair wes some petitions gevin in be the small Baronis and Burrowis whairin thay craved that the Estaittis wald joyne with thame in thair humble Petitioun to your Ma<sup>tie</sup> for obtaining your allowance thairof

Thay had ane other Petitioun and greevance foundit vpon the præjudice alledged sustenit be thame by this new erectit Ordour of Barronettis and the præcedencie grantit to thame befor all the small Barronis and Frichalderis of this Kingdome whairin thay prætendit grite præjudice in thair privilegedis and dignityis possest be thame and thair prædecessouris in all præceeding aiges And thairfore thair desire wes that the Estaittis wald joyne with thame in thair humble Petitioun That your Ma<sup>tie</sup> might be intreated to suspend the præcedencie grantit to thir Barronettis vntill the tyme that the Plantatioun for the whilk this dignitie is conferred be first performed be the vndertakeris Whairupon Sir William Alexander cheif vndertaker in this Plantatioun being hard and he haveing objectit vnto thame your Ma<sup>s</sup> royall prærogative in conferring of honnouris and titlis of dignitie in matteris of this kynd importeing so far the honnour and credite of the cuntry

<sup>1</sup> This Letter is printed at length in the Acts of Parliament, vol. v. p. 185-188.

And that your Ma<sup>s</sup> prærogative wald not admit ony sort of oppositioun and that this suspensioun of the vndertakeris præcedencie wald frustratt the whole Plantatioun After that the Small Baronis had most humblie protestit that the least derogatioun to your Ma<sup>s</sup> prærogative sould never enter in thair hairtis and that thair petitioun wes in no sort contrair to the same bot that thay acknowledged that the conferring of honnouris did properlie belong to your Ma<sup>tie</sup> as a poynt of your royall prærogative And thay vndertooke that if it wer fund meete by your Ma<sup>tie</sup> and the Estaittis that this Plantatioun sould be maid That thay vpoun thair awne chargeis wald vndertak the same without ony retributioun of honnour to be gevin thairfoir. The Estaittis haveing at lenth hard bothe partyis It wes fund be pluralitie of voitis that the Estaittis sould joyne with thame in thair Petitioun fairsaid to your Majestie.

(*Sic subscribitur.*)

Edinburgh

Octavo Novembris 1625.

GEO. HAY.

MAR.

MORTOUN.

WYNTOUN.

LINLITHGOW.

ROXBURGH.

MELROS.

B. DUMBLANE.

ARC<sup>o</sup>. NAPER.

TO THE COUNSALL.

[CHARLES R.]

1626.  
February 12.

Right trustie and weilbeloved Counsellour Right trustie and weilbelovit Cousines and Counsellours Right trustie and weilbeloved Counsellours and trustie and weilbeloved Counsellours We Greet you weill Whereas our late dear Father did determyne the Creating of Knyghts Barronetts within that our Kingdome haveing first had the advyse of his privie Counsall thervnto whose congratulatorie approbation may appear by a letter of thanks sent vnto him thairefter And sieing the whole gentrie war advertised of this his Royall resolutioun by publict proclamations that these of the best sort knowing the same might have tyme to begin first and be preferred vnto vthers or then want the said honour in ther awin default a competent tyme being appoynted vnto them by the said Counsall that they might the more advysedlie resolve with them selfis therein In consideratioun whairof we wer pleased to give a commission vnder our great seall wherby the saidis Knights Barronetts might be created according to the conditions formerlie condescendit vpoun And heirefter hearing that sindrie gentlemen of the best sort wer admitted to the said dignitie we never haveing heard of aney complaynt against the same till the work efter this maner was broght to perfection it could not bot seame strange vnto ws that aney thereafter should have presented such a

petition as was gevin to the last Conventioun so much derogatorie to our Royall prerogative and to the hindering of so worthie a work or that the samyne should have bene countenanced or suffered to have bene further prosecuted Now to the effect that the said work may have no linderance heirefter our pleasur is that the course so advysedlie prescryved by ws to the effect forsaid may be made publictie known of new wairning the said gentrie that they may ather procure the said dignitie for them selfis or not repyne at others for doeing the same And that you have a speciall care that none of the saidis Knyghts Barronetts be wronged in ther priviledges by punisching aney persone who dar presum to doe any thing contrarie to ther grants as a manifest contemner of our authoritie and disturbers of the publict peace And if it shall happin heirefter that the said Commission by the death or change of any persones appoynted Commissioneris to this effect shall neid be renewed Our further pleasur is that at the desyre of our trustie and weilbelovit Counsellour Sir William Alexander kny<sup>t</sup> our Secretarie or his aires the same be gevin of new to the Commissioneris of our Exchequer the Chancellour Thesaurer or Thesaurer deputie or aney tuo of them being alwyse of the number giving them such power in all respects as is conteyned in the former Commission with this addition onlie that we doe heirby authorize our Chancellour for the tyme being to knyght the eldest sones of the saidis Knyghts Baronets being of perfyte aige of 21 zeires he being requyred to that effect And we will that a clause bearing the lyk power be particularlie insert in the said new Commission if vpoun the caussis forsaid it be renewed And that the samyne by our said Chancellour be accordingly performed. So we bid, &c. Whythall Feb. 12, 1626.

1626.  
March 24.

#### TO THE LAIRD OF TRAQUAIR.

Trustie and weilbeloved, &c. We, &c. Thogh ther have bene warning gevin to all the gentrie of that our Kingdome by publict proclamation that they might in dew tyme come to be created Knyght Barronettis and not compleane heirefter of vtheris befor whom they might expect to have place wer preferred vnto them yet we have thought fitt to tak particular notice of yow And the rather becaus it would seeme that yow not knowing or mistaking our intention in a matter so much concerning our Royall prerogative for the furthering of so noble a work did seik to hinder the same Therfor Our pleasur is that you with diligence embrace the said dignitie and performe the conditions as others doe or that yow expect to be heard no more in that purpois nor that yow compleane no more heirefter of others to be preferred vnto yow So not doubting but that both by your self and with others you will vse your best meanes for furthering of this work wherby yow may doe to ws acceptable service, We bid, &c. Whythall 24 March 1626.

## TO THE CHANCELOUR.

[CHARLES R.]

1626.  
March 24.

Right, &c. Whereas we have gevin Ordour by a former letter that the Commission formerlie grantit by ws for creating of knyght Barronettis in that our kingdome might be renewed at the desyre of Sir William Alexander our Livetenent of New Scotland or his Heynes whensoever they should desyre the samyne geving the power in tyme coming to the Commissioners of our Exchequer which the persones nominated in the preceeding Commission formerlie had and that the eldest sones of all Baronettis might be knyghted being of perfite aige of 21 yeirs whensoever they shall desyre the same according to ther patents vnder our greit seall give power to yow or our Chancellour thar for the tyme being to doe the same both for frieing ws from trouble and savinge them from charges which ther repairing thither for that purpois might procure Our pleasur is that yow caus renew and expedit the said Commission vnder our great seall as said is And in the meane tyme that yow knyght the eldest sones of all and everie ane of such Baronettis who being of 21 yeres of aige shall desyre the same without putting of them to aney charges or expenssis For doing whairof, &c. So we bid, &c. Whythall 24 March 1626.

## TO THE LAIRD OF WAUGHTON.

1626.  
March 24.

Trustie, &c. (as in the precedent till this place) Yit we have thought fitt to tak particular notice of your self and house desyreing yow to performe the said dignitie of knyght Barronet and to performe the lyk conditions as otheris haveing the lyk honour doe which course we wish the rather to be takin by yow and others in regaird that so noble a wark as the plantation of New Scotland doeth much depend thervpon and as your willingnes to this our request shall not be a hinderance bot rather a help to ane further place that shalbe thought fitt to be conferred vpon yow so shall yow heirby doe ws acceptable pleasur. We bid, &c. Whythall 24 March 1626.

## TO THE LAIRD OF WEYMES.

1626.  
March 24.

Trustie and weilbeloved We, &c. Haveing determined that the Creation of knyght Baronetts should preceid according as our late dear father with advyse of his Counsall had agreed vpon Thogh all the gentrie of that our kingdome had warn- ing thairof by publict proclamation yet we ar pleased in regaird of the reputatioun of your house to tak more particular notice of yow And did pass a signatur of the said honour in your name wherin we thought our favour would have bene acceptable vnto yow Therfoir these presents ar to requyre yow to pass the said signatur

and to performe the lyk conditions as others doe Or vtherwayes doe not compleane heirefter of the precedencie of others whom we will the rather preferre that by the embracing of the said dignitie they be carefull to further so worthie a work as doeth depend theruppon And as it is a nixt stepp to a further title so we will esteame of it accordinglye Thus willing yow to certifie bak your resolution heirin with all diligence to Sir William Alexander our secretarie who will acquaint us therewith we bid you, &c. Whythall 24th March 1626.

1626.  
March 30.

### PROCLAMATIOUN ANENT BARONETTIS.

*Apud Halvudhous penultimo Martii 1626.*

Forsamekle as our Soverane Lordis umquhile darrest Father of blissed and famous memorie out of his princelie and tender regaird of the honnour and credite of this his ancient kingdome of Scotland And for the better encourageing of the gentrie of the said kingdome In imitation of the verteous projectis and enterprises of others to undertak the Plantatioun of New Scotland in America determined with advise of the Lordis of his privie Counsell the creating of ane new heretable title of dignitie within the said kingdome callit Knight Barronet and to confer the same vpoun suche personis of goode parentage meanis and qualitie as wald be undertakeris in the said Plantatioun And of this his Royall and princelie resolution Importing so far the honnour and credite of the Kingdome publication and intimatioun wes maid be opin proclamatioun with all solempnitie requisite to the intent those of the best not knowing the same might haif had time first to begin and to haif bene preferrit to otheris And then through thair awne default or negligence the want of the said honnour to haif bene inputt to thameselfis Like as a competent tyme wes appoyntit and assignit be the saidis Lordis vnto thame for that effect whairthrow they might the more advisedlie haif resolved thairin And oure Souerane Lord following his said darrest Fatheris resolutionis in this poynt causit not onlie renew the said Proclamatioun Bot for the ease of his Ma<sup>s</sup> subjectis and sauling of thame from neidles and unnecessair travell chairegis and expenssis grantit ane commissioun vnder his Grite Seale whairby the saidis Knightis Barronettis might be created and thair patentis expd in this kingdome Like as accordinglye sundrie Gentlemen of the best sort embraced the condition of the Plantatioun wer admittit to the said dignitie of Barronet and no question or objection wes moved aganis the same till the worke wes brought to a perfectioun then some of the gentrie repynning at the precedencie done to thir Barronettis whilk proceedit vpon thair awin sleughe and negligence in not tymous imbraceing the conditionis of the said Plantatioun They maid some publick oppositioun aganis the precedencie done to thir Barronettis and so did what in thame lay to haif hinderit the



Plantatioun foirsaid, whairof informatioun being maid to his Ma<sup>tie</sup> and his Ma<sup>tie</sup> considering the goode and necessar groundis whairby first his said darrest Father and then himself wer moved to creat the dignitie and ordour foirsaid of Barronetis and his Ma<sup>tie</sup> continowing in a firme and constant purpois and resolutioun that the worke foirsaid sall yett go fordward and no hindrance maid thairunto Thairfore his Ma<sup>tie</sup> with advyse of the Lordis of his Secreit Counsell Ordanis letters to be direct chargeing Officieris of armes to pas to the Mercat Croce of Edinburgh and otheris places neidfull and thair be opin publicatioun mak said publicatioun and intimatioun of his Ma<sup>s</sup> royall will and pleasur that the course so advysedlie prescryved be his Ma<sup>tie</sup> to the effect foirsaid salbe yitt followit oute And thairfore to wairne all and sundrie the gentrie of this kingdome That thay either procure the said dignitie for thameselfis Or not repyne at otheris for doing of the same And to command, charge and inhibite all and sindrie his Ma<sup>s</sup> leiges and subjects that nane of thame presooome nor tak vpoun hand to wrong the saidis Knightis Barronettis in any of thair privilegedis nor to doe nor attempt any thing contrair to thair grantis and patentis Certifieing thame that sall failzie or doe in the contrair That thay salbe punist as contempnaris of his Ma<sup>tie</sup> inclination and disturbaris of the publick peace.—

[Followis His Majesties Missive for Warrant of the Act above writtin.]

Right trustie and welbeloved Councillour, &c.—(See *supra*, p. 31.)

So We bid you farewell Frome our Courte at Whythall the 12 of Februar 1626.

#### SIR ROBERT GORDON OF LOCHINVAR.

1626.  
May 5.

Wheras the good schip named \_\_\_\_\_ of the burden of \_\_\_\_\_ tunnes or therabout whairof \_\_\_\_\_ Capitan is licenced to pass to the southward of the Equinoctiall lyne These ar therfor to will and command yow and everie of yow to permitt and suffer the said schip with her furnitur and schips company to quhom we doe heirby grant the benefite of our proclamation in all respects which was gevin at our house of Hampton Court the 13 of Dec<sup>r</sup> in the first year of our Reigne quyetlie and peaciablie to pass by yow without any let stay trouble or impresses of hir men or any vther hinderance whatsumevir whairof yow shall not fail. From the Court at Whythall 5 May of 1626.

To all Officieris of the Admiralty To all Capitanes and Masteres of schips in the seas And to all others to whome it may apperteane.

1626.  
July 21.

### KNIGHTING OF THE ELDEST SONS OF BARONETTIS.

*Apud Halvyrudhous vigesimo primo die mensis Julij 1626.*

The whilk day Sir George Hay of Kinfawnis knight producit and exhibite before the Counsell the missive titles underwritin signed be the Kingis Ma<sup>tie</sup> and direct to him and desired that the same title sould be insert and registrat in the Bookes of Secreit Counsell *ad futuram rei memoriam* Quhilk desire the saidis Lordis finding reasonable They haif ordanit and ordanis the said Letter to be insert and registratt in the saidis bookes to the effect fairsaid Of the quhilk the tenour follows

CHARLES R.

Right trustie, &c.—(See *supra*, p. 33.)

So We bid you fareweil Whitehall 24 of Marche 1626.

To our Right trustie and welbeloued Counsellour Sir  
George Hay Knight Our Chancellour of Scotland.

### FEES OF BARRONETTIS.

1626.  
July 28.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Having considered your letter concerning the fees that ar clamed from the knyght Barronets thogh at the first it did appear vnto ws that none could justlie challenge fees of them by vertew of any grant that was gevin befor that ordour was erected yet befor we would resolve what was to be done heirin we caused enquire of tho cheff heraulds and other officers within this our kingdome wher the said dignitie of Barronet was first instituted by our late dear Father And doe find that the baronetts ar bund to pay no feyis nor did pay ever any thing at all save that which they did voluntarlie to the heraulds of whom they had present vse And therfor sieing ther creation within that our kingdome is for so good a caus wherby a Colony is making readie for setting furth this next spring to begin a work that may tend so much to the honour and benefite of that kingdome we would have them everie way to be encouraged and not as we wryt befor putt to neidles charges and our pleasur is that none as Baronetts to be made be bund to pay feys bot what they shalbe pleased to doe out of ther owin discretion to the heraulds or to any such officers of whom they shall have vse And as for ther eldest sonnes whensoever any of them is cum to perfyte aigo and desyrs to be knighted let them pay the feyis allowed hertofo to be payed by other knights For doeing wherof We, &c. Oatlandis 28 July 1626.



## KNIGHTIS BARONNETTIS AND THE HERAULDIS.

1626.  
September 20.*Apud Haljrudhous vigesimo Septembris 1626.*

The whilk day the Letter underwritin signed be the Kingis Ma<sup>tie</sup> conteneing a declaration of his Royall Will and pleasure anent the fees acclaimed be the Herauldis and otheris from the Knyghtis Barronettis and thair eldest sones being presentit to the Lordis of Secreit Counsell and red in an audience They allowit of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> will and pleasure thairanent And Sir Jerome Lindsay knight Lyon King at armes being callit upon and he compeirand personalie and his Ma<sup>s</sup> will and pleasure in this matter being intimat vnto him he with all humble and deuitfull respect promeist that obedience suld be given thairanent. Of the whilk Letter the tenour followis.

CHARLES R.

Right trustie, &c.—(Sec *supra*, p. 36.)

And so We bid you farewell From our Courte at Oatlandis the 28 of Julij 1626.

## PLANTATIOUN OF NEW SCOTLAND.

1627.  
January 17.

[CHARLES R.]

Wheras Sir William Alexander kny<sup>t</sup> our Secretarie for Scotland haueing gevin band to the knyght barronetts of that our kingdome that of all such money as he hath or is to receave from them he shall imploy the just two parts thairof for setting furth a Colony for the plantation of New Scotland which is to be estimated and considered according to the conditions agreed vpon betweene him and the said knyghts baronets And the said Sir William haueing for performeing his part prepared a schip with ordinance munition and all other furnitour necessar for hir as lykwyse another schip of great burden which lyeth at Dumbartane togidder with sindrie other provisions necessarie for so far a voyadge and so great work therfor that the treuth thairof may be publicklie knownen and that all such monnyis as he hath disbursed heirvpon may be trewlie summed vp Our pleasur is that haueing surveyed the said schip yow estimat and value hir to the worth as lykwyse other furniture and provisions that yow find in hir or to be sent with hir for this purpois and with all his charges he hath bene heir for the same and thairefter that yow delyver vnto him a trew Inventure and Estimat therof vnder your hands that it may heirefter serve for clearing his accompts with the said knyght Barronetts and for haueing the same allowed vnto him by them, &c. Whythall 17 Ja<sup>r</sup> 1627.

1627.  
January 17.

# TO THE EARL OF TOTNES.

[CHARLES R.]

Whereas Sir William Alexander Kny<sup>t</sup> our Secretar for Scotland is to buy for the vso of two schippes to be employed in our service 16 Minner 4 saker and 6 falcour our pleasur is that yow permitt him or his servandis without impediment to transport the same vnto the said kingdome wher for the present one of the said schippes doe by provydeing that the said Sir William find suretie for the right employment of the saidis Ordinance according to the custome and for so doeing, &c. Whythall 17 Ja<sup>r</sup> 1627.

Direction—

To our right trustie and welbeloved cousen and counsellour the Earl of Totness Mr of our Ordinance within our kingdome of England.

1627.  
January 19.

# TO SIR JAMES BAILLIE.

CHARLES R.

Whereas Sir William Alexander o<sup>r</sup> Secretarie for Scotland had a warrant from our late dear Father which is ratified by us to o<sup>r</sup> Trer. of England for payment of the soume of Six thousand pounds sterling which lang since was intended to have bane payed here but seeing now it may be more convenientlie done out of this casuell commoditie wherewith Weo have apponted you to intromett Our pleasure is and We will you to pay vnto the said S<sup>r</sup> William or his assignes the said soume of Six thousand pounds sterling and that out of the first readiest moneyes that you haue or shall receauo for our part of the prises taken or to be taken within that our kingdome for doing whereof these pnts. shall be vnto you a sufficient warrant Given at o<sup>r</sup> Court at Whitehall the 19 of January 1627.

To o<sup>r</sup> trustie and welbeloued S<sup>r</sup> James Baillie Treasurer of o<sup>r</sup> Marine causes within o<sup>r</sup> kingdome of Scotland.

1627.  
January 26.

# TO THE EARLE MARSCHELL OF SCOTLAND.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas our late dear Father was pleased to creat knyght Barronetts within Scotland as he had done in his vther kingdomes and that for a honorable cause for enlargeing the Christiane fayth and our dominions And we understand that sindrie of the most ancient gentrie embracing the said dignitie having payed these moneyis condiscendit vpon for their part towards the plantation of New

Scotland Thogh ther have bene sufficient warning gevin to all the gentrie of that our kingdome hath in the time of our said late dear Father and in ours notwithstanding it be in our power frielie to conferre honour vpon any of our subjects as we in our judgment shall think they deserve yet out of our gratiuous favour we ar willing that everie ane of the said gentrie have the place which may be thocht due vnto them in so far as can clearlie be discerned or otherways that they be inexcusable by neglecting so fair ane opportunitie as by this meanes is presented vnto them and considering that it doeth most properlie belong to your Charge as Marschell to judge of ranks and precedencie thocht it be difficult to knowe wher so many ar of equal qualitie yet to the effect that they be ranked in some measur as neir as can be that place which may be thocht to be their due Our pleasur is that assuminge to your self such assessours here present as you shall think requisite you condescend vpon such a number as yow and they shall think fitt to be barronetts ranking them as yow shall think expedient that out of that number the barronetts limited by the Commission may be selected to the effect we may pass ther signatures accordinglie So that by embracing the said place in due tyme may mak vse of this our gratiuous favour and otherwyse least our trustie and weil beloved Sir William Alexander our Secretar who is our Lieutenant of the said Cuntrie and who besyds he is now to sett furth in this Spring hath bene at great charges heretofor in the work of that Plantation should be dissabled from prosecuting of that purpois we ar willing that he proceed with such others as yow shall think fitt to manteane that dignitie for Wee desyre that the ancient gentrie may be first preferred but if they by neglecting so noble ane interpryse shall not mak vse of our favour in this we think it good reasone that these persones who have succeeded to good estates or acquryed them by ther owin industrie and ar generouslie disposed to concurre with our said servand in this Interpryse should be preferred to the said dignitie and to this effect that yow mak them in maner abovespecifeit haueing for your better proceeding heirin appoynted a Roll to be given yow of diverse of the names of the said gentrie as ar knowen to be of qualitie which wher considered by yow in maner foresaid and haueing selected such of them as yow shall find to be most fitt for this purpois that yow sett down a roll for them in ordour and rank vnder your own hand to be schawin vnto ws. And so, &c. Hampton Court the 26 of Jar 1627.

SIR W. ALEXANDER HIS COLONIE IN NEW SCOTLAND.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Wheras for direction from ws a survey hath bene made of diverse provisions and necessaries to be sent this Spring by our trustie and weilbeloved

1627.  
March 3.

Counsellour Sir William Alexander our Secretarie for the vse of a Colony to be planted in New Scotland wherby it doeth evidentlie appear as is reported bak vnto ws by the suruegheris that the said Sir William hath bene at much more charges than as yit he hath received moneyis for the knyght Barronetts of that our kingdome who hath condescended according to ther severall bands made to him for advancing of such moneyis towardis the said plantation so that of the number of persones condescended vpon by our late dear Father and approved by ws to have the style of knyght Barronetts should not be fullie compleit or if that tymelic satisfaction be not gevin according to ther bandis that hopefull work so much recommended to ws by our said Father and ws is lyklye to desert and our said servand who hath bene first and last at so great charges therin vtterlie vndone in his esteat And in regard by reasone of our service heir that his absence from thence wilbe a great hinderance to the bringing of this purpois of the Baronetts to perfection we have thought good heirby to desyre yow whois effectuall assistance we ar confident may much conduce to this purpois that yow may vse your best [endeavours] both in privat and publict as yow shall think most fitt for bringing the said purpois to some perfection when we will expect your best endeavours seeing it is a matter we specallie respect. Newmarket, 3 March 1627.

1627.  
March 10.

#### TO THE TREASURER OF ENGLAND.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas the good shipp called the Eagle, of the burthen of one hundereth and 20 tunnes, or thereabouts, now lying in the River of Thames (whereof Ninian Barelay is captaine), is loaden with powder, ordonance, and other provisions, for the vse of a plantation, ordained to be made in New Scotland, by our speciall direction, and for the vse of ane other shippe, of the burthen of 300 tunnes, now lying at Dumbartan, in Scotland, which is likewise to goe for the said plantation of New Scotland: Our pleasure is, that you give order to all whom it concerneth, that the said shippe, with all her provisions, furniture, and loading, as being for our own particular service, may pass from the river of Thames, without paying custome, subsidie, or any other duction, and free from any other lett or impediment: And for your so doing, this shalbe your sufficient warrant. Theobaldes, the 10 of Merche, 1627.

To our right trustie and welbeloved cousin and counsellor,  
the Earle of Marleborough, our heigh Tressurer of  
England.

SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER TO SECRETARY NICHOLLS.<sup>1</sup>

1627.  
April 9.

S<sup>r</sup>.

There is a Shipp called the Morning Starre which is tyed in consort to attend a Shippe of mine in her intended voyage to Nova Scotia to doe his Ma<sup>tie</sup>s Service (which I know you are not ignorant of) the which shipp is now stayed lying in Dover Road, and not willing to depart vntill such tyme as she be released by his Cr<sup>s</sup> [Creditors?]: the M<sup>rs</sup> name is Andrew Baxter who is readie to attend to his Cr<sup>s</sup> demands and directions att all occasions. I doe therfore intreate you that you will doe me that favo<sup>r</sup> to move his Cr<sup>s</sup> concerninge the release of the said shipp, secing it concernethe his Mat<sup>ies</sup> service so much, the staye whereof will be the overthrowne of this voyage: ffor which favor I shall be ready to doe you the like courtesie when any the like occasion of yours shall present. In the meane tyme I rest  
Yo<sup>r</sup> lovinge ffriend  
W<sup>m</sup> ALEXANDER.

Whitehall, this 9th of April 1627.

This Shipp was cleered a fortnight before the restraynt to goe in hir intended voyage.

(*In dorso.*) To My very worthy and much respected ffriend

Mr Edward Nicholls Secretarie ffor the Admiraltie  
for the Lord Duke of Buckinghame.

GRANT TO SIR WILLIAME ALEXANDER.<sup>2</sup>

1627.  
May 3.

Grant to Sir Will. Alexander. His patent of 12 July 1625 for all the lands and dominions of Nova Scotia is recited, and Admiralty jurisdiction of those parts granted to him and his heirs, with power to seize vessels belonging to the King of Spain, the Infanta Isabella, or others, His Majesty's enemies. (Latin)

Whitehall, 3d May 1627.

TO THE COUNSELL

[CHARLES R.]

1627.  
November 29.

Right, &c. Whereas we have conferred the place of cheef Secretarie of that our kingdome vpon our trustie and weelbeloved counsellare, Sir William Alexander, together with the keeping of the Signet thare, and all fees and profits tharevnto belonging, according to our guift granted vnto him tharevpon: Therefore wee doe heirby require you, from time to time, to be aiding, and assisting vnto the said Sir Williame, and the keepers of the said Signet, for the time, for the

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers Calendar, p. 84.

<sup>2</sup> Ib. p. 84.

better wplifting and enjoying of the fees thareof, and all such benefittes and privileges as have bene heirtofore receaved or enjoyed by any of his predecessors, Secretaries for that kingdome, and that in as beneficiall maner as anye of his saids predecessors or keepers of the said Signet formerlie enjoyed the same, at any time: And for your soe doing these our letters shalbe vnto you and them a sufficient warrant and discharge. Whitehall, the penult day of November 1627.

1627.  
December 28.

TO SIR JAMES BAILYEE.

[CHARLES R.]

Trustie, &c. Heaveng been informed of the small benefit that doth arise vnto us by the Prises that are taken by the subjects of that our kingdome, and how that some of them have agreed with Sir Williame Alexander, our Secretarie, for a greater proportiono out of the said Prises then was formerlie in vse to be payed vnto us: And in regard there are moneyis due long since by a precept granted by our late deir Father vnto the said Sir Williame, for ansuering whareof vnto him out of the said Prises, and according to the said condition, it pleased vs, at our last being heir, to give you directione: Thairefore Oure pleasour is, that, in our name, you wplift the said proportiones of goods, or money soe agreed vpon, betwix him and the said persones; as likewayis, that you agree with all others, whoe shal happen to tak Prises heerefter, for paying the like proportionable of moneyis or goods; And tharefter from time to time, as the said benefite shall happen to arrise, that you pay the same vnto the said Sir Williame, or his assignayis, and that vntill the said precept be complecitlie satisfied: ffor doing whareof these presentis shalbe your warrant. Whitehall, the 28 day of December 1627.

1628.  
March 18.

ANENT THE SEALE OF ADMIRALITIE OF NEW SCOTLAND.

*Apud Halyrudhous decimo octavo die Mensis Martij 1628.*

Forsameekle as the Kings Ma<sup>ty</sup> by his letters patent vnder the Great Seale hes made and constitute Sir William Alexander knight Admirall of New Scotland; ffor the better exercising of which office necessar it is that thair be a Seale of the Admiralltie of the said kingdome Thairfore the Lords of Secreit Counsell ordanis and commands Charles Dickieson, sinkear of his Majesteis yrnies, to make grave and sinke ane Seale of the office of Admiralltie of New Scotland, to be the proper Seale of the said office, The said Seale having a shippe with all her ornaments and apparralling, the mayne saile onelie displayed with the armes of New Scotland bearing a Saltoire with ane scutcheon of the ancient armes of Scotland, and vpon the head of the said shippe careing ane vnicorne sittand and ane savage man standing vpoun the sterne both bearing S<sup>t</sup> Androes Croce And that the great Seale



haue this circumscription, SIGILLUM GULIELMI ALEXANDRI MILITIS MAGNI ADMIRALLI NOVI SCOTIÆ: Anent the making graving and sinking of the which Seale the extract of this Act sall be vnto the said Charles a warrant.

A PASS TO SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER, YOUNGER.

1628.  
March 26.

[CHARLES R.]

Whereas the four schippis, called the . . . . . 1  
belonging to Sir William Alexander knight, sone to Sir Williame Alexander, our  
Secretarie for Scotland; whareof the . . . . . 2  
are to be set out towards Newfoundland, the River of Cannada, and New Scotland,  
for settling of Colonies in those partes, and for other thare lauffull effaires: Theis are,  
therefore, to will and require you, and everie one of you, to permitt and suffer the  
said schippes, and everie one of them, with thare wholl furneture, goods, merchan-  
dice, schips companies, and planters, quietlie and peaceabillie in thare going thither,  
returning from thence, or during thare being furthe in any other parte whatsoever,  
till they shall happin to returne to any of our dominiones, To pas by you, without any  
of your lettes, stayes, troubles, imprestis of ther men, or any other men, or any other  
hinderance whatsoever: whareof you shall not fail. Whitehall, the 26 March 1628.

COMMISSION ANENT FUGITIVE SOULDEOURIS.

1628.  
April 23.

*Apud Halyrudhous vicesimo tertio die mensis Aprilis 1628.*

Forsameekill as it is vnderstand be the Lords of Secreit Counsell that diuerse  
persons who wer conduced and tane on be Sir Williame Alexander knight and his  
officiars to have bene transported be thame for the plantatioun of New Scotland  
haue most unworthilie abandoned that service and imployment refusing to per-  
forme the conditionis of thar agreement To the disappointing of that intendit  
Plantation which his Majestic so earnestlie affects ffor remedeing of which vndew-  
tifull dealing The saids Lords recommends to the Shireffs Justices of peace and  
Proveists and Bailleis within burgh, and thairwith all giues thame power and com-  
missione everie ane of thame within thair awin bounds and jurisdiction, to take  
tryell of all and sindrie persouns who haueing covenanted with the said Sir Wil-  
liame Alexander or his officers to goe with thame to New Scotland, haue aban-  
doned that service and runne away, and ather to compell thame to performe the  
conditionis of thair agreement Or otherwayes to doe justice vpon thame according  
to the merite of thair trespassse And that the saide Shireffs Justices of peace Pro-  
vests and Bailleis within burgh concurre countenance and assist the said Sir Wil-

<sup>1</sup> Blank in MS.

<sup>2</sup> Line blank in MS.

liame Alexander and his officers in all and everie thing that may further and aduance the service foresaids And for this effect that the said Shireffs and others foresaids delyuer the said persouns to the said Sir William Alexander and his officers, it being first qualified that thay have ressaued money from the said Sir William and his officers, or that thay haue beene in service and interteaned by thame.

## TO THE EXCHECKQUER.

1628.  
May 23.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas we gave order vnto you formerlie that the mariners, whoe hade been employed in our service, should be payed out of the first and reddiest moneyis of our Excheq<sup>r</sup>, and that all former preceptis should be stayed till they wer first satisfied: Wnderstanding that you have taken a course for payment thareof with the moneyis made of the goods of the Lubeck schip, which, by a former warrant given by ws vnto Sir James Baillie, should have been employed towards the payment of the soume of 6000 lb. Sterling, first granted vnto our trustie and weelbeloved counsellare, Sir William Alexander, oure Secretarie for that our kingdome, by our late dear Father, and tharefter particularlie appointed by ws to be payed vnto him, out of our parte of what should fall due vnto ws out of any prise: Our plesoure is, that you call Sir James Baillie before you, and, heaving tryed of him what part had he been payed of the said soume, that you give order for payment of the rest, out of the rediest moneyis arrising due vnto ws by the Prises, in maner foirsaid; as likewayis, out of the fines due vnto ws by all such persons whoe have transgressed the Act of Parliament maid in Anno 1621, against the conceallers or wrangous upgivers of moneyis lent by them: ffor doing whereof, these psesents shall be your sufficient warrant and discharge. Given at our Court at Whythall, the 23 of May 1628.

1628.  
June 30.

## TO THE TREASURER OF ENGLAND.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas the Lord Naper, our Treasurer Deputie in our kingdome of Scotland, hath informed ws, that diuers soumes of money, which, for our service wer payable out of our Excheckq<sup>r</sup> heir, have been payed out of our Excheckq<sup>r</sup> thare: Our pleasour is, that taking vnto your assistance Sir William Alexander, our Secretarie for that kingdome, you call for such accomptis of that kind as our said Treasurer Deputie shall exhibit vnto you, and after you have perused the same, that you report vnto ws what moneyis you find to have been soe delivered, to the effect we may tharefter giue such order touching the same as we sall think fitt. Soe We, &c. Whythall, the last of June 1628.



## TO THE EXCHECKQUER.

[CHARLES R.]

1628.  
July 11.

Right, &c. Heaving hade many prooffes and good experience of the sufficiencie and abilitics of our trustie and weelbeloved Counsellare, Sir William Alexander of Menstrie Knight, our principal Secretarie for that our kingdome, and of his good affectione to doe ws service, by performing our trust reposed in him: Wee are moved, in regard thareof, and for his better encouragement, and enabling him for our said service, to advance and promote him to be one of the Commissioners of our Excheckq<sup>r</sup> in that kingdome. It is tharefore our will and pleasor, and wee doe heirby require you, that, heaving administrat vnto him the oathe accustomed in the like caise, yee admitt him to be one of the Commissioners of our said Excheckq<sup>r</sup>, receaving him in that place, as one of your number: ffor doing whareof, these presents shalbe vnto you, and everie of you, a sufficient warrant. Given &c. at Whithall, the 11 of July 1628.

## TO THE EXCHECKQUER.

[CHARLES R.]

1628.  
November 7.

Right, &c. Whareas wee were formerlie plessed to assigne the payment of Sax Thousand punds Sterling, granted by our late dear Father to our trustie and weelbeloved counsellare, Sir William Alexander, our Secretarie, his airs and assignais, to be paid out of the benefit arysing to ws out of the Pryses, or concealed moneyis due by the taxationes; heaving hard from you how convenient it wer, that our share of the Pryses, for the incres of our custumes, should be lett out with them, according to that overture made by John Peebles for farming of the custumes, tending soe much to the advancing of our realme, which we wisch to be fordered, We are pleased tharewith; but withall, that the said Sir William be not disapointed of that which doth rest vnto him vnpayed of the said grant, Oure plesour is, that heaving hard from Sir James Baillyee, that the said Sir William have resaved out of the said prises or otherwayis, that you caus our receavers or custumers intromet with the said part of the prises to our vse, after such maner as you shall think expedient, and that you give order, that the said Sir William, his airs and assignais, may be payed out of our rentis, custumes, and casualities, or conceilment foirsaidis, of the said remainder; as likewayis, in consideration of his long want of the samen of that part of the Prise wines due vnto ws, which he should have hade bot was given for payment of the mariners: ffor doing whareof, and for securing him thareof in any maner you shall think it fitt, these presents shalbe vnto you a sufficient warrant. Whithall, the 7 of November 1628.

1628.  
November 18.

TO HIS MAJESTIE IN FAVOURS OF SOME UNDERTAKERS  
FOR NOVA SCOTIA.

MOST SACRED SOUVERANE.

We haue beene petitioned in name of some interrested in New Scotland and Canada holdin of your Ma<sup>ties</sup> crowne of this kingdome humbly shewing that by vertew of rights of lands made vnto thame by your Ma<sup>tie</sup> or by Sir William Alexander your Ma<sup>ties</sup> lieutenant of these bounds they haue alreadye adventured sowmes of money for setting furth of a Colonie to plant there and intending God willing to prosecute the same And that they understand that by reason of a voyage made by ane Captaine Kich thither this last Sommer there ar some making sute to your Majestie for a new Patent of the saids lands of Canada and of the trade thair of to be holdin of your Ma<sup>ties</sup> Crowne of England; which in our opinion will prove so derogatorie to this your ancient kingdome, vnder the Great Seale whereof your Ma<sup>tie</sup> hes alreadye granted a right to the saids bounds And will so exceedingly discourage all vndertakers of that kynde as we cannot but at thar humblo sute represent the same to your Ma<sup>tie</sup> humbly intreating that your Ma<sup>tie</sup> may be gratuslie pleased to take this into your princelie consideration as no right may be heerefter graunted of the saids lands contrarie to your Ma<sup>ties</sup> said preceding graunt But that they may be still holdin of the Crowne of this your ancient kingdome according to the purport and trew intencion of your Ma<sup>ties</sup> said former graunt And we ar verie hopefull that as the said Sir William Alexander hes sent furth his Sonne with a Colonie to plant thare this last yeere So it sall be secunded heerefter by manie other Vndertakers of good worth for the advancement of your Ma<sup>ties</sup> service increase of your renewes and honour of this your said ancient kingdome And so with the continuance of our most humble services and best prayers for your Ma<sup>ties</sup> health and happines We humbly take leave as your Ma<sup>ties</sup> most humble and faithfull servants

(*Sic Subscribitur.*)

MAR.

MONTEITH.

HADINTOUN.

WINTOUN.

LINLITHGOW.

LAUDERDAILL.

TRACQUAIR.

A. CARRE.

ARCH. ACHESOUN.

ADUOCAT.

CLERK REGISTER.

SIR GEORGE ELPHINSTOUN.

SCOTTISTARVETT.

*Halyrudhous, 18 Novembris 1628.*

COMMISSION TO SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER AND OTHERS to make a voyage into the Gulfe and River of Canada, and the parts adjacent, for the sole trade of Beaver Wools, Beaver Skins, Furrs, Hides & Skins of Wild Beasts. 4 Car. 1. [4 Feb. 1629.<sup>1</sup>]

1629.  
February 4.

AN EXTRACT OF THE PATENT GRAUNTED TO S<sup>r</sup> WILLIAM ALEXANDER CONCERNING CANADA.<sup>2</sup> [1629 ?]

In the Commission graunted to S<sup>r</sup> William Alexander the Younger & others (whereof the Preface alleageth the Discovery made by them of a beneficial Trade for divers Comoditys to be had in the Gulf & River of Canada & parts adjacent and his Ma<sup>ties</sup> Resolution thereupon to incorporate them for the sole Trading in these parts upon further Discovery to be made by them.

The said S<sup>r</sup> William Alexander, &c. are assigned as Com<sup>rs</sup> for the making of a Voyage into the said Gulf, River & parts adjacent for the sole Trade, &c. with Power to settle a Plantation within all the Parts of the said Gulfe & River above those parts which are over against Kebeck or the south side, or above Twelve Leagues below Todowsack on the North side.

Prohibiting all others to make any Voyage into the said Gulfe or River, or any the parts adjacent to any the purposes aforesaid upon payne of Confiscation of their Goods & Shipping so employed, which the Comissioners are authorized to seize unto their owne use.

Power given them to make Prize of all French or Spanish Ships & Goods at Sea or Land, &c. and to displant the French.

Power of Government amongst themselves.

Covenant of further Letters Patents of Incorporation or otherwise for settling the Trade & Plantation.

Saving of all former Letters Patents.

TO THE ERLE OF MONTEATH, SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER, AND SIR ARCHEBALD ACHESONE.

1629.  
[May 2.]

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas, according to the course begun by our late deare Father, Wee wer pleased to give order for creating of knight Baronettis within that our kingdome, for the planting of the Plantatione of New Scotland, as the commissione given for that effect particularlie beares, and heaveing always a desire that those

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 96.

<sup>2</sup> Ib. p. 96.

of the most antient families and best estates might be first preferred; notwithstanding that they had been duelie warrant by proclamations for that purpos, yet out of our earnest desire to give them all ressonabill satisfactions, wee did sign Patents for sundrie of them, that, in cais they should in due time accept thareof, they might tak place from the signing the same, notwithstanding that others, whose patentis wer signed by ws tharefter, had passed our Great Seall before them. And becaus the most part of those patents being signed by ws at one time, wee suld not then give order by making of them of severall dates for thare particulare proceedingis as was requirit, Oure Pleasour is, that you, or any twoe of you, heaveing considered of the qualitie and estate of these for whome such patents wer signed, doe fill wpp the dates of everie one of them, as yow in your discretione shall think fitt: for doing whareof, these presents shalbe vnto you a sufficient warrand, which Wee will you to insert in your books of Counsell or Sessione, if yee shall find it expedient. And soe, &c. From our Court at Greenwitche.

1629.  
October 17.

#### TO THE COUNSELL.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas our trustie and weelbeloved Sir William Alexander our Secretarie, hathe agreet withe some of the heads of the cheef Clannes of the Heighlands of that our kingdome, and with some other persones, for transporting themselves and thare followers, to setle themselves into New Scotland, as we doe very much approve of that course for advancing the said plantations, and for debordening that our kingdome of that race of people, which, in former times, hade bred soe many troubles ther; soe since that purpose may werie much impart the publick good and quiet thareof, Wee are most willing that you assist the same, by all fair and lafull wayis; and becaus, as wee are informed, divers are willing to contribute for thare dispatche by thare means, Wee require you to tak the best and most faire counsel heirin that possibillie you can, that a voluntarie Contributione may be made for that purpos, in such maner as you shall think most fitt and that you substitute any persones whom you shall think expedient for the manag-ing and collectione thareof. Given at Hamptoune Court, the 17 of October 1629.

1629.  
November 17.

#### TO THE CONTRACTERS FOR BARRONETTS.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas wee vnderstand that out of your regard to our service, and the honor of that our antient kingdome, for furthering the plantations of New Scotland, soe oftentimes recommendit by our late dear Father, and by our self, you have agreet with our trustie, &c. Sir Willame Alexander, oure secretarie for

Scotland, for advancing great sommes of money for that purpos, taking the benefitt that may arrise by the erectione of Barronettis of the number granted vnto him, as yet to be made for your releef, Wee doe heartlie thank you for the same, and doe accept it as a most singulare service done vnto ws, wishing you to proceed with confidence and diligence, that the nixt supplie may go out in time, ffor wee wilbe werie sorie and loath to sie you suffer for soe generous ane actione, which may tend soe much to our honour, and the good of that our kingdome; and for your better encouragement, and more speedie repayment, whersoever any persone of qualitie fitt for the dignitie of Barronet hath any particulare favor to crave of ws, wee will and allow yow, according to the severall charge that any of yow hath from ws, to require them first to accept of the said dignitie, according to the conditions formerlie condiscendit vpon, with others which shall mak ws the more willing to gratifie them, ffor wee desire much to have that work brought to perfectione. Soe willing that this our letter be recorded in the books of our Counsell and Exchecqr, We, &c. Whitehall, the 17 No<sup>r</sup>. 1629.

## TO THE COUNSELL.

[CHARLES R.]

1629.  
November 17.

Right trustie and right well-beloued Cousin and Counsellour, right trustie and well-beloued Cousins and Counsellouris, and right trustie and well-beloued Counsellouris, We Greeto you well.

Whereas, vpon good consideration, and for the better advancement of the plantatione of New Scotland, which may much import the good of our service, and the honor and benefeitt of that our ancient kingdome, oure royall Father did intend, and we since have erected the order and titill of Baronet, in our said ancient Kingdome, which wee have since estabillished, and conferred the same vpon divers gentlemen of good qualitie; and sieing our trustie and weil-beloued counsellor Sir William Alexander knight, our principall secretarie of that our ancient kingdome of Scotland, and our Leiwetennant of New Scotland, whoe these many yeirs bygone has been at great charges for the discoverie thareof, hath now in end settled a Colonie thare, where his sone, Sir William, is now resident; and we being most willing to afford all possible means of encouragement that convenientlie wee can to the Barronettis of that our ancient kingdome, for the furtherance of soe good a wark, and to the effect they may be honored, and have place in all respectis, according to their patents from ws, We have been pleased to authorise and allow, as be theis presents for ws and our successors we authorise and allow, the said Lewetennant and Baronettis, and everie one of them, and thare heirs male, to weare and carry about their neckis in all time coming, ane orange tauney-silk ribbane, whairon shall hing pendant in a scutcheon *argent* a saltoire *azeuer*, thairon ane

in scutcheone of the armes of Scotland, with ane imperiall crowne above the scutcheone, and incircled with this motto, FAX MENTIS HONESTÆ GLORIA: Which cognoissance our said present Leivetenment shall deliver now to them from us, that they may be the better knownen and distinguished from other persones: And that none pretend ignorance of the respect due vnto them, Our pleasure therefore is, that, by open proclamations at the markett crosse of Edinburgh, and all other head borrows of our kingdome, and such other places as you shall think necessarie, you caus intimat our Royal pleaser and intencion herin to all our subjectis: And if any persone, out of neglect or contempt, shall presume to tak place or precedence of the said barronettis, thare wiffes or childring, which is due vnto them by thare Patents, or to wear thare cognoissance, wee will that, vpon notice thareof given to you, you caus punish such offenders, by prisoning and fying of them, as you shall think fitting, that others may be terriefed from attempting the like: And We ordane that, from tyme to tyme, as occasione of granting and renewing thair patents, or thair heirs succeeding to the said dignitie, shall offer, That the said poware to them to carie the said ribbine, and cognoissance, shalbe tharein particularlie granted and inserted; And Wee likewayis ordaine these presents to be insert and registrat in the books of our Counsell and Exchequer, and that you caus registrat the same in the books of the Lyone king at armes, and heraulds, thare to remain *ad futuram rei memoriam*; and that all parties having entres [interest] may have autentick copies and extractis thareof: And for your see doing, These our lettres shalbe vnto you, and everie one of you, from tyme to tyme your sufficient warrant and discharge in that behalf. Given at our Court of Whyt-hall, the sevinteinthe of November 1629.

To our right trustie and right well-beloued cousin and counsellour; to our right well-beloued cousins and counsellouris; to our right trustie and well-beloued counsellouris; and trustie and well-beloued counsellouris, the Viscount of Dupleine, our Chancelor of Scotland, the Earle of Monteith, the President, and to the remanent Earls, Lords, and otheris of our Privie Counsell of our said kingdome.

1629.  
November 26.

#### TO THE ERLE OF MONTEATH.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas Wee have been delt with for divers persons of that our kingdome, that they might be advanced to titles of honor, some by a new creatione, and others by being raised to a more beigh dignitie then they presently enjoy, Seing these prefermentis are the cheef markis of a princes favor, whareby the



present age and the posteritie tak notice of his judgement, and of the subjectis, as they find them to be conferred, Wee will noe way proceed in that kind but vpon due consideration: And tharefor it is our plesor, that you, as one whome wee speciallie trust, informe yourselff, and adverteis us, of the qualitie and service done, or to be done, vnto us, by any whoe desire that favor, and that you have a care to acquent ws whoe of them have any heretable office, shirreffship, baillierie, stewardrie, or regalitie, That they first agrie for the same, for wec will not advance them with whome we are to plead for recovering our right to estabillish that which wee intend for the good of that our kingdome: But whare non of them have any such thing to demitt, That there may be some publick service done for thare preferment, It is our forder plesour, that you agree with them for some ressonable number of persons to be furneshit out, vpon thare charges, towards the plantatione of New Scotland, at the sight of our trustie, &c. Sir William Alexander, oure Leivetenent of that bounds, whareby he may be supplied in that great wark, and that our Aduocat, heaving considered those thingis recommendit vnto [you], draw up, and docett the Patents of such as you agrie with, and send them vnto us, that Wee tharefter may proceed as we think fitt. Soe recommending this vnto your care, Wee, &c. Whitehall, the 26 November 1629.

## A PRECEPT IN FAVOUR OF SIR W. ALEXANDER.

1629.  
December 10.

[CHARLES R.]

Whereas formerlie wee directed a precept vnto Sir James Baillie Knight, that heaving the same charge in our service wherewith you are now entrusted, to pay vnto Sir William Alexander Knight, oure principal secretarie for Scotland, the soume of Sex Thousand pounds sterling, out of our parte of the Prise moneyis, which the saids Sir James was then ordained to resave, and are now appointed to come vnto the Exchequer: Therefore oure plesor is, and wee doe heirby will and require you, vpon the sight heiroff, to pay vnto the said Sir William Alexander, or his assignais, That which you shall find remaining vn timer paid of the said precept, and that out of the first and reddiest of our rentis and casualties, or out of any other moneyis belonging vnto ws, presently remaining in your custodie, or that shall nixt come into your hands: And for your soe doing, thes presents shalbe vnto you a sufficient warrand: And [Wee] doe hereby command our treasurer, deputie treasurer, commissioners of our exchequer, and all others auditors whoe are or shalbe herefter, to allow and defeas vnto you the remanendare of the said Sir William his precept, vpon accompt. Whitehall, the 10 of December 1629.

To our trustie and weelbeloved Mr David Fullertone,

one of the Receavers of our rentis in Scotland.

1629.  
December 24. ACT ANENT THE COGNOISSANCE OF THE KNIIGHT BARONNETS.

*Apud Halyrudhous 24 die mensis Decembris 1629.*

The whilk day the missive vnderwrittin signed be the Kingis Ma<sup>tie</sup> being presented to the Lords of Secreit Counsell and read in thair audience The saids Lords according to the direction of the said missive Ordanes the same to be insert and registrat in the Bookes of Priuie Counsell and Exchecker And siclyke thay ordained the same to be registrat in the Bookes of the Lyeun King at Armes and Heraulds thairin to remaine *ad futuram rei memoriam* And that all parteis having interesse may have authentick copeis and extracts thair of. Of the whilk missive the tennour followes.

CHARLES R.

Right trustie and right, &c. . . . . [See *supra*, p. 49.]

Whitehall, the 17 of November 1629.

[In the Acts of Privy Council a copy of the Proclamation is subjoined, which, as usual, is a mere repetition of the King's letter.]

1630.  
December.

## TO THE GOVERNOUR OF THE TOUN OF PLIMMOUTH.

[CHARLES R.]

Whereas Wee have directed Samuell Jude, post of our toune of Plimmouth, to repair thither for conducting, and bringing hither to our Court, one of the commanders of Cannada, attended by some others of that cuntry, whoe is directed to us, in name of the rest, Wee doe heirby will and require you to give vnto him all the lafull fortherance shalbe found requisit for thare conducting and transportation hither, with all such provisiones as they have to bring along with them, And that you signifie this our pleasour to any others whom it may concern.

To our trustie and weelbeloved Sir James Bagg knight,  
Governour of our toune of Plymmouth, and to all  
other our officiars, to whome thes presents doethe or  
may concern.

1630.  
February 4.

## TO SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas Wee have, by our infetment vnder the Great Seall of our kingdome of Scotland, granted vnto you, and your heirs, authoritie to be our



Leivetennent of New Scotland, and Cannada, with pouare to confer titles of honour thare vpon such inhabitantis as shalbe aidding and assisting vnto the plantatione thareof; and whareas also, for the better encouragement of our subjectis of our said kingdome, to plant and contribute towards the plantatione of the said country, Wee have erected the Order and dignitie of Knight Baronet in our said kingdome of Scotland, and by our lettres have appointed and licensed the Knight Baronetts of our said kingdome to carie and weare a cognissance, and orange tauney ribbane about thare neckis, Therefore, wee doe alsoe heirby authorise and require you, and your heirs and successors, to authorise, licence, and appoint the Baronettis of New Scotland and Cannada, appointed or heirefter to be appointed, by you, or them, in the said territorie and dominione of New Scotland and Cannada, to wear and carie the like cognissance, and ribbane for thare better distinctione from the others freeholders, and inhabitantis thareof, and that you caus registrat this our warrand in the books of Councell, Sessione, and Excheq<sup>r</sup> of our said kingdome, and in the Registers of our said territorie and dominione of New Scotland: And for your see doing theis our lettres, given vnder our Privie Signett, shalbe vnto you, and your heirs and successors, a sufficient warrand in that behalf. Whitehall, the fourt day of Februar 1630.

MEMOIR OF THE FRENCH AMBASSADOR.<sup>1</sup>

1630.  
February 1.

L'Ambassadeur de France Supplie Sa Majesté de la Grande Bretagne qu'il lui plaise ordonner et conformer à ce que a esté promis et accordé par les articles du xxiii<sup>e</sup> Auril der<sup>re</sup> au Cap<sup>ne</sup> Querch et au Sieur Guillaume Alexandre et relevans de ses subiects, qui sont ou sejourneront en la Nouvelle France, de s'en retirer et remettre entre les mains de ceux qu'il plaira au Roy Son Maistre d'y enuoier, et seront porteurs de sa commission, tous les lieux et places quilz y ont occupez et habitez depuis ces derniers mouuemens, et par encore la forteresse et habitation de Quebec, Costes du Cap Breton, et Port Roial prins et occupez, scauoir la forteresse de Quebec par le Cap<sup>ne</sup> Querch, et les costes du Cap Breton et Port Roial par leis Sieur Guillaume Alexandre Ecossois depuis le xxiii<sup>e</sup> Auril der<sup>re</sup>. Et d'eux remettre en mesme estat quilz les ont trouuez sans desmolir les fortes Creacons. ny bastimens des habitations, ny emporter aucunes armes, munitions, marchandises ny vstencilles de celles qui y estoient lors de la prinse, quilz seront tenez de rendre et restituer avec toutes les pelletteries quilz ont apportées despuis, ensemble la patache commandée par le Cap<sup>ne</sup> de Caen qui a esté amenée en Angleterre, comme aussi la nauire nommée la Marie de St Jean de Luz du port de soix<sup>te</sup> dix tonneaux

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 107.—The transcript of this letter being in some parts unintelligible, it was found necessary to correct the reading of a few words by conjecture.

qui a esté prins par leis Sieur Alexandre au des balcines coste du Cap Breton, et partie des hommes ramenez ici [par] le Cap<sup>ne</sup> Pomeroy.

(*In dorso*.) MEMOIRE.—Whereby the French Amb<sup>r</sup> desires his Ma<sup>ty</sup> to give order for the restitution of all the places taken in Canada by the English and Scotts during these late troubles, Item of all the goods and ships brought from thence hither. All in manner as taken, &c.

1630.  
February.

#### A CHARLES ST ESTIENNE BARRON.

Trés chère et bien aymé, vos lettres . . . . .

[A blank space is left at fol. 480 in Sir William Alexander's Register for the continuation of this letter.] In the margin, "Letters Francois."

1630.  
February 20.

#### THE LORD OCHILTREE'S INFORMATION.<sup>1</sup>

[The author of the following information was Sir James Stewart of Killeith, eldest son of Captain James Stewart, Earl of Arran. He acquired the Lordship of Ochiltree in 1615, but according to Scotstarvet he only "enjoyed the estate a few years, and was forced to sell all for defraying his debts." This may possibly have induced him to establish a colony at Cape Breton. In May 1629 Charles the First authorised the sum of Five hundred Pounds sterling "to be borrowed for the use of Lord Ochiltree, being for his present expedition to Cape Britton for a planting of a colony there." The King on the 10th of December following signed a precept for the repayment of the said sum. But on the 10th September 1629, Lord Ochiltree and many of the settlers were treacherously taken prisoners by Captain Daniel of Dieppe; some were carried to England, while Lord Ochiltree and seventeen others were taken to France, suffering great hardship from the barbarous and perfidious carriage of the French. He estimated his losses at £20,000. The English Ambassador, Sir Thomas Edwards, on the 22d January 1629-30, having made a formal complaint of such usage, his Lordship was set at liberty, as no just cause could be found for his detention.—(Colonial Papers, pp. 104-106.) On the 24th of April that year, Lord Ochiltree had a patent as a Knight-Baronet. In April 1631, he had renewed his intentions to plant a Colony near the river of Canada.<sup>2</sup> But before his patent had passed the Great Seal, in consequence of his being under a criminal process, the King, about the close of 1631, ordered this grant not to be recorded.<sup>3</sup> This process was occasioned

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 106.

<sup>2</sup> *Infra*, p. 64.

<sup>3</sup> See also *infra*, p. 70.

by Lord Ochiltree having accused James Marquess of Hamilton of high treason, but when the charge was tried, Crawford (Peerage, p. 375) says, "the story appear'd to be a piece of the most notorious folly and forgery that ever was invented; for which he was condemned to perpetual imprisonment in Blackness Castle." Here he was kept till the year 1652 when, being released by the English, he "took himself to be a Doctor of Medicine, by which means he sustains himself and his family."—(Scot of Scotstarvet.) He died in 1659.]

## INFORMATION, &amp;c,

1630.  
February.

The Kinge off France by his commissione doeth assure to himself all that part of America w<sup>ch</sup> lyeth, eleuationne from the fortie too the sixty degree, whereby he doeth includ the River of Canada, all Acady, w<sup>ch</sup> includs all New England and New Scotland. Theas lying in lenthe by the sea coast some six hundrithe myllis.

By this he assumis to himself the sole priuiledge and benefitt off fisching, at this tyme the cheef commerce off France whereby in few yeeris he wilbe able to nourish ane seminary and nurcery off saillers and seamen above ony king in the world. And in this land he hathe bothe the commerce as also the occasioun and means off building or causing boold what schips he pleasis, and all thayr furnitur, and the brauest harborys in the world, so that he may frame his schips off what burding he pleases. He intends, as Captain Danyell hes publickly confessit and professed, the supplantatioune of theas Colonyes off the Inglis in New England, and the making pryss off all the English schipps going thither; and to this effectt he goeth in ane schipp off the King of Frances this zeir, aecompanied with too [two] other smaller schips, and too hundrethe men in euery off them.

That the Kyng of Britane hath as guid right to theas lands as to England I hoop the estate off England knowes it, and I know it can be instructed; and I know it is better then England and Scotland bothe in respect off the climat, the goodnes off y<sup>e</sup> soylls, and riche contrie, iff it were peopled, w<sup>ch</sup> is easy to the King of Britane to doo hauing alreddy in theas parts above seuen thousand of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> subjects.

Captan Danyell is the whol projector of this to the State of France: he is to seound the Jesuits in this cours, he the agent and they the plotters; he is to part from Deep betwix ane the twenty off February with theas his thrie schips. Iff he resaeue nocht interruptionne in his cours this zeir, it will with moir difficulty and damage both heirefter; for he hathe professed, w<sup>ch</sup> shalbe verified befor Captan Fener and the Lo. Wcheltrie, that the King of France did mynd nothing by the peace with England bot to endur for too zeiris till he secured America and peccably possessed himself therein.

(*In dorso.*) The Lo: Ewcheltreis Information.

1630.  
April 15.

SECRETARY VISCOUNT DORCHESTER TO SIR ISAAC WAKE,  
AMBASSADOR IN FRANCE.<sup>1</sup>

In one only point Monsieur de Chasteauneuf seemed to goe away ill satisfied, that he could not obtayne a direct promise from his Ma<sup>t</sup>y for y<sup>e</sup> restoring of Port Royall, joyning to Canada where some Scottishmen are planted vnder the title of Nova Scotia. This Plantation was authorised by King James of happy memorie vnder Letters Patents of y<sup>e</sup> Kingdome of Scotland, and severall Priviledges granted vnto some principal Persons of ranke and quality of this Kingdome w<sup>th</sup> condition to vndertake the same: True it is, it was not begun till towards the end of y<sup>e</sup> warre w<sup>th</sup> France, when some of his Mat<sup>y</sup>s subjects of that Kingdome went to Port Royall, and there seated themselves in a place where no French did inhabite Mons<sup>r</sup> de Chasteauneuf pretending (rather out of his owne discourse, as wee here conceiue, then by commission) that all should be quitt in state as it was before the warre, and by consequence those men w<sup>th</sup>drawne, hath pressed his Mat<sup>y</sup> earnestly for that purpose, and Ilis Mat<sup>y</sup> w<sup>th</sup>out refusing or granting hath taken time to aduise of it letting him know thus much that vnles he found reason as well before, as since the warre, to have that place free for his subjects plantation he would recall them, but in case he shall find the Plantation free for them in time of Peace, the French will have no cause to pretend possession thereof, in regard of the warre, meanwhile Kebec (which is a strong fortified place in the River of Canada, w<sup>ch</sup> the English tooke) his Ma<sup>t</sup>y is content should be restored because the French were removed out of it by strong hand and whatsoever was taken from them in that Fort shall be restored likewise, whereby may appear the reality of His Mat<sup>y</sup>s proceedings; and this I advertise your Lp. for your information, not that it should be needfull for you to treat or negotiate in it, but to y<sup>e</sup> end, that, if it should be spoken of vpon Mon<sup>r</sup> de Chasteauneuf returne, you should not be ignorant how the businessse passed.

DORCHESTER.

Whitehall, 15 Aprill 1630.

(*In dorso.*) Lord of Dorchester to S<sup>r</sup> I<sup>s</sup> Wake, 15 Aprill  
1630 Plantation of Canada, Nova Scotia, Port Royall  
and Kebec.

TO SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER, YOUNGER.

1630.  
May 31.

[CHARLES R.]

Trustie, &c. Heaving wnderstood by your letter, and more ample by report of others, of the good success of your voyage, and of the carefull and provident pro-

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 113.

ceeding for planting of a colonie at Port Royall, which may be a means to settle all that cuntrie in obedience, We give you hartlie thanks for the same, and doe wish you (as wee are confident you will,) to continew, as you have begune, that the wark may be brought to the intendit perfectione; which wee will esteem as one of the most singulare services done vnto ws, and of you accordinglie, and of everie one of your company, that have been good instruments in the same, as wee shall have a testimonie of them from you. See recommending vnto you that you have a special care before you return, to tak a good coarse for government of the Colonie during your absence Wee bid you farewell. Whitehall, the 13 day of May 1630.

TO EARLES, LORDS, GENTLEMEN, KNYGHTS: GENERAL CON-  
VENTION.

1630.  
July 3.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Being informed of your affection and habilitie to doe ws service and desyreing to have a prooff of the same at this tyme wherin sindrie things are to be proponed from ws for the good of that kingdome as will appear by the Articles which we have sent for that effect And that yow may be the better informed we have desyred our trustie and weilbeloved Counsellour Sir William Alexander principall Secretarie for our kingdome of Scotland to acquaint yow more particularie therwith whom yow shall trust in any thing that he doeth delyver vnto yow in our name concerning our service at this tyme and as we find your endeavours to prove we will acknowledge the same accordinglie. Whythall, 3 July 1630.

Ane Letter to ane Erle and two Lordes and two gentlemen of the tenour and date of the precedent, and ane to Lochinvar, of the tenour and date of the precedent, with this clause more, "As lykwayes in the Treatie with yow concerning your Bailliarie and Regalitie."

TO THE COUNSELL: SIR W. ALEXANDER IN NEW SCOTLAND.

1630.  
July 3.

[CHARLES R.]

Right trustie and right weilbelouit Cousin and Counsellour, right trustie and right weilbelouit cousins and counsellours, right trustie and weilbelouit counsellours, and trustie and weilbelouit counsellours, We greite yow weill: There being at this tyme some contraversie betwixt Ws and the French, concerneing the title of landes in America, and particularlie New Scotland, it being alledgeit that Port Royall, wher the Scottish Colonie is planted, should be restored as takin since the making of the peace, by reasone of the Articles made concerneing

the same: As we ar bund in dewtie and justice to discharge what we owe to everie nyghbour Prince, so we must have a care that none of our subjects doe suffer in that which they have vndertakin, vpon just grounds, to doe ws service, nather would we determine in a matter of so great moment till we vnderstude the trew esteat thairof Thairfoir our pleasur is, that yow tak this bussines into your consideratioun; And becaus we desyre to be certifeid how farre we and our subjects ar interested thairin, and what arguments ar fitt to be vsed when any questioun shall ocure concerneing the same for the defence thairof, that efter dew information we may be furnished with reasons how we are bound to manteane the Patents that our late dear Father and We have gevin. So expecting that having informed your selfis sufficientlie of this bussines, yow will returne ws anc answer with diligence. We bid you fareweill. Frome our Court at Whitehall, the third July 1630.

1630.  
July 14.

#### THE GENERAL CONVENTION.<sup>1</sup>

CHARLES R.

Right trustie, &c. Being informed of your affection and abilitie to doe ws service and desyreing to have a proof of the same at this tyme wherin sindrie things are to be propounded from ws for the good of that kingdome as will appear by the Articles which we have sent for that effect And that yow may be better informed we have requyred our trustie &c Sir William Alexander our principall secretarie of that our kingdome to acquaint yow more particularlie therwith whome yow shall trust in any thing he doeth delyver vnto yow in our name concerneing our service at this tyme And as We find your endeavours to prove we will acknowledge the same accordinglie. At Nonsuche, 14 July 1630.

Ther ar two letters more verbatim ut supra Ther ar four letters more verbatim, Trustie and Weilbeloved

Thrie Ratifications signed the same tyme, one of the Act of Interruption One thereof the determinations and Act of annuitie And the thrid in favours of the Baronetts of the title of Barronett.

1630.  
July 14.

#### DIGNITIE OF KNIGHT BARRONETTS.

CHARLES R.

Right trustie and right weilbelouit cousine and counseller right trustie and weilbelouit cousins and Counsellours right trustie and weilbelouit counsellours right

<sup>1</sup> The proceedings of the Convention of Estates in July 1630 are printed in Acts, vol. v. p. 208, *et seq.*



trustie and trustie and weilbelouit We greit you weil Having given furth ane decree vpon these things q<sup>lks</sup> wer submitted vnto us in suche sort as after dew informatioun (having heard all parteis) we conceaved to be best for the publict good and having given order for making interruptioun that we might no way be prejudged by the act of præscriptioun, whiche we can never thinke wes at first intended for anie prejudice of the Crowne, we made choise rather to obviat anie inconvenient that may come thairby by publict acts in counsell then to trouble a number of our lieges by particular citatiouns Thairfoir we have thought fitt to recommend the same vnto yow that they may be confirmed by yow our Estaits convened by ws at this time And lykewayes where our lait deere Father and we have erected the dignitie of Baronnets for advancing the Plantatioun of New Scotland, granting lands thairwith for that effect Wee recommend lykewayes the same in so farre as sall be lawfullie demanded to be confirmed by yow And so not doubting bot that yow will be carefull both of these and all other things that may import the honnour of that Kingdome or the good of our service We bid you fareweill. Frome our court at Nonsuche, the 14 of July 1630.

HIS MAJESTIE'S MISSIVE ANENT PORT ROYALL IN NEW  
SCOTLAND.

1630.  
July 20.

*Apud Halyrudhous vicesimo die mensis Julij 1630.*

The whilk day Sir William Alexander principall Secretar to our Soverane Lord gave in the missive letter underwritten signed be the King's Majestie and directed to the saids Lords, of the whilk the tennour followes.

CHARLES R.

Right trustie and right weilbelouit Cousine and Counsellour, &c. . . . .

[See *supra*, p. 57.]

At Whitehall, the third day of July 1630.

Quhilk letter being read and considerit be the said Lords, They ordaine the said Sir William Alexander whom this business concernes to attend the Lords Chancellor, Thesaurair, President, Lord Gordoun and Advocat, and to propone unto thame the reasouns and arguments for defence of his Majestie's right; Togidder with the objectionis moved be the Frenche for recoverie of the same; To the intent the Counsell upon report thairof, being trewlie informed of the estait and nature of the bussines may certifie backe to his Majestie thair opinion thereanent.



1630.  
July 31.

# RATIFICATIOUN OF THE ORDER OF KNIGHT BAROUNETS.<sup>1</sup>

*Apud Halyrudhous Vltimo die mensis Julij 1630.*

The Estates presentlie convened all in one voice ratifies allowes approves and confirms the dignitie and order of Knight Barounets erected be his Ma<sup>tie</sup> and his lait deere Father of blessed memorie and conferred by thame vpon sindrie Gentlemen of good qualitie for thair better encouragement and retributioun of thair vndertakings in the Plantatioun of New Scotland with all the acts of Secreit Counsell and proclamatiouns following thairvpon, made for maintaining of the said dignitie place and precedence thairof, and ordains the same dignitie place and precedence dew thairto to continew and stand in force in all tyme comming, and that intimatioun be made heirof to all his Ma<sup>ties</sup> leiges be opin proclamatioun at the mercat croce of Edinburgh and other places neidfull.

Followes his Ma<sup>ties</sup> missive for warrand of the Act abouewritten.

[See *supra*, pp. 58, 59.]

1630.  
July 31.

# ANENT NEW SCOTLAND.<sup>2</sup>

The Estaits presentlie convened having dewlie considerit the benefite arysing to this Kingdome by the accessioun of New Scotland and of the successfull plantatioun already made there by the gentlemen vndertakers of the same In regarde whairof and that the saids lands and territoireis of New Scotland ar by the patent thairof made in favours of Sr Williame Alexander of Menstrie Knight his Ma<sup>ties</sup> Secretarie annexed to the Crowne Thairfoir the saids Estaits all in one voice hes concluded and agreed that his Ma<sup>tie</sup> sall be petitioned to mainteane his right of New Scotland And to protect his subjects vndertakers of the said plantatioun in the peaceable possessioun of the same As being a purpose highlie concerning his Ma<sup>ties</sup> honnour and the good and credite of this his ancient Kingdome.

1630.  
September 9.

# TO HIS MAJESTIE, ANENT NEW SCOTLAND.

## MOST SACRED SOUERANE.

We have vnderstood by your Ma<sup>ties</sup> letter of the title pretendit by the Frenshe to the Lands of New Scotland, Whiche being communicat the Estaits at thair lait meiting, and they considering the benefite arysing to this kingdome by the accession of these lands to the Crowne and that your Ma<sup>tie</sup> is boundin in honnour carefullie to provide That nane of your Ma<sup>ties</sup> subjects doe suffer in that whiche for

<sup>1</sup> Acta, vol. v. p. 223.

<sup>2</sup> Ib. p. 224.

your Ma<sup>ties</sup> service and to thair greit charge they haue warrantable vndertakin and successfullie followed out We haue thairupoun presoumed by order from the Estaits to make remonstrance thairof to your Ma<sup>tie</sup> and on thair behalffe to be humble supplicants to your Ma<sup>tie</sup> that your Ma<sup>tie</sup> would be graciouslie pleased seriouslie to take to heart the maintenance of your Royall right to those lands and to protect the Vndertakers in the peaceable possession of the same, as being a busines whiche tuiches your Ma<sup>ties</sup> honnour, the credite of this your native kingdome, and the good of your subjects interested thairin. Remitting the particular reasoun fitt to be vsed for defence of your Ma<sup>ties</sup> right to the relation of Sir William Alexander your Ma<sup>ties</sup> Secretare who is intrusted thairwith, We humbly pray the Almighty God to blesse yo<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>tie</sup> with a long and happie raigne, and wee rest

Your Majesties most humble and obedient Subjects and Seruitours.

MORTOUN.

HAMILTON.

WINTOUN.

S<sup>r</sup> THOMAS HOPE.

LAUDERDAILL.

SCOTTISTARVET.

*Halyrudhous, 9 Septembris 1630.*

(*In dorso.*) To the Kings Most sacred and Excellent Maiestie.

#### REASONS ALLEAGED BY THE SCOTTISH ADVENTURERS FOR THE HOLDING OF PORT ROYAL, &c.<sup>1</sup>

1630.  
September 9.

Immediately about the time that Columbus discovered the Isle of Cuba, Sebastian Chabot set out from England by Henrie the Seventh did first discover the continent of America, beginning at the Newfoundland, and thereafter going to the Gulph of Canada and from thence having seen Cape Bretton all along the coast to Florida: By which discovery his Ma<sup>tie</sup> hath the title to Virginia, New England and New Scotland, as being then first discovered by Chabot at the charge of the king of England.

The French after this neglecting the knowledge they had thereafter by Jaques Cartier of the river of Canada as a cold climat, or as it may bee in regard it was challenged as first discovered by the English, having a great desire to possesse themselves in some part of America, they planted first a colony vnder the charge of Mons<sup>r</sup> Villegagnon in Brasill, and another vnder the charge of Mons<sup>r</sup> Laudoniere in Florida, from both of which they were expelled by the Spaniards.

Then giving over all hope of attempting any thing that was belonging to the Spaniards, and pressing by all meanes to haue some interest in America, notwithstanding that the English (though they were not able to possesse the whole at

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 119. Annexed is a copy of the preceding letter from the Council of Scotland, September 9, 1630.

first) had possessed themselves of that continent, discovered by them, by a Colonie in the South part thereof was now called Virginia and by another in the north part thereof now called New England and New Scotland, planted by Justice Popham. The French in the time of Henry the fourth, under the charge of Monsieur Pont-rincourt, having scene all the coasts of New England and New Scotland to both which parts they did then beginne to claim right: They seated themselves in Port Royal; Out of which, as soon as it was made known to the English, they were dis-planted by S<sup>r</sup> Samuel Argall, as having wrongfully intruded themselves Within those bounds which did belong to this Crowne, both by discouery and possession.

The remainder of this French Collony not having occasion to be transported to France stayed still in the contrie Yet they were neglected by the State not owning them any more and hardly supplied in that which was necessary for them by voluntary adventurers, who came to trade in hope of their comodities in Exchange of what they bought: And during the time of King James there was no complaint made vpon S<sup>r</sup> Samuel Argall for having displantd them, and they were now lately glad to demand that protection from his Ma<sup>tie</sup> which was not afforded them from any other. Whereby it may evidently appeare, that his Ma<sup>ties</sup> title was thought good, otherwise it is likely the French King, if any wrong had been done vnto him, would haue sought to haue had the same repaired, either by treatie or otherwise. But without making either any priuat complaint, or yet doing any publick Act against the same They went next and seated themselves vpon the north side of the River of Canada at Kibeck, a place wherevnto the English by a preceeding title might likewise haue claimed right: But small notice was taken thereof till during the time of the late Warre a Commission was given by his Ma<sup>tie</sup> to remove them from thence, which was accordingly performed, the place being taken, a little after the peace was concluded, which at that time had not come to the takers knowledge, and a Colonie of Scottish was planted at Port Royal, which had never beene repossessed nor claimed by the French since they were first removed from the same.

This businesse of Port Royal cannot be made lyable to the Articles of the peace, seeing there was no act of hostilitie comitted thereby, a Colonny onely beeing planted vpon his Ma<sup>ties</sup> owne ground, according to a Patent granted by his Ma<sup>ties</sup> late deare father and Ma<sup>ties</sup> selfe having as good right thereto as to any part of that Continent; and bothe the patent and the possession taken thereupon was in the time of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> late deare Father, as is set downe at length in the Voyages written by Purchas. But neither by that possession nor be the subsequent plantation hath anything beene taken from the French whereof they had any right at all, or yet any possession for the time, and what might haue beene done either before the warre or since the warre, without a breach of peace cannot justly bee complained vpon for beeing done at that time.

After that the Scottish Colonie was planted at Port Royal, they and the French who dwelled there hauing met with the Commanders of the Natives, called by them Sagamaes did make choice of one of the cheefe of them called Sagamo Segipt to come in name of the rest to his Ma<sup>tie</sup> for acknowledging of his title, and to become his Ma<sup>ties</sup> subjects, crauing only to be protected by his Ma<sup>tie</sup> against their enemies; which demand of his was accepted by his Ma<sup>tie</sup>, who did promise to protect them, as he reported to the rest at his returne.

Mon<sup>sr</sup> La Tour who was cheif command<sup>r</sup> of the few French then in that Countrie beeing neglected (as is sayd) by his own Countriemen, and finding his Ma<sup>ties</sup> title not so much as questioned after their beeing expelled from Port Royal and the coming in of the Scottish necessary for his securitie, did along with the same Sagamo offering and demanding the like in the name of the French who liue there: So that his Ma<sup>tie</sup> hath a good right to New Scotland by discovery, by possession of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> subjects, by removinge of the French, who had seated themselves at Port Royal, and by Mon<sup>sr</sup> La Tour command<sup>r</sup> of them there his turning Tenant and by the voluntarie hauing tenents of the rest to his Ma<sup>tie</sup> and that no obstaele might remaine the very Sauages by their Commissioner willingly offering their obedience vnto his Ma<sup>tie</sup> So that his Ma<sup>tie</sup> now is bound in honor to maintaine them, both in regard of his subjects that haue planted there upon his warrant and of the promises that he made to the Commissioner of the Natiues that came to him from them, as he promised to the Comissioners of the Natiues, And as all the subjects of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> ancient kingdome of Scotland did humbly entreat at their last Conuention, as may appeare by a letter to his Ma<sup>tie</sup> from his Counsel to that effect.

9 September 1630.

PETITION OF SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER, CAPTAIN DAVID  
KIRKE, &c.<sup>1</sup>

1631.  
February 26.

Petition of Sir Wil. Alexander, Capt. David Kirke, and Others, Adventurers in the Company of Canada, to the Admiralty. The King granted them comission some three years ago to plant colonies in the river of Canada, to displant those who were enemies in those lands, and to trade with the natives. Are informed that diuers ships are bound thither, particularly the Whale of London, masters Richard Brewerton and Wolston Goslyn, contrary to that comission and greatly to the petitioners' prejudice. Pray that such vessels may be stayed or sufficient assurance given that they will prosecute no such voyage. Underwritten is a reference to Sec. Dorchester to examine the parties, and if they have intention to go into those parts, to order that they be stayed as is desired.

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 128.

1631.  
[February 29.]  
Whitehall.

# PROPOSED WARRANT TO STAY CERTAIN SHIPS.<sup>1</sup>

Warrant for the stay of certain ships bound to Canada contrary to a commission granted to Sir Will. Alexander, Jarvis Kirke, and others who have been at great charges in settling and maintaining a colony and fort within those bounds.

(*Endorsed by Sec. Dorchester*). " Conceit of a letter for hinderance of men going to Canada, desired by Sir Wm. Alexander."

1631.  
April 19.

# JUSTICES OF IRELAND.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas our right trustie and weilbeloved the Lord Ochilttrie Our trustie and weilbeloved Counsellours Sir Peiree Corsbie and Sir Archibald Achiesone kny<sup>ts</sup> and baronets and our trustie and weilbeloved Sir Walter Corsbie kny<sup>t</sup> and baronet intent to plant a Colonie nearer vnto the river of Canada in America Becaus the purpois is honorabill and may conduce to the good of our service our speciall pleasur is that from tyme to tyme as they or any of them shall have occasion yow grant them Commissions and warrants requisit for transporting thither such persones as shalbe willing to be employed in that plantation And that yow licence and caus licence them and such as shall have ther or any of ther warrants to transport provisions of victuall ordinance munition and all other necessities whatsoever fitt for ther vse ffor doing wherof as these presents shalbe vnto yow a sufficient warrant so we will accompt your care in furthering of them as good and acceptable service done vnto ws. We bid you farewell. Whythall, 19 April 1631.

1631.  
April 29.

# TO THE COUNSELL.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas yow bath recommended to our princelie care the advancement and manteneing of the work of Plantation of New Scotland being lykwyse petitioned by our whole Estats convened for taking some course which might best tend for effectuating that interpryse And doing of our selffes daylie more and more sensible how much the prosecution of it concerneth ws in honor and the state of that our antient kingdome many wayes in benefite, considering lykwyse the course which we had layd down for it in conferring a title of honor vpon some deserving persones who should engadge themselfis for the advancement thereof hath made but slow progress and that diuerse noblemen and others generouslie

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 128.

affect have contracted with our trustie and weilbelouit Sir W<sup>m</sup> Alexander our Secretarie who is speciallie intrusted by ws to prosecute that work for the more speedie effectuating of our designe in it, the doeing whereof is very acceptable vnto ws Our pleasur is that yow mak choyse of a certane number amonges your selfis of such as haue alreadie testifeid ther earnest affection to the work by contracting in that kynd with our said servand, that they may tak seriouslie vnto ther consideratiouns by what meanes our designes in this may be best accomplished; that being acquainted therwith we may by your advyse tak such further course as shalbe requisit; ffor there shalbe nothing wanting in ws that may second so just desyres and honorabill designes: which earnestlie recommending vnto your care We bid yow farewell. Whythall, 29 Aprill 1631.

## SIGNATURE OF COMMISSION FOR THE BARRONETTS.

1631.  
May 5.

These conteyne ane Ratificatioun of the two former Commissions of Barronetts and all Patents and Infestments granted conforme thairto, preceeding the date heirof, with ane new commission gevin power to certane Commissioners above nominat or any fyve of them to receave resignation of lands lyand within the countrie of New Scotland, vpoun the resignation of your Ma<sup>ties</sup> Secretarie Sir William Alexander Lieutenant of Nova Scotia; and to grant infestments thairvpou of the saids lands to the persones in whois favours the samyne is made, togidder with the title and dignitie of Barronett: And also conteynes ane Ratificatioun of the Seall and Armes of New Scotland, with power to the saids Commissioners, with advyse of the said Sir William Alexander, to change the samyne: and last, conteynes ane Ratificatioun of ane warrant gevin by your Ma<sup>tie</sup> to the saids Barronetts for bearing and wearing of ane badge, and cognoscence, with a new warrant for bearing and wearing of the samyne in maner above specifeit, discharginge the vse of the saids former commissions efter the date heirof; and this to indure without revocation ay and whill the full number of ANE HUNDRETH AND FYFTIE BARRONETTS be made and compleit. Greenwich, 5 May 1631.

## WILLIAM CLAYBORNE: LICENCE TO TRAFFIC.

1631.  
May 16.

CHARLES be the Grace of God King of England Scotland France and Ireland Defender of the fayth, &c. Whereas our trustie and weilbeloved William Clayborne, one of our Counsell and Secretarie of state for our Colonie of Virginia, and some other Adventurers with him, haue condescendit with our trustie and weilbeloved counsellour Sir William Alexander kny<sup>t</sup> principall Secretarie of our kingdome of Scotland and others of our loveing subjects who haue charge of our Colonies of New



Scotland and New England to keep a course for interchange of trade amongst them as they shall have occasion as also to mak discovereis for increase of trade in these parts; and because we doe verie much approve of all such worthie intentions and ar desyreous to give good encouragment to their proceedingis therin, being for the releiff and comfort of these our subjects and enlargment of our dominions, These ar to licence and authorize the said William Clayborne his associats and companie frielie without interruption from tyme to tyme to trade and traffique for corne furis or any vther commoditeis whatsoever with ther schips men boatts and merchandice, in all seas coasts rivers creiks herbereis landis territoireis in neir or about these parts of America for which ther is not alreadie a patent grantit to others for the whole trade And for that effect we requyre and command yow, and everie of yow, particularie our trustie and weilbelovit Sir John Hervie knyght governour and the rest of our Counsell of and for our Colonie of Virginia, to permitt and suffer him and them with ther saids schips boats merchandice and cattell mariners servandis and such as shall willinglie accompanie or be imployed by them from tyme to tyme frielie to repair and trade to and agree in all the aforsaid parts and places as they shall think fitt and ther occassins shall requyre, without any stop arreist search hinderance or molestation whatsoever as yow and everie of yow will answer the contrarie at your perrells, giueing and by these presents granting to the said William Clayborne full power to direct and governe correct and punish such of our subjects as shalbe vnder his command, in his waye and discovereis And for your see doing, these presents shalbe your sufficient warrant. Gevin at our mannor at Greenwich the 16 of May 1631 the sevint year of our regne.

To our trustie and weilbeloved our Governour and Counsell of Virginia, To all our Livtennants of provinces and cuntreys in America, gouvernours and vthers haueing any charge of Coloneis of any of our subjects ther, and to all Captanes and Masters of schipps, and generallie to all our subjects whatsoever whom these presents doe or may concerne.

1631.  
June 30.

#### N. BRIOT: FARTHING'S COINING.

[CHARLES R.]

Wheras we have gevin ordour for coyneing a certane quantitie of copper into farthing tokens in our kingdome of Scotland and for performance of which work yow ar made choyse of These ar therfor to requyre and authorize yow to forge mak and grave or cause to be made and graved in our citie of London or elswer



within this our kingdome of England, all kynds of instruments presses engynes yrones stamper coynes with all others provisions necessarie for the fabrication of the saidis farthings, to be delyvered by such as yow shall be directed by our trustie and weilbeloved Counsellour Sir W<sup>m</sup> Alexander kny<sup>t</sup>, that they may be transported vnto our Mynt of our toun of Edinburgh Within our said kingdome of Scotland For doeing whair of as also for your owin repairing thither for setting vp and establishing the said work, these presents shalbe vnto yow a sufficient warrand. From our Court of Greenwich, the last of Junij 1631.

To our trustie and weilbelovit Nicolas Briot Cheiff graver  
of our Mynt within our kingdome of England.

#### THESAURER AND DEPUTIE.

[CHARLES R.]

1631.  
July 4.

Right, &c. Whereas ther hath bene a proposition made vnto ws for coyneinge a quantitie of farthingis tokens within that our kingdome such as ar current heir and considering in regard of the scarcitie of money for the present ther, that some such kynd of coyne wer the more necessarie at this tyme for the vse of the meaner sort, and for the smaller sowmes; yet becaus we desyre to proceed heirin as circumspectlie as can be both for the good of our owin subjects and that such correspondencie may be kept heirin with our other kingdomes as in such caise is requisit Our pleasur is that haveing conferred with them who have the charge of our Mynt as lykwyse with the propounders of this course that yow mak the fayrest and best bargane yow can for our advantage and that yow sequester the moneyis arysing therby to be bestowed as yow shall have a particular warrant from ws for that effect. Greenwich, fourth July 1631.

#### PRECEPT TO THE THESAURER AND DEPUTIE.

1631.  
July 10.

[CHARLES R.]

In regard of the good and faythfull service done vnto ws by Sir William Alexander our Secretarie, it is Our pleasur that yow delyver vnto him for his vse all and whole the moneyis that doe or shall belong vnto ws (as feyis justlie due being defrayed) for our share by the coyneinge of the farthing tokens or of any such copper coyne as yow shall think fitt to be coyned by vertew of our warrant sent vnto yow for that effect and that ye send vnto ws any further warrant that yow think necessarie heirin: ffor doeing wherof in delyverie the same to him by vertew of this warrant or for drawing vp of another these ar to secure yow as a sufficient discharge and warrant. Greenwich, 10 July 1631.

1631.  
July 10.

# WARRANT TO SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas ther is a finall agreement made betwixt ws and our good brother the French King, and that, amongst other particulariteis for perfecting heiroy we haue condescendend that Port Royall shall be putt in the estate it was befor the beginning of the late warre, that no pairtie may have any advantage ther durning the continuance of the same and without derogation to any preceiding right or title be vertew of any thing done other then or to be done by the doeing of that which we command at this tyme It is our will and pleasur and we command yow heirby that with all possible diligence yow give ordour to Sir George Home knyght or any vther haueing charge from yow ther, to demolish the Fort which was builded by your Sone ther, and to remove all the people goods ordinance munition cattell and vther things belonging vnto that Colonie, leaueing the boundis altogidder waist and vnpeopled as it was at the tyme when your said Sone landed first to plant ther, by vertew of our commission, and this yow faill not to doe, as yow wilbe answerable vnto ws. Greenwich, 10 July 1631.

1631.  
July 12.

# TO THE COUNSELL.

[CHARLES R.]

Right trustie and right weilbelouit Cousino and Counsellour, &c. Seeing we have sene, by a letter from yow, the ordour of Barronets erected by our late dear Father and ws, for furthering the Plantation of New Scotland, was approved by the whole Estats of our kingdome at the last Convention; And that we vnderstand, both by ther reports that cam from thence, and by the sensible consideration and notice taken therof by our nyghbour cuntreyis, how well that work is begun, Our right trustie and weilbeloued counsellour Sir William Alexander our Leivtennent ther haueing fullie performed what was expected from him, for the benefite which was intendit for him by these Barronets, being verie desyreous that he should not suffer therein, bot that both he and others may be encouraged to prosecute the good begining that is made, as we hartelie thank all such as hath contribute ther ayde by contracting with him for advancing of the said work alreadie, Our pleasur is that yow seriouslie consider, either amongst yow all, or by a Committie of such as ar best affectionat towards that work, how it may be best brought to perfection; for we are so far (whatever contraversie be about it) from quying our title to New Scotland and Canada, that we wilbe verie carefull to manteane all our good subjects who doe plant themselfis there, and lett none of the Barronets anyway be prejudged in the

honour and priviledges conteynit in ther Patents, by punisching of all that dare to presume to wrong them therin, that others may be encouraged to tak the lyk course, as the more acceptable vnto ws and the nearer to a title of Nobilitie, whervnto that of Barronets is the next degrie: And if the said Sir William as our Livetennent of New Scotland shall convene the Barronetts to consult to-gidder concerneing that Plantation, we herby authorise him, and will yow to authorise him as far as is requisit for that effect, willing that Proclamatioun be made of what we haue signifeid, or of what yow shall determine for furthering that work, wherof we recomend the care to yow, as a matter importing speciallie our honor and the good of that our ancient kingdome. From our Mannour at Greenwiche, the twelfe day of Julij 1631.

## PRO REGE GALLORUM.

1631.  
July 28.

CAROLUS Dei gratia Magnæ Britanniae Franciæ et Hiberniæ Rex fideique defensor etc. Omnibus hæc visuris salutem: Quandoquidem omnino justum æquum et bonum judicamus, vt jam tandem pax et concordia nuper inter nos et Regem Christianissimum, fratrem nostrum charissimum conclusa, pristinum vigorem et effectum recuperent, atque adeo omnes contraversiæ et difficultates quæ hactenus hinc inde intercederunt inter nostra regna et subditos mutuo redintegrata et perfecta reconciliatione vtrunque removerantur et aboleantur, In quem finem nos inter alias conditiones ex nostra parte præstandas Consensimus desertionem facere fortalicii seu castri et habitationis Portus Regalis, vulgo *Port Royall*, in Nova Scotia, qui flagrante adhuc bello vigore diplomatis ceu commissionis sub regni Scotiæ sigillo pro derelicto captus et occupatus fuerat, et illud tamen sine vlllo prejudicio juris aut tituli nostri aut subditorum nostrorum inposterum: Nos promisserum atque verbi nostri Regii fidem quibuscunque contrariis rationibus et objectionibus hac super re illatis aut inferendis anteferentes, hisce literis asserimus et in verbo Regio promittimus nos præcepturos curatores et effecturos vt a nostris in dicto fortalicio siue castro et habitatione Portus Regalis, vulgo *Port Royall*, subsistentibus subditis siue ceu milites præsidialii siue ceu Coloni et Incolæ ibidem morentur et habitentur immediate quam primum nostræ jussionis literæ a deputatis vel commissariis qui easdem a prefato nostro fratre charissimo Rege Christianissimo, eo mandandi, habebunt efferendas ipsis erunt exhibitæ et perlectæ, atque redeandi facultas data, dictum castrum seu fortalicium et habitatio in Portu Regali durantur deserentur, relinquantur, denique arma tormenta commeatus armenta bona et vtensilia inde asportentur In cujus rei testimonium has literas nostras manu nostra et magno regni nostri Scotiæ sigillo signare et confirmare volumus: Quæ dabantur ex Palatio nostro Grenovici, die 28 mensis Julij Anno Domini 1631, et nostri regni septimo.

1631.  
July 28.

# PROCLAMATIOUN ANENT BARONNETTIS.

*Apud Halyrudhous 28 Julij 1631.*

Forsamekle as the order of Barronnets erected by our Souerane Lord and his lait dear Father of blessed memorie for fordering the plantatioun of New Scotland wes approvin be the whole Estaits of this kingdome at the last Conventioun and his Majesties vnderstanding by many reports that come from hence, and by the sensible consideratioun and notice taken thair of by nighbour countreis how weil that work is begun, His Majesteis right traist cousine and counsellor the Viscount of Stirline his Majesteis lieutenant there haucing fullie performed what wes expected from him for the benefite whilk wes intendit by these Baronnets: And His Majestic being verie desirous that he sould not suffer thairin but that both he and others may be encouraged to prosecute the good beginning that is made His Majestic for this effect is so farre (what ever contraversie be anent it) from quitting his title to New Scotland and Cannada that his Majestic will be verie carefull to mainteane all his good subjects who doe plant thameselves there and will lett none of the Baronnets be anie waye prejudged in the honnour and priviledges conteanit in thair Patents, bot will punishe all that darre presume to wrong thame thairin, for encouraging of others to take the lyke course as the more acceptable to his Majestic and the nearer to ane title of nobilitie whairunto that of Baronnet is the nixt degree And Ordanis letters to be direct chargeing officiaris of armes to pas and make publicatioun heirof be opin proclamatioun at the Mercat Croces of the heid Burrowes of this kingdome and uther places neidfull, qulhairthrow nane pretend ignorance of the same.

1631.  
July 28.

# COMMISSION ANENT BARONNETS.

The Lords of Secreit Counsell for the better furdurance and advancement of the plantatioun of New Scotland, Gives and grants Commission be thir presents to Thomas Erle of Hadinton Lord Privie Seale, George Erle of Wintoun, Alexander Erle of Linlithgow, Robert Lord Melvill, Johne Lord Tracquir, Archibald Lord Naper, David Bishop of Rosse, Sir Archibald Achesone Secretarie, Sir Johne Hamiltoun of Magdalens Clerk of Register, Sir Thomas Hope of Craighall knight baronnet Advocat, Sir George Elphinstoun Justice Clerk, Sir Johne Scot of Scotistartvet, and Sir James Baillie, Or anie fyve of thame without excluding of anie others of the Counsell who sall be present To convene and meit with William Viscount of Stirline and the Knights Baronnets at such tyme and place as the said Viscount of Stirline sall appoint And to conferre with thame upoun the best meanis

for the furduring of the said Plantatioun And to make and sett down Overtures thereanent And to present and exhibit thame to the saids Lords to the intent they may allowe or rectifie the same as they sall thinke expedient.

Followes his Majesteis missive for Warrant of the Act aboute writtyn.

CHARLES R.

Right trustie and right weilbelouit Cousine and Counsellour . . . . .

[See *supra*, p. 68].

From our Mannour at Greenwiche, the twelf day of Julij 1631.

TO THE THESAURER DEPUT.

[CHARLES R.]

1631.  
July 28.

Right, &c. Whereas we wer pleased in July last to send our right trustie, &c. the Viscount of Stirling our principall Secretarie for that our kingdome about bussines speciallie importing the good of our service, for which he had no allowance of ws towards the defraying of his charges, and that now vpon the lyk reasone we have thoght good to send him bak agane It is our pleasur that vpon sight heirof yow pay vnto him the sowme of [*blank in MS.*] and the lyk sowme whensoever heirefter he by our speciall direction shalbe imployed by ws thither, out of the first readiest of our rents and casualiteis whatsumever. Greenwich, 28 July 1631.

N. BRIOTT.

1631.  
December 8.

[CHARLES R.]

Whereas we have made choyse of our trustie and weilbeloved Nicolas Briott our cheiff graver of our Mynt of England for the coyneing of a certane quantitie of Copper Coyne, presentlie ordeaned by ws and our Counsell to be coyned in the Mynt of that our kingdome, for which vse we have expresslie directed him thither Our pleasur is, yow permitt him to sett vp and establish in the most convenient place of our said Mynt all engynes and tooles necessarie for that work, and to give vnto him or his deputeis all concurrence and assistance, till the said quantitie of copper be fullie coyned. Whythall, 8 December 1631.

TO THE COUNSELL.

1631.  
December 13.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas vpon our pleasur formerlie signifeid vnto yow tuitching the Copper Coyne yow gave orduor for coyneing of fyftene hundreth stone wecht of copper vnto farthing tokens of the lyk weght and value as thay ar current in this kingdome Being now informed by our right, &c. the Viscount of Stirling our principall Secretarie ther that diverse of our loveing subjects conceave the division

of the penney sterling formerlie vsed to be more convenient for exchange and reckonyng then the new division into four farthings and that (for avoyding the danger of counterfitting and for the more exactnesse of the impression) it is thought fitt to mak the Copper money of a greater proportion of weght Our pleasur is that the said quantitie of Copper be coyned in severall spaces of penny two penny and four penny peices and that a fyftene part therof be coyned into pennys weying eight granes the peice (being the weght formerlie allowed by yow to the farthings) and the remanent quantitie be equall division into two and four penny peeces of proportionable weght to the penny causing distinguish them be ther bearing on the one syd the figure or number of ther value vnder ane imperiall Croun with our Inscription and on the vther the Thistle with the vsuall Motto and that ther be made of the said thrie peeces the said quantitie of Copper so ordeaned by yow to have bene coyned in farthings with what addition yow shall now or heirefter think fitt in regard of the alteration of the weght of the peices and as the necessitie of the Cuntrie shall requyre Which Coyne we will to have course amongst our subjects for the vse of the poore and change of small commodities without any vther imposition in the payment of great sowmes then hath bene formerlie accustomed in the Copper Coyne of that our kingdome or shall from tyme to tyme seme expedient vnto yow And in regard of the necessitie of a speedie returne hither for occasion concerneing our service of Nicolas Bryot our cheiff graver of our Mynt heir whom we directit thither for coyneing these moneyis We speciallic recommend vnto yow that no farder delay be made in putting that work to perfection. Whythall, 13 December 1631.

## TO THE COUNSELL.

1631.  
December 29.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas vpon our pleasur formerlie signifeid vnto yow tuitching the Copper Coyne yow gave ordour for coyneing fyftene hundreth stane weght of Copper into farthing tokens of the lyk weght and value as they ar current in this our kingdome being now informed by our right, &c. the Viscount of Stirling our principall Secretarie ther that diverse of our loving subjects conceave the division of the penny sterling, &c. [see above] as is forsaid in the vther letter.

1632.  
February 19.

VISCOUNT STIRLING: SIGNATURE £10,000, &c.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas we send heirwith inclosed vnto yow a signature of Ten Thowsand pund sterling in favours of our right, &c. the Lord Viscount of Stirling to be past and exped by yow vnder our great Seall; least any



mistaking should ensue therupon we have thought it good to declare vnto yow that (as it may appear by itself) it is nowayes for quytting the title ryght or possession of New Scotland or of any part therof, bot onlie for satisfaction of the losses that the said Viscount hath by geiuing ordour for removinge of his Colony at our express command for performeing of ane Article of the Treatie betwixt the French and ws, and We ar so far from abandoneing of that busines as We doe heirby requyre yow and everie one of yow to affoord your best help and encouragement for furthering of the same, cheiflie in perswading such to be Baronets as ar in qualitie fitt for that dignitie and come befor yow to seek for favour from ws: but remitting the maner to your own judgment and expecting your best endeavours heirin willing thir presents to be insert in your books of Exchequer, and ane act made therupon, We bid, &c. Whythall, 19 February 1632.

## SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER: LUBEC SHIP.

1632.  
March 8.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas we are informed that ther is ane action in Law betweene Sir William Alexander kny<sup>t</sup> and some Citizens of Lubec depending befor you concerneing ane schip which they alledge to be wrongouslie takin from them and vnjustlie declared pryse by ane Court of Admiraltie ther, wheranent we directed our warrant to yow two yeres agoe at their desyre Notwithstanding wherof as we ar lykwyse informed they haue delayed till now to prosecute the same befor yow, thought the said Sir William hath bene severall tymes present ther since that tyme Therfor in regard that his presence for his particuler knowledge in that state of the bussines may conduce to the cleiring of it, and that he can not as yit repair thither for occasions speciallie concerning our service Our pleasur is, that all further proceeding therin be delayed till the first day of Jan<sup>y</sup> nixt insueing, that he may convenientlie attend the determination of the same: for doing wherof these presents salbe, &c. Newmerket, 3 March 1632.

## SIR JAMES BALFOUR, LYON KING AT ARMES.

1632.  
March 15.

[CHARLES R.]

Trustie, &c. We haue bene latelie pleased to confer vpon our right, &c. Sir WILLIAM ALEXANDER kny<sup>t</sup> our principall Secretarie for Scotland the title of VISCOUNT STIRLING as ane degrie of honour which we have estemed due to his merite And to the effect ther be nothing wanting which is vsuall in this kynd that this our favour and the remembrance of his good and faythfull services done vnto ws may be in record Our pleasur is and We doe heirby requyre yow



according to the dewtie of your place to marshall his Coate Armour alloweing it to him quartered with the Armes of Clan Allaster who hath acknowledged him for cheiff of ther familie, in whois armes according to the draught which we send yow heirwith, quartered with his coat, We 'ar willing to confirme them Requyreing yow to Register them accordinglie; and we doe further allow to the said Viscount Stirling the armes of the countrie of New Scotland in ane inscutschione as in a badge of his endeavours in the interprysing of the work of that plantation which doe tend so much to our honour and the benefite of our subjects of that our kingdome: and with all to fitt his said Coat with a convenient crest and supporters such as may be acceptable vnto him; ffor doing whair of, and for registering of this warrant and his Coat in your registers for that purpois, or for drawing such farther warrant as shalbe requisit, these presents shalbe your warrant. Newmerket, 15 March 1632.

1632.  
May 29.

SIR HENRIE MARTEN: PRYSE OF A LUBEC SCHIP.

[CHARLES R.]

Trustie, &c. Whereas we have bene petitioned concerning a schip of Lubec that some yeris agoe was declared pryso in our Court of Admiraltie in Scotland, We ar desyreous befor we giue any ordour therin to haue your opinion according to the case which we send yow heirwith Therfor our pleasur is that yow peruse it and delyver vnto ws your opinion concerneing the same that we may be the better informed to giue such ordour as shalbe further requysite. Greenwich 29 May 1632.

1632.  
June 12.

RESTITUTION OF QUEBEC TO THE FRENCH.<sup>1</sup>

CHARLES R.

Trusty & well beloved we greeto you well, For so much as there is made a finall good agreem<sup>t</sup> betwixt vs & o<sup>r</sup> brother, the French King, and that allwise as well betwixt o<sup>r</sup> Crownes as subjects are settled by a mutuall & perfect accord, that amongst other particularities on o<sup>r</sup> side Wee haue consented to the restitution of the fort & habitation of Kebeck in Canada, as taken by force of armes since the peaco, howsoever the Commision were given out to you duringo the warre betwixt vs & the said King. Weo preferring the accomplishm<sup>nt</sup> of o<sup>r</sup> Royal words & promises before all whatsoever allegations may be made to the contrary in the behalfe, as wee haue obliged o<sup>r</sup> selves to that King for the

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 151.

due performance thereof by an act passed under the great Seale of this o<sup>r</sup> Realme of England; so Wee doe by these o<sup>r</sup> letters straightly charge & comaund you, that vpon the first commodity of sending into these parts & meanes for yo<sup>r</sup> people to returne yea we give notice & order to all such subjects of o<sup>rs</sup> w<sup>ch</sup> are under yo<sup>r</sup> commission & government, as well folouers w<sup>ch</sup> are in garrison in the forsayd fort & habitation of Kebec for defence thereof, as inhabitants w<sup>ch</sup> are there seated & planted, to render according to the said agreem<sup>nt</sup>, the said fort & habitation into the hands of such as shalbe by o<sup>r</sup> sayd brother, the French King, appointed & authorised to comaund & receaue the same from them in the same state it was at the tyme of the taking, w<sup>th</sup>out demolishing any thing of the fortifications & buildings, w<sup>ch</sup> were erected at the tyme of the taking, or w<sup>th</sup>out carying away the armes, munitions, marchandises, or vtensills w<sup>ch</sup> were then found therein. And yf anything hathe bene formerly caryed away from thence o<sup>r</sup> pleasure is it shalbe restored eyther in specie or value, according to the quality of what hath bene made to appeare upon oath & was sett downe in a schedule made by mutuall consent of such as had cheife comaund on both sides at the taking & rendring thereof. And for soe doing these o<sup>r</sup> letters shall not only serue for warrant, but likewise for such expresse signification of o<sup>r</sup> will & pleasure that whosoever officer, soldier, or inhabitant, shall not readily obey, but shew himself cross or refractory thereunto, shall incurre o<sup>r</sup> highest indignation, & such punishm<sup>nt</sup> and penalty as shalbe due unto offendo<sup>rs</sup> of so high a nature. Given under o<sup>r</sup> Signett at o<sup>r</sup> Mann<sup>or</sup> of Greenwich the twelft of June in seaventh [eighth] yeare of o<sup>r</sup> raygne.

(*In dorso.*) To our trusty and wellbeloved Sir William Alexander knight, Robert Charlton and William Barkly our Commissioners for the Gulfe & River of Canada and parts adjacent & to their partners & Deputyes & all others whom it may concern.

SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER: LUBEC SCHIP.

1692.  
June 14.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Haueing heard that there are some actions depending befor yow for reducing of decreits that wer gevin by our Admirall vpon pryse schippes dureing the tyme of the late warris, we ar confident that he hath not proceedit in any such processe but vpon verie just groundis and no decreit gevin by our Admirall of this our kingdome can be reduced befor aney vther judge saue by such as ar especiallie appoynted by ws for that purpois and though we doe not intend to derogate from our Iudicatorie in aney thing that is proper object thairof yet in regard that our right, &c. the Duke of Lennox our Admirall is

absent for the present, and a minor of whome we have takin charge, and that we would not have any just caus gevin to discourage others heirefter to undertak in our service in the lyk kynd when they shall sie these to suffer who efter sentence gevin in the ordinario Court haue disposed of the goodis according thervnto We have thocht fitt to recommend vnto yow that yow proceed the more warelie in any action persewed befor yow of this nature that these our subjects who ar or shalbe interested in that kynd may find all the just favour and encouragement which the practeis of other nationes and the Lawis of that our kingdome may allow: which especiallie recommending vnto your care we bid, &c. Greenwich, 14 Junij 1632.

1632.  
June 14.

#### ADVOCATE: NEW SCOTLAND.

[CHARLES R.]

Trustie, &c. Whereas vpon the late Treatie betwixt ws and the French King we wer pleased to condescend, that the Colonie which was latelie planted at Port Royall, in New Scotland, should be for the present removed from thence, and have accordinglie gevin ordour to our right, &c. The Viscount of Stirling our principall Secretarie for Scotland, altho, by all our severall ordours and directions concerneing that busines, we have ever expressed that we have no intention to quyt our right title to anie of these boundis, yet, in regard our meaneing perchance will not be sufficientlie vnderstude by these our loving subjects who heirefter shall intend the advancement of that work, ffor ther further satisfaction heirin we doe heirby requyr yow to draw vp a sufficient warrant for our hand to pas vnder our great seall, to our said Right, &c. the Viscount of Stirling to goe on in the said work whensoever he shall think fitting wherby for the encouragement of such as shall interest themselfis with him in it he may have full assurance from ws in *verbo principis*, that as we have never meant to relinquish our title to any part of these cuntreyis which he hath by patents from ws, so we shall ever heirefter be readie by our gracious favour to protect him and all such as have or shall heirefter at aney tyme concurre with him, for the advancement of the plantations in these boundis forsaidis: And if at aney tyme heirefter by ordour from ws they shalbe forced to remove from the saidis boundis or aney part thereof wher they shall happin to be planted, we shall fully satisfie them for all loss they shall susteane by aney such act or ordour from ws And for your see doeing, &c. Greenwich, 14 Junij 1632.

The 20 of Junij a packet went to Scotland direct to Sir Ar<sup>d</sup> Achiesone, wherin ther was 5 Letteris of his Ma<sup>ty</sup> To the Advocat, New Scotland: Session, Lubec Schip: Exchequer, James Dowgles: Chancellour, Sir Piers Corsbie: Counsell, Mr Ro<sup>t</sup> Williamstone.

SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER'S NOTE FOR NEW SCOTLAND.<sup>1</sup>1632.  
[June 16.]

*A minute of some points considerable for his Majesties Service in regard of the French their possessing of New Scotland at this time.*

The possessing of it by the French immediatelie vpon the late Treatie, though it bee not warranted by the Treatie, if some speidie act do not disproue it, will be held to be authorised by it.

The French pretend title to Virginia & New England as may appeare by their patent graunted to the Canada Companie of all Noua Francia from Florida to the North Pole, To be found in *Mercurie François*e anno 1627, which tytle may hereafter proue dangerous for his Ma<sup>ties</sup> subjects in these pairts if the French become stronge in New Scotland.

It is evident that the French haue a designe more than ordinarie herein for besides there plantacion in Canada for the which there is a reason apparent in the benefite of trade, they haue this yeare sent 300 men to New Scotland where no present benefite can possiblie redound to them in proportion to the charge they are at, and are the next yeare as I am crediblie informed, to sett out ten shippes with planters these that are interested in it haueing bound themselves to a yearlie supplie of a great number of planters, which is a certane prooue of some end greater then any persons expectation of proffit can encourage them into.

This then future expectation in my judgement most consist in the use of wood, for building of shippes, and for haueing all materials requisite for shipping such as pitch, tarr, & roset, which are there in abundance, yron oare hath been lykeways formerlie discouered by the French themselves.

The building of shippes there and the imployment of them in fishing which aboundes vpon that coast especiallie Salt being to be made by the Sunne as in France lykelie to tend infinitlie to the iner case of shipping and of mariners, which apparentlie is the designe of the French besides that if the French doe once in a public and generall way enter to fish on that coast it can not but vndo the English trade that is by fishing, sence the French haue Salt at an easier rate than the English, but more if they make salt in the countrie which I am confident they may do.

If his Ma<sup>tie</sup> shalbe pleased to appoint some whom he shall thinke fitt for considering these things and the like that may be proponed there may perchance some thing be found expedient to be done either now or hereafter tending to the advancement of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> service in these pairts abroad.

These are only in all humble dutie without any priuat end to expresse what in the small experience I haue particularlie had herein I can conceaue may concerne the publick good.

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 152.

1632.  
July 7.

## LORD OCHILTREE'S CRIMINAL PROCESS.

CHARLES R.

Right trusty and right welbeloued Cousin and Counsellour Wee greate yow well Being informed that in regard the Lord Ochiltree is now vnder a criminall processe yow haue stopt the passing of a patent granted vnto him and Sir Peirs Crosbie and other their partners who had long since contracted with our right trustie and welbeloued Counsellour the Viscount of Sterlin for some landes in New Scotland And being willing to secure all such Vndertakers in that plantation and to encourage them to prosecute their vndertakings for the good of our seruice, and encrease of our domyniones Wee for these respects and particularie calling to mind the good seruices done vnto Vs by the said Sir Peirs, and conceauing good hopes of his future service in New Scotland are hereby pleased that the said patent be exped vnder our Greate Seale causing raze out the Lo. Ochiltrees name: Otherwayes (if yow find a necessitie) that yow cause draw a patent of new for that purpose to be exped vnder our Cachett and Great Seale without passing other Seales or Registers, for which these shalbe sufficient warrant Wee bid you farewell From our Manour of Greenwich the 7 of June 1632.

*Apud Halyrudhouse 28 July 1632.*

Presented read and ordayned to be registrat, and the princ<sup>all</sup> to be given bak to My Lo. Chancellour, and ane Act conforme to the letter to be buiked.

HADINTON, *I.P.D.*

To our right trustie and right welbeloued Cousin and  
Counsello<sup>r</sup> the Viscount of Duplin our Chanceler  
of our kingdome of Scotland,

(*In dorso.*) His Ma<sup>ties</sup> letter anent Sir Peirce Corsbie, buikit 28 July 1632.

## TO THE BARRONETS.

1632.  
August 15.

[CHARLES R.]

Trustie, &c. Wheras our late dear father out of his pious zeall for the advancement of religion in the remote parts of his dominions wher it had not bene formerlie knownen and out of his royall care for the honour and well of that our ancient kingdome was pleased to annex to the Croun therof the dominion of New Scotland in America that the vse of it might aryse to the benefite of that kingdome we being desyreous that the wished effects might follow by the continuance of so noble a designe wer pleased to confer particular marks of our favour vpon such as should voluntarlie contribute to the furtherance of a plantation to be estab-

lished in these boundis as appeared by our erecting of that order of baronetts wherwith yow ar dignifeid wherunto we have ever since bene willing to add what further we conceaved to be necessarie for the testifeying our respect to these that ar alreadie interested and for encourageing of them who shall heirefter interest themselves in the advancement of a work which we so reallie tender for the Glorie of God the honour of that nation and the benefite that is lyklye to flow from the right prosecution of it But in regard that notwithstanding the care and diligence of our Right, &c. the Viscount of Stirling whom we have from the beginning entrusted with the prosecution of this work, and of the great charges alreadie bestowed vpon it hath not takin the root which was expected partlie as we conceive by reasone of the incommoditeis ordinarlie incident to all new and remote beginnings, and partlie as we ar informed by want of the tymelie concurrence of a sufficient number to insist in it; bot especiallie the Colonie being forced of late to remove for a tyme by meanes of a Treatie we have had with the French Thairfor We have takin into our royall consideratioun by what meanes agane may this work be established and conceaving that ther ar none of our subjects whom it concerneth so much in credit to be affectioned to the progres of it as these of your number for justefeing the groundis of our princelie favours which yow have received by a most honorabill and generous way we have thought fitt to direct the bearer heirof Sir William Alexander kny<sup>t</sup> vnto yow who hath bene ane actor in the former proceedingis and hath sene the cuntrie and knowen the commoditeis thereof who will communicat vnto yow such propositions as may best serve for making the right vse heirefter of a plantation and trade in these boundis for encouraging such as shall adventure therein And we doubt not bot if yow find the groundis reasonable and fair yow will give your concurrence for the further prosecution of them And as We have alreadie gevin ordour to our Advocat for drawing such warrandis to pass vnder our sealls ther wherby our loveing subjects may be fred from all misconstruction of our proceedingis with the French anent New Scotland and secured of our protection in tyme cuming in ther vndertakeris vnto it So we shalbe readie to contribute what we shall heirefter find we may justlie doe for the advancement of the work and the encouragement of all that shall joyne with yow to that purpois Which recommending vnto your care We bid yow farewell. Beawlie, 15 August 1632.

SIR PEIRCE CORSBIE: WARRANT FOR A SCHIP TO PASS.

1633.  
March 4.

[CHARLES R.]

Wheras the good schip called the \_\_\_\_\_ of the burthen of \_\_\_\_\_ is  
to be sent out by Sir Peirce Corsbie knight and baronet, one of our privie coun-



sell of Irland, towardis America for setting of a Colonie ther according to such particular warrants as he hath from ws to that purpois These ar therfoir to will and requyre yow and euerie ane of yow to permitt and suffer the said schip and her whole furniture goodis merchandice schips companie and planters quyetlie and peaciable in ther goeing thither returneing from thence or dureing ther being furth of any vther part whatsoever till they shal happin to returne to any of our dominions to pas by yow without any your lat stayis troubles imprests of ther men or any vther hindrance whatsoever whair of you shall not fail. Whythall, 4 March 1633.

To our trustie and weilbelovit The Officers of our  
Admiralitie the Captanes and Masters of our schips  
and to all vther officers and our loveing subjects  
whom these presents doe or may concerne.

1633.  
March 4.

#### TO SIR PEIRCE CORSBIE: COLONIE IN AMERICA.

[CHARLES R.]

Trustie, &c. Whereas we ar informed that yow ar goeing on in preparations for setting furth a Colonie to plant in America according to such warrants as yow have alreadie vnder our hand and which ar past vnder our great seall of our kingdome of Scotland, your endeavours heirin ar verie acceptable vnto ws And we doe heirby allow yow to proceed and for your further encouragement and all such as ar therin entrusted with yow we doe heirby assure yow that we shalbe euer readie to protect yow in this your vndertaking aganst all persones whatsumever, and as occasion shall offer we will giue yow such further testimonie of our favour as may stirr vp vthers to the lyk generous vndertakingis So recommending the serious prosecution of a work so much concerning our service We bid, &c. Whythall, 4 March 1633.

1633.  
April 24

#### COMMISSIONERS FOR THE PLANTATION OF NEW SCOTLAND.

[CHARLES R.]

Trustie, &c. Whereas our late dear Father for the honour of that his ancient kingdome did grant the first Patent of New Scotland to the Viscount of Stirling and was willing to conferr the title of Knyght Baronet on such of his weil deserving subjects as should contribute to the advancement of the work of the plantation in the said cuntrey we wer pleased to giue ordour for the effectuating of the same according to our Commission direct to yow for that purpois And vnderstanding perfectlie (as we doubt not is weil knowen vnto yow all) that the said Viscount did



begin and prosecute a plantation in these parts with a far greater charge then could be supplied by the meanes forsaide And the rather in regard of the late discouragement of some by our commanding him to remove his Colonie from Port Royall for fulfilling the Articles of ane treattie betwixt our brother the French King and ws to mak overie thing betwixt ws be in the esteat wherin it was befor the warre hearing that ther was a rumour gevin out by some that we had totallie left our purpois to plant in that cuntrey as haveing surrendred our right therof Least any further mistakings should aryse heirvpon we thoght good heirby to clear our intention therin which is That our said Viscount with all such as shall adventure with him shall prosecute the said work and be encouraged by all lawfull helps thervnto alsweill by compleiting of the intendit number of Knyght Baronetts as other wayes And being informed that some of our subjects of good qualitie in this our kingdome and Ireland who have taken Land in New Scotland holdin from ws did accept of the said dignitie ther and more obliged to contribute as much towards the said Plantatioun as any vther in that kynd war putt to far greater charges at the passing of ther rights then the natives of the kingdome wer at in the lyk caise It is our pleaur that whosoever aney of our subjects of qualitie fitt for that dignitie within this our kingdome or of Ireland haveing takin landis holdin of ws in New Scotland And having agried with our said Viscount for ther part of a supplie towards the said plantation and that it is signifeid so by him vnto yow that till the number of Barronettis formerlie condescendit vpon be compleit yow accept of them and giue ordour that ther Patents be passed at as easie a rate as if they wer naturall subjects of that our kingdome and this yow mak knownen to such persones and in such maner as yow in your judgments shall think fitt, for doing wharof, &c. Whythall, 24 Aprill 1633.

PATENT TO SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER KNIGHT AND OTHERS for the sole trade in all & singular the Regions, Countreys Dominions & all places whatsoever adjacent to the River & Gulf of Canada, & the sole Traffick from thence and the places adjoining, for beaver skins & wooll, and all other skins of wild beasts for 31 yeares. 9 Car. 1.<sup>1</sup>

1633.  
May 11.

ACT XXVIII. RATIFICATION IN FAVOUR OF THE VISCOUNT OF STERLING, of the infettments and signature granted to him of the Dominions of New Scotland and Canada in America, and Priviledges therein contained, and of the dignity and order of Knight Baronets, and Act of Convention of Estates made thereanent.

1633.  
June 28.

Our Sovereigne Lord, and Estates of this present Parliament, Ratifie and

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 165.

approve all letters Patents, and Infestments granted by King James the Sixth of blessed memorie, or by our said Sovereigne Lord, unto William Viscount of Sterling, and to his heires and assignes of the Territories and Dominions of new Scotland and Canada in America; and especially the Patent, Charter, and Infestment granted by his Majesties unwhile dearest Father of worthie memorie, of new Scotland, of the date the tenth day of September, the yeare of God 1621.<sup>1</sup> Item, another charter of the same, granted by his Majestie, under the great Seale, of the date the twelfth day of July, 1625 years.<sup>2</sup> Item, another Charter and infestment granted by his M<sup>tie</sup> of the Countrie and Dominion of new Scotland under the great Seale, of the date the third day of May, 1627 yeares.<sup>3</sup> Item, another Charter and Infestment granted by his Majestie under the great Seale, of the River and gulf of Canada, bounds, and priviledges thereof, mentioned in the said Patent, of the date the second day of Februarie, 1628 years.<sup>4</sup> Item, a Signature past under his Majesties hand of the said Countrie and Dominion, which is to be with all diligencie exped through the Seales, of the date at Whitehall the twenty fourth day of Aprill, 1633 years.<sup>5</sup> With all liberties, priviledges, honours, jurisdictions, and dignities *respective* therein mentioned. Together also with all execution, precepts, instruments of seaisings, and seaisings following, or that shall happen to follow thereupon. And also ratifies and approves the Act of general Convention of Estates; at Holy-rude-house, the sixth day of July, the year of God 1630.<sup>6</sup> Whereby the said Estates have ratified & approved the dignities & order of Knight Baronet; With all the Acts of Secret Counsell, and Proclamations following thereupon, made for maintaining of the said dignitie, place and preecedencie thereof. And his Majestie and Estates foresaid, will, statute, and ordaine, that the said letters Patents, Charters, and Infestments; and the said dignitie, title, and order of Baronets, and all letters patents and infestments of Lands, and dignities granted therewith, to any person whatsoever, shall stand and continue in full force; with all liberties, priviledges and preecedencies thereof, according to the tenour of the same. And in als ample maner as if the bodies of the said letters patents, infestments, and signature above mentioned were herein particularly ingrost and exprest. And ordaine intimation to be made hereof by open proclamation to all his Majesties lieges, at the market crosse of Edinburgh, and other places needfull, that none pretend ignorance hereof.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Printed *infra*, among the Charters, p. 3.

<sup>2</sup> *Ib.* p. 27.

<sup>3</sup> This charter apparently is not recorded.

<sup>4</sup> *Infra*, p. 46.

<sup>5</sup> *Supra*, p. 80.

<sup>6</sup> *Supra*, p. 58. Acts of Parl., vol. v., p. 208, *et seq.*

<sup>7</sup> Acts 1 Parl. Charles I., p. 60.; Edinb. 1633. Acts of Parl., vol. v., p. 43.

TO THE COUNSELL AND COMMISSIONERS APPOYNTE FOR 1633.  
PASSING THE PATENTS OF KNIGHT BARRONETS, AND IN-September 27.  
FEFTMENTS OF LANDS IN NEW SCOTLAND.

A Letter concerneing New Scotland was past 27 September 1633, verbatim,  
lyk vnto that which was past 24 Aprill 1633. [See p. 80.] . . . . .

TO THE COUNSELL.

1633.  
September 27.

[CHARLES R.]

Right trustie and right weilbelouit Cousine and Counsellor, right trustie  
and weelbelouit Cousines and Counsellors, trustie and weilbelouit Counsellors,  
and trustie and weilbelouit We greit you weill Whereas our lait deir Father  
for the honnour of that his ancient Kingdome did grant the first patent of  
New Scotland to our right trustie and right weilbelouit Cousine and Counsel-  
ler Williame Erle of Stirlie, and wæs willing to conferre the title of Knight  
Baronnet on suche of his weill deserving subjects as sould contribute to the ad-  
uancement of the worke of the plantation in the said countrie We wer pleased to  
giue order for effectuating of the same, according to our commissioun directed to  
you for that purpose And understanding perfytelie (as We doubt not bot is weill  
knowne to yow all) that the said Erle did begin and prosecute a Plantation in  
these parts with a farre greater charge than could be supplied by the meanes fore-  
said, and the rather in regarde of the late discouragement of some by our com-  
manding him to remove his colonie frome Port Royall for fulfilling of ane article  
of the Treatie betuix Our Brother the Frenche King and Ws, To make everie  
thing betuix Ws be in the estait wherein it wes before the warre, hearing that  
there wes a rumour givin out by some that We had totallie left our purpose to  
plant in that Countrie as having surrendered our right thereof, least anie further  
mistaking sould arise heerupon Wee thought good heerby to cleere our intention  
therein: Whiche is, That our said Erle with all suche as sall adventure with him  
sall prosecute the said worke and be encouraged by all lawfull helpes thereunto  
als weill by compleitting of the intended number of Knights Baronnets as other-  
wayes And being informed that some of our subjects of good qualitie in this our  
Kingdome and Ireland, who having takin land in New Scotland haldin frome ws  
did accept of the said dignitie there and wes obliged to contribute als muche to-  
ward the said Plantation as anie other in that kynde wes putt to greater charges  
in passing of thair ryghts than the natives of this kingdome wer in the like caise  
It is Our pleasure that whensoever anie of our subjects of qualitie fitt for that

dignitie within this Our kingdome or of Ireland having takin lands holdin of Ws in New Scotland, and having agreed with our said Erle for thair part of a supplee toward the said Plantation, and that it is signified so by him vnto yow That till the number of Baronnets formerlie condescended vpon be compleit yow accept of thame and give order that thair Patents be past at als easie a rate as if they wer naturall subjects of that Our kingdome And this yow [sall] make knowne to suche persons and in suche maner as yow sall in your judgements thinke fitt for doing whairof these presents sall be your sufficient warrand. Frome Our Court at S<sup>t</sup> James the 27 of September 1633.

1633.  
October 18.

#### THE EARL OF STIRLING.

[CHARLES R.]

It is our pleasur that yow examyne what part of the moneyis due by ws vnto our right, &c. the Earle of Stirling hath bene payed vnto him, and the accompt of the Copper Coyne being dewlie made, that yow certifie what is lyklic entend vnto for his vse that ane vther course may be takin for his payment wher it may not by that meanes be due And if he cannot be convenientlie payed at this tyme nor particular assignement be made vnto him for the same, lest his creditours at this tyme mistrusting our intention to pay him may persew him or your frendis whom we vnderstand to be bund as sureties for him: It is our pleasur to the effect he may not suffer for so much as is due by ws yow certifie ws what course ye think best for the tyme ather for payment of the principall to his creditours or of some part therof, and that yow tak such course as yow shall think best to satisfie them for ther forbearing the same that they may not charge him till we appoynt his payment some other way which We warrand yow heirby to allow out of the benefite arrysing out of the Copper Coyne that he may reap the benefite We intend for him according to our warrand: for doeing whairof, &c. Whythall, 18 October 1633.

1634.  
February 15.

#### ANENT NEW SCOTLAND.

*Apud Edinburgh 15 Februarij 1634.*

Forsamekle as his Majesteis laite deir Father of blessed memorie for the honnour of this his ancient kingdome of Scotland did grant the first patent of New Scotland to his Majesteis right traist cousine and counsellour Williame Erle of Stirline and wes willing to conferre the title of Knight Barronet vpon suche of his weil deserving subjects as sould contribute to the advancement of the worke of Planta-

tion in the said countrie His Majestie was pleased to give order for effectuating of the same, according to his commission directed to the Lords of Privie Counsell for that purpose And His Majestie understanding perfytelie that the said Earle did begin and prosecute a Plantation in these parts with a faire greater charge than could be supplied by the means forsaid and the rather in regard of the late discouragement of some by His Majestie commanding the said Erle to remove the Colonie from Port Royall for fulfilling of ane article of the Treatie betuix His Majestie and his Brother the Frenche King to make everiething betuix thame to be in the estait wherein it wes befor the warre, hearing that there wes a rumour given out by some that His Majestie had totallie left his purpose to plant in that countrie as having surrendered his right thairof And thairfor least anie further mistaking sould arise heerupon His Majestie hes thought good heirby to cleere his intention heerin, which is, that the said Erle with all suche as sall adventure with him sall prosecute the said worke and be encouraged by all lawfull helpes thereunto als weill by compleating the intended number of Barronets as otherwayes And whereas some of the subjects of the Kingdome of England and Ireland of good qualitie who having takin land in New Scotland haldin of his Majestie did accept of the said dignitie ther and wes obliged to contribute als much toward the said Plantation as anie others in that kynde, wes putt to greater charges at the passing of thair rights than the natives of this Kingdome wer at in the like caises Thairfor His Majestie hes thought meet heirby to declare His Royall will and pleasure that whensoever anie of His Majesteis subjects of qualitie fitt for that dignitie within the Kingdoms of England or Ireland having takin land haldin of his Majestie in New Scotland and having agreed with the said Erle for part of a supplee towards the said Plantation, and that it is signified so by him to the saids Lords of Privie Counsell That till the number of Baronnets formerlie condescended upon be compleit the saids Lords sall accept of thame and give order that thair patents be past at als easie a rate as if they wer naturall borne subjects of this kingdome And the saids Lords Ordanis letters to be direct chargeing Officers of armes to pas and make publication hereof be open proclamation at the mercat croces of the heid burrowes of this kingdome and others places neidfull Where-throw nane pretend ignorance of the same.

Followes his Majesteis missive for warrand of the Act abone writtin.

Right trustie and right weilbelonit, &c. . . . . [See p. 83.]

From our Court at St James, the 27 of September 1633.

1634.  
February 15.

# ACCEPTATION OF A COMMISSION FOR PASSING INFEEFTMENTS OF NEW SCOTLAND.

*Apud Edinburgh 15 Februarij 1634.*

The whilk day, George Erle of Kinnoull Lord High Chancellor William Erle of Morton Lord High Thesaurer and Thomas Erle of Hadingtoun Lord Privie Seale of this Kingdome William Erle Marishell Robert Erle of Roxburgh Johne Erle of Annerdaill Sir Johne Hay Clerk of His Majesteis Registers and Sir Thomas Hope of Craighall His Majesteis Advocat accepted upon thame the Commission granted vnto thame vnder His Majesteis Great Seale, dated at Theobalds, 14 Septembris 1633, for passing of Infefments of New Scotland.

1634.  
March 18.

## SIR ROBERT FILIBERT'S WARRANT.

[CHARLES R.]

Trustie, &c. Whereas we ar informed by our right trustie the Erle of Stirling our principall Secretarie for Scotland that yow ar goeing in a course with him towards the advancement of the work of the Plantatioun of New Scotland the good whairof we exceidinglie tender we cannot bot approve of your affection in this as in your other former publict vndertakings for the good of our servise, and as we ar willing to naturalise yow in that our kingdome of Scotland, and to conferre vpon yow the lyk honors and priviledges as vther Knyght Barronetts vndertakeris in the forsaid Plantation doe enjoy, so we shalbe euer readie to encourage yow and all vthers that shall tak the lyk courses with further testimonie of our gracious favour as occasion shall offer. Newmerket, 18 March 1634.

1634.  
September 18.

## TO THE THESAURER AND DEPUTIE.

[CHARLES R.]

Right, &c. Whereas in consideration of a precept of 6000 lib Stg. granted be our late dear Father to our right trustie and welbeloved Cousen and Counsellour the Erle of Stirling our principall Secretarie for Scotland for good and faythfull service done by him and of a warrant of Ten Thowsand pounds granted by ws vnto him vpon verie good considerations as may appear by the same, We wer pleased to grant vnto him the benefite arysing by the coynage of the Copper money within that our kingdome for the space of nyne yeres and further till he should be complitlie payed of all sowmes whatsumever due by ws vnto him: Now to the effect



our said servant may have the more assurance to mak bargane with others anent the said benefite for his releiff, and that ther may be a certane tyme appoynted for his payment, and for our haveing the benefite of the said Coyne to returne vnto ws We doe heirby ratifie vnto him his grant of the whole benefite arysing dew vnto ws of that Copper Coyneage during the tyme yit to rin of that his patent And it is our speciall pleasur that yow grant a warrant such as shalbe requisite of Coynadge of sex thowsand stane weght of Copper without intromission immediatlie efter the ending of the Coynadge of 1500 staine weght presentlie in hand and for continewing of the Coynadge efter the full perfyteing of the said 6000 stane from yeir to yeir for the accustomed quantitie as we coyned these two yeires past and that dureing the whole tyme yit to rin of his patent if ther sall any of it remane efter the full perfyteing of the Coynadge of the 6000 stane And that yow give ordour to our Advocat for drawing vp a sufficient discharge of the saids two precepts to be signed by our said servant with a discharge to him from ws of his intromission with any benefite arysing with the Coynadge dureing the tyme past or to cum of his patent (of the which we doe lykwayes heirby discharge him) and that without any accompt to be made vnto ws or any in our name for the same in regard of his discharge of his saids two precepts And caus registrat this our letter and mak such farder in Counsell & Exchequer as may be most expedient for the farder securitie and satisfaction of our said servant of such as he shall have occasion to treat or bargane with for making the best advantage of this our gratus intention towards him for doeing wherof ther presents shalbe vnto yow ane sufficient warrant. Theobalds, 18 September 1634.

## LORD ALEXANDER, SESSIONER.

[CHARLES R.]

1634.  
December 20.

Right, &c. It being fitt and necessarie for the good of our service that the extraordinarie place in our Session appoynted for our right, &c. the Erle of Stirling our Secretarie for that our kingdome (who necessarlie most attend our service about our persone) be supplied in his absence and vnderstanding the abillteis and affection to our service of our right trustie and weilbeloved Counsellour the Lord Alexander whom we hold fitt to supplie that place and charge It is our pleasur that haveing administred vnto him the oath accustomed in the lyk caices yow admitt him to the said Extraordinarie place in Session<sup>1</sup> and that he enjoy all the priviledges and liberteis belonging thervnto for which these presents shalbe your warrant. Hampton Court, 20 December 1634.

<sup>1</sup> William Lord Alexander was admitted one of the Extraordinary Lords of Session (upon his father's resignation) on the 27th January 1635. (Brunton and Haig's Senators, p. 295.)



1634-5.  
January 5.

TO SIR FERDINANDO GEORGE [GORGES] KNICHT.

[CHARLES R.]

Trustie, &c. Having fund it of late necessaric that some good course be established for right prosecution of the work of the Plantation of New Scotland in such kynd as may be most for the advancement thair of and the encouragment of such as vndertak therin And haveing (in regard of your affection and long endeavours in that work from the beginning, and your experience therin) bene pleased to mak choise of yow for vndertaking the chieff charge in managing of such things as shalbe for the good of that cuntrie and the government to be established therin, We have thocht good at this tyme to requyre yow so soone as yow can convenientlie to repair to our Court that We may have your opinion and yow receive our direction in such things We shalbe pleased to requyre and appoynt tutching this bussines. Whythall, 5 January 1634 stylo Anglicano.

1635.  
January 9.

COMMISSIONERS FOR SURRENDERS.

His Majestie was pleased, by a Letter of his Heynes to his Commissioneris for Surrenders, vpon the 9 January 1635 to requyre them to admitt the Lord Alexander to be one of their number.

1635.  
January 28.

TO SIR JAMES BALFOUR.

[CHARLES R.]

Trustie, &c. Wheras we did formerlie signifie our pleasur vnto yow that our right trustie, &c. the Erle of Stirling our Secretarie for Scotland should haue the Armes of New Scotland in ane Inseutchion with his owin paternall coat and that other coat (which we lykwayes allow him to bear for reasones signifeid at that tyme vnto yow as by our letter may particularlie appear) now considering that he bath in particular and singular maner deserved the said augmentation of the Armes of New Scotland and to the effect he may bear it in a way propper vnto him selff and different to all others who ar authorized for bearing of it we ar pleased to allow it vnto him to be quartered in the first quarter with his other coats and thairfor it is our pleasur that yow draw such further warrant for this purpois as shalbe expedient and withall that yow register this our letter in your Books of Office to remane therin according to the custome in the lyk kynd to the effect no other may tak vpon them to bear the said agumentatioun in this maner to the prejudice of the gracious favour which We doe heirin intend to him alone ffor the which these presents, &c. Whythall, 28 January 1635.

COMMISSIONERS FOR PLANTATIONS.<sup>1</sup>1634-5.  
January 29.

Att a Meeting, att the Lord Gorges' House in St Martin's Lane, January 29 1634—Present, Lord Maltreuers, L<sup>d</sup> Gorges, S<sup>r</sup> Ferd. Gorges, Capt. John Mason. This day the Earle of Stirling and the Lord Alexander were receaved into the New England Company as Councillours and Patentees.

Moreover it was ord<sup>d</sup> att the same Meeting, that the Duke of Lenox, the Marques of Hamilton, and the Earle of Carlisle (being admitted of the Councill before this booke was received from Mr Dickenson Clerke of the Councill of State [and agent?]) of the Lord Commissioners for the Plantations,) should be registered here as Pattentees and Councillours of the New England Company.

COUNCIL FOR NEW ENGLAND: GRANT OF LAND TO WILLIAM  
LORD ALEXANDER.<sup>2</sup>1635.  
April 22.

Grant of the Council for New England to William Lord Alexander, of all that part of the main land in New England from St Croix, adjoining New Scotland, along the sea coast to Pemaquid, and so up the river to the Kinebequi [Kenebeck] to be henceforth called the County of Canada; also the island of Matowack, or Long Island, to the west of Cape Cod, to be hereafter called the Isle of Sterling; to be holden of the Council and their successors, *per Gladium Comitatus*, that is to say, to find four able men, armed for war, to attend upon the Governor of New England for the public service, within fourteen days after warning given. [Copy on parchment.]

To all Christian people vnto whom theis presents shall come The Councill for the Affaires of New England send greetinge in our Lord God everlastinge. Whereas our late Souraigne Lord Kinge James of blessed memory by his highnes Letters Patente vnder the greate seale of England, bearing date att Westminster the Thirde daye of November in the eighteenth yeare of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> raigne ouer his highnes Realme of England, for the consideration in the said Letters Patente expressed and declared hath absolutely given graunted and confirmed vnto the said Counsell and theire successors for euer all the lands of Newe England in America lyinge and beinge in breadth from fortie degrees of Northerly latitude from the Equinoctiall lyne to fortie eight degrees of the said Northerly latitude inclusivelie and in length of and within all the breadth aforesaid throughout the maine land from Sea to Sea. Together alsoe with all the firme lands, soyles,

1635.  
April 22.<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 195.<sup>2</sup> *Ib.* p. 204.

grounde, havons, ports, rivers, waters, fishinge, mynes, and mineralls, as well Royall mynes of Gold & Silver as other mynes and mineralls pretious stones quarries and all and singular other commodities jurisdictions royalties priviledges, franchises, and preheminences both within the said tracte of land vppon the Maine and alsoe within the Islands and Seas adjoininge (as by the said Letters Patents amongst diuers other things therein conteyned more att large it doth and may appeare) Now Knowe all men by these presents that the said Counsell of New England in America beinge assembled in publique Courte, accordinge to an aete made and agreed vppon the thirde day of february last past before the date of theis presents for diuers good causes and consideracions them herevnto especially moveinge have given, graunted, aliened, bargayned, and sold And in and by theis presents doe for them and theire Successors give, graunt alien bargainne sell and confirme vnto the right honorable William Lord Alexander his heires and assignes, All that part of the Maine Land of Newe England aforesaid beginninge, from a certaine place called or knowne by the name of Saint Croix next adjoininge to New Scotland in America aforesaid and from thence extendinge alonge the sea coast vnto a certaine place called Pemaquid, and soe vpp the River thereof to the furthest head of the same as it tendeth Northwarde and extendinge from thence att the nearest vnto the River of Kinebequi and soe upwards alonge by the shortest course which tendeth vnto the River of Canada ffrom henceforth to be called and knowne by the name of the Countie of Canada. And alsoe all that Island or Islands heretofore comonly called by the severall name or names of Matowack or Longe Island and hereafter to be called by the name of the Isle of Starlinge situate lyinge and beinge to the westward of Cape Codd or the Narohiganlets within the latitude of ffortie or fortie one degrees or thereabouts abuttinge vpon the Maineland betweene the two Rivers there knowne by the severall names of Conectecutt and Hudsons River and conteyninge in length from East to West the whole length of the Sea Coast there betweene the said two Rivers. Together with all and singular havens, harbours creekes, and Islands, imbayed and all Islands and llets lyinge within ffive leagues distance of the Maine beinge opposite and abuttinge vpon the premises or any part thereof not formerly lawfully graunted to any by speciall name And all mynes mineralls quarries, soyles and woods, marishes, rivers, waters, lakes, fishings, hawkinge, huntinge and fflowlinge and all other Royalties Jurisdiccions, priviledges, prehementes, profitts, commodities and hereditaments whatsoever with all and singular there and euery of theire appurtenentes. And together alsoe with all Rents reserued and the benefit of all profitts due to them the said Counsell and their Successors and precincts aforesaid to be exercised and executed accordinge to the Lawes of England as ncere as may be by the said William Lord Alexander his heires or assignes or his or theire

Deputies Lieutenants, Judges, Stewards, or officers therevnto by him or them or their assignes deputed or appointed from time to time with all other priviledges, franchises, liberties, immunities, escheates, and casualties thereof arriseing or which shall or may hereafter arise within the said limitte and precincts, with all their intrest right title claime and demand whatsoever, which the said Councell and there successors, now of right have or ought to have or claime or may haue or acquire hereafter in or to the said portion of Lands or Islands, or any the premises and in as free ample large and beneficiall manner to all intents constructions and purposes what so euer as the said Councell by vertue of his Ma<sup>ties</sup> said Letters Patent may or can graunt the same: Saucing and allwayes reseruinge vnto the said Councell and there Successors power to receaue heare and determine all and singular appeale and appeales of eury person and persons whatsoever dwellinge or inhabitinge within the said Territories and Islands or any part thereof soe graunted as aforesaid of and from all judgements and sentences whatsoever given within the said lands and Territories aforesaid To haue and to holde all and singular the lands and premises aboue by theis presents graunted (excepte before excepted) with all and all manner of profitts commodities and hereditaments whatsoever within the lands and precincts aforesaid to the said lands, Islands and premises or any of them in any wise belonginge or apperteyninge vnto the said William Lord Alexander his heires and assignes To the only proper use and behoofe of him the said William Lord Alexander his heires and assignes for euer To be holden of the said Councell and their successors, per *Gladium Comitatus*, that is to say by findeinge foure able men conveniently armed and arrayed for the warre to attend vpon the Governor of New England for the publique service within ffourteene dayes after any warninge given; yieldinge and payinge vnto the said Councell and their Successors for euer one fift part of all the . . . . . are of the mynes of gold and silver which shalbe had possessed or obeyned within the limitte or precincts aforesaid for all rents seruices dueties and demaunds whatsoever due vnto the said Councell and their successors from plantacion within the precincts aforesaid The same to be deliuered vnto his Ma<sup>ties</sup> Receiver or deputie or deputies Assignes . . . . . to the use of his Ma<sup>ty</sup> his heires and successors from . . . . . the Lands precincts and Territories of New England aforesaid . . . . . the two and twentie day of [Aprill 1635] and 11th yeare of the Raigene.

ANENT KNIGHTING OF BARONNETS SONNES.

1636.  
June 16.

*Apud Edinburgh 16 Junij 1636.*

Forsamekle as the Kings Majestie having formerlie upon verie good considera-

tions both for freithing his Ma<sup>tie</sup> frome truble and saving of the parties whome it concernes frome charges Give warrand and direction to his Ma<sup>ties</sup> Chancellor for the time being That the eldest sonnes of all Baronnetts being of the age of 21 yeeres sould be knighted whensoever thay sould desire the samo according to thair patents under the Great Seale And his Ma<sup>tie</sup> being yett willing upon the same consideratiouns that the said course be continued His Majestie for this effect hes gevin warrand to the Lord High Chancellor of this kingdome to knight the eldest sonnes of all and everie ane of suche Baronnetts who being of the perfyte age of 21 years compleit sall desire the same without putting thame to anie charges and expensses As in the said warrant presentit and exhibite this day before the Lords of Secreit Counsell at lenth is conteanit Quhilk being read heard and considerit be the saids Lords and thay with all humble and dewtifull respect acknowledging his Majesteis gracious will and pleasure in this mater They ordaine the said warrand to be insert and registrat in the bookes of Priuie Counsell and to haue the force of ane act of Counsell in time comming To the end the said Lord Chancellor may knight the saids eldest sonnes of all Baronnetts without forder warrand and that all whome it may concerne may take notice of his Majesteis Royall pleasure heerin and ordanis letters to be direct to make publication heirof wherthrow nane pretend ignorance of the same.

Followes His Majesteis missive for warrand of the Act foresaid.

CHARLES R.

1636.  
May 10.

Right Reverend Father in God We greit you weill Whereas We wer pleased by our letter unto our lait Chancellor to give power unto him or anie other for the time being that the eldest sonnes of all Baronnetts might be knighted being of the perfyte age of 21 yeeres whensoever they sould desire the same according to thair patents under our Great Seale both for freing Ws from trouble and saving thame frome charges whiche thair repairing hither for that purpose might procure and now being willing upon the like consideration that the same sould be continued We have thought fitt heirby to renew our pleasure unto yow for that effect and thairfoir We will that yow knight the eldest sonnes of all and euerie one of suche Baronnetts who being of the perfyte age of twenty-one yeeres sould desire the same, without putting thame to anie charges or expensses And Our further pleasure is that yow make ane Act of Counsell heirupon That your successors in your charge of Lord Chancellor doe the same without anie further warrand and that all others whome it may concerne may take notice of our Royall pleasure heerin for doing whairof these presents sall be your warrand We bid you farewell Frome our Courte at Whitehall, the 10 of Maye 1636.



Sir William Alexander  
to my Lord Viscount of Stormonth.

I have the honor to receive your good letter  
as I have many things to be doing  
to your service, I have dealt earnestly  
in that I have written for you as you  
may perceive by the letter which I send  
permitted for I have to express what I  
could by effort & by profession  
I think my self has much to be doing to you  
to please in making your cause for which  
I have been but it is like to do me  
a great deal of harm if you do not  
it not by other means some of the  
of life to come after me, or by means  
my to give what I have some of them to know  
I have the matter then all not come in  
a while I refer to you to be satisfied  
and be assured that in time I shall  
may tend to your good there is no man  
with a true affection more cheerful for  
than I am  
— your friend  
W. Alexander

23 of November

W. Alexander



In the preceding documents it will be seen that Sir William Alexander was nominated His Majesty's Lieutenant-General, and Admiral of New Scotland. The great importance of such an appointment, with the view of successfully promoting this scheme of colonization, was not duly considered, as no obligation was exacted for personal services in the colony; and there is no evidence to shew that Alexander himself ever set his foot on the soil. When we hear so much said of his advancing large sums in setting forth this scheme, it should be remembered that he was bound to expend two-thirds of the money received from the newly created Knight Baronets in carrying on the Plantation. We know that he fitted out two vessels in 1622 and 1623, and also that his son Sir William the younger sailed with other vessels in 1627 and 1628; yet it may be asserted, that from various causes SIR WILLIAM NEVER WAS ABLE TO FULFIL THE GREAT AND AVOWED OBJECT OF THE ROYAL GRANTS IN HIS FAVOUR BY ACTUALLY ESTABLISHING ANY PERMANENT SETTLEMENT WHATEVER IN NOVA SCOTIA. In his engraved map of 1624, and reissued in 1630, there is no indication of any such settlements in that country, while so many English names appear in the adjoining districts of New England. Had any effectual measures been employed, the majority of the Convention of Estates in November 1625 would never have supported the lesser Barons when they complained of the precedency granted to the newly created Order of Knight Baronets, and prayed the Estates to join in a humble petition to the King to suspend at least this precedency *until the tyme that the Plantatioun, for the whilk this dignitie is conferred, be first performed*. These small Barons went still farther, and offered that *if this Plantatioun should be made*, they, "upoun their own charges, would undertake the same, without any retribution of honour to be given therefor."<sup>1</sup>

In the measures actually pursued, Sir William Alexander appointed his eldest son to act as Deputy-Lieutenant; and he appears on two, or perhaps three, occasions to have visited some portions of North America. The first occasion was in 1627, as we may infer from this

<sup>1</sup> See *supra*, pp. 29-31; also the King's reply in February following, pp. 31-32.

entry in the Kirk-session Register of Stirling:—"1627, December 25.—The whilk day Sir William Alexander, *after his return from his sea voyage*, gave to the poor of Stirling fifty-aucht pounds money."<sup>1</sup> Either in 1628 or the following year Sir William Alexander younger had made a second voyage, as the King, in writing to the Privy Council, 17th November 1629, mentions him as being "now resident in Nova Scotia;"<sup>2</sup> and the King addressed to him a letter while at Port Royal, on the 13th May 1630,<sup>3</sup> where he and his attendants had effected a settlement, as will be afterwards noticed.

In the Roll of Knight Baronets of Nova Scotia the first name is Sir Robert Gordon. He was the second son of Alexander, Earl of Sutherland, and was the founder of the family of Gordonstoun, in Morayshire. His charter of the Barony of Gordon is recorded in the Register of the Great Seal, 28th May 1625,<sup>4</sup> and is given at full length in Douglas's Baronage of Scotland.<sup>5</sup> In a work which has recently appeared, "Social Life in Former Days: Second Series. Illustrated by Letters and Family Papers," the author has a chapter on "The Plantation of Nova Scotia, and the Knight Baronets thereof, 1625,"<sup>6</sup> in which he inserts from the Gordonstoun papers copies of some contracts or bonds of agreement with Sir William Alexander, connected with this subject. The price paid for a baronetcy, it appears, was 3000 merks, two-thirds of which Sir William engaged should be expended "in setting forth a colonie of men, furnished with necessarie provisioun, to be planted by me, my aires, or our deputies, within the said country (and dominion of New Scotland) be the advyse of the said Sir Robert Gordon and the remanent Barronetts of Scotland, adventurers in the plantation of the same," dated at London the 4th of June 1625. This is followed by a similar engagement, on the last of the month, in the name of Sir Donald Gorne of Slait, knight.

In the Scottish records no notice is taken of a fact, which seems to be undisputed, although the details are not clearly ascertained, that Sir William Alexander, by some private arrangements in the year 1629 or

<sup>1</sup> That is, £2, 18s. sterling. (Extracts in Miscellany of the Maitland Club, vol. i., p. 467.)

<sup>2</sup> Supra, p. 49.

<sup>3</sup> Supra, p. 56.

<sup>4</sup> Lib. ii., No. 34.

<sup>5</sup> Edinb., 1798, p. 2.

<sup>6</sup> By E. Duubar Dunbar, pp. 8-21, Edinb., 1864, 8vo.

1630, transferred to Claude St Estienne, Seigneur de La Tour, a French Huguenot, the whole of his territorial rights and possessions of Nova Scotia, still to remain subject to the Crown of Scotland. From this bargain a special exception was made of Port Royal. The name of Claude, and of his son Charles, both occur in the List of Baronets, November 30, 1629, and May 12, 1630. La Tour was of a temporising spirit, and changing his religion, he succeeded in having his acquisitions confirmed by the King of France in 1634. This may have given rise to Scotstarvet's vague report that Sir William "got also a large sum of money from the King of France to quit his interest in Nova Scotia." Sir Thomas Urquhart is more entitled to credit when he alleges, that this transaction was completed without Sir William having either informed or obtained the concurrence of the Knight Baronets, who undoubtedly possessed by their several charters the same territorial rights as himself.

After this period, at least, we hear but little of Nova Scotia and of Alexander's colonial schemes, except in general terms, and always connected with urgent endeavours to fill up the prescribed number of Baronets. In a subsequent page will be given a roll of the names of Baronets of Nova Scotia, as they appear in the public records. During the Earl of Stirling's time the dates of these Patents extend from May 28, 1625 to December 17, 1638, to the number of about one hundred and thirteen individuals.

The following passage from Sir Thomas Urquhart's *Jewel* (pp. 208-211, Lond. 1652), although well known, may be quoted, as it contains, with some rash, but amusing statements, a good deal of truth relating to this subject :

"SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER.—It did not satisfie his ambition to have a laurel from the Muses, and be esteemed a King amongst Poets, but he must be King of some New-found-land; and like another Alexander indeed, searching after new worlds, have the sovereignty of *Nova Scotia*. He was born a Poet, and aimed to be a King; therefore would he have his royal title from King James, who was born a King, and aimed to be a Poet. Had he stopped there, it had been well: but the flame of his honour must have some oyle wherewith to nourish it. Like another King Arthur, he must have his Knights, though nothing limited to so small a number; for how many soever that could have looked out but for one day like gentlemen, and given him but one hundred and fifty pounds sterlin, . . . they had a scale from him whereby to ascend unto the platformes of vertue, &c. . . .

they immediately hung out the Orange colours, to testifie their conquest of the honour of Knight-Baronet.

" Their King nevertheless, not to staine his Royal dignity, or to seem to merit the imputation of selling honor to his subjects, did for their money give them land, and that in so ample a measure, that every one of his Knight-Baronets had for his hundred and fifty pounds sterlin heritably disposed unto him six thousand good and sufficient acres of *Nova Scotia* ground, which being but at the rate of sixpence an acre, could not be thought very dear, considering how prettily in the respective parchments of disposition they were bounded and designed fruitful corneland, watered with pleasant rivers, running amongst most excellent and spacious meadows; nor did there want abundance of oaken groves in the midst of very fertile plaines (for if they wanted anything, it was the Scrivener or Writer's fault; for he gave order, as soon as he received the three thousand Scots marks, that there should be no defect of quantity or quality, in measure or goodness of land) and here and there most delicious gardens and orchards, with whatever else could in matter of delightful ground, best content their fancies; as if they had made purchase amongst them of the *Elysian fields*; or *Mahumets Paradise*.

" After this manner my Lord Sterlin for a while was very noble, and according to the rate of Sterlin money, was as twelve other Lordes in the matter of that frankness of disposition, which not permitting him to dodge it upon inches and ells, better and worse, made him not stand to give to each of his champions territories of the best and the most: and although there should have happened a thousand acres more to be put in the Charter or writing of disposition, then was agreed upon at first, he cared not; half a piece to the Clerk was able to make him dispense with that. But at last, when he had inrolled some two or three hundred knights, who, for their hundred and fifty pieces each, had purchased amongst them several millions of *New Caledonian Acres*, confirmed to them and theirs for ever, under the great seal, the affixing whereof was to cost each of them but thirty pieces more, finding that the society was not like to become any more numerous, and that the ancient gentry of Scotland esteemed of such a whimsical dignity as of a disparagement rather than addition to their former honor, he bethought himself of a course more profitable for himself, and the future establishment of his own state; in prosecuting whereof, without the advice of his Knights (who represented both his Houses of Parliament, Clergy and all) like an absolute King indeed, disposed heritably to the French, for a matter of five or six thousand pounds English money both the dominion and propriety of the whole continent of that kingdom of *Nova Scotia*, leaving the new Baronets to search for land amongst the Selenits in the Moon, or turn Knights of the Sun: so dearly have they bought their Orange Ribban, which (all circumstances considered) is and will be no more honorable to them or their posterity, then it is or hath been profitable to either."

No part of the American continent was more favourable for an English settlement, and the encouragement of the fisheries, than Nova Scotia; but no settlement has been more subject to be disputed, or has so often changed its master. An attempt had been made in 1602 to settle an English colony here; but this not succeeding, the French, in 1604, concluding it to be abandoned, took possession of it under the title of Acadia, as forming part of New France or Canada.

Henry the Fourth of France in 1603 had appointed Mons. de Monts Governor-general of the country, extending between the 40th and 46th degrees of north latitude,—that is, from Virginia to near the head of Hudson's Bay,—which then obtained the name of Acadie. De Monts was accompanied in his voyage of discovery by a personal friend, Poutrincourt, who received from him a grant of that part of the district where they found the large and spacious harbour near the Bay of Fundy, then called *La baye François*, and to which he gave the name of Port Royal. The King of France afterwards confirmed to Poutrincourt this grant, and the place became the headquarters of the French colonists. In 1613, on the ground of some alleged encroachment on the English limits of Virginia, Captain Argall, with some armed vessels, succeeded in obtaining possession of the fort, and dislodging the French. But, as Judge Haliburton observes, "it does not appear that this transaction was either approved of by the Court of England or resented by the Crown of France." Port Royal, since named as Annapolis Royal, in Nova Scotia, is situated on the south side of the bay and river of Annapolis, which runs into the Bay of Fundy; and except for the extraordinary rise and fall of the tides, was reckoned one of the finest harbours in the world. Unless it may have been by some of the first settlers and other stragglers, the place remained deserted for several years. No reference to these proceedings occur in the Nova Scotia grants made to Sir William Alexander, who was authorized to divide the country into portions, and assign them to the Knight Baronets on the conditions prescribed. But this was still a disputed territory, which the French claimed in virtue of previous discovery and possession. After various changes, Charles the First,

instigated probably by Sir William Alexander, had given a commission to Captain David Kertch or Kirk, a French Calvinist, for the recovery to England of the possession of Nova Scotia. Having fitted out an armament for that purpose in 1627, he captured 18 French transports, with 135 pieces of ordnance, destined for the fortifications of Port Royal and Quebec. Next year he had retaken Port Royal, and proceeded up the river St Lawrence to attack Quebec, the capital of New France; but the lateness of the season caused him to defer this till 1629, when it was forced to capitulate. In this manner the English regained possession of Nova Scotia, Port Royal, and most part of Canada.

It was at this time that Sir William Alexander the younger, and those who accompanied him, landed at Port Royal, and succeeded in effecting a straggling settlement in that locality. They built a fort on the west side of the haven (Granville), nearly opposite to Goat Island, the remains of which are still visible, and retain the name of the Scottish Fort. But the successes of Captain Kirk proved of no avail, in consequence of the negotiations between Charles the First and his brother-in-law the King of France. During the first winter thirty of the Scots settlers died, and the hopeless expense and numerous difficulties connected with this infant colony induced the younger Sir William Alexander to return home, and must have had no small influence on the elder Sir William in his negotiations with Claude de La Tour, by which he conveyed to him his title to the whole of Nova Scotia (with the exception of Port Royal) to be held of the Crown of Scotland. The precise terms of this transference are not recorded. It is alleged by Chalmers, and repeated by Haliburton and others, that Sir William Alexander, finding that neither considerable profit nor honour were soon or easily to be acquired from the further prosecution of this colonial undertaking, in the year 1630 conveyed his title to the whole of Nova Scotia (with the above exception) to Claude St Estienne, Seigneur de la Tour, upon this condition, that the inhabitants should continue to be subjects of the Scottish Crown. It is also said that La Tour had influence enough to have this transference confirmed by Louis XIII.; and this may have given rise to Sir John



Scot's unfounded assertion<sup>1</sup> that Lord Stirling "got also a great sum of money from the King of France to quit his interest in Nova Scotia." Sir Thomas Urquhart's statement on the same head is already quoted.<sup>2</sup>

By the Treaty of St Germain-en-laye, concluded in March 1632,<sup>3</sup> the English monarch absolutely restored to Louis XIII. of France the sovereignty of Acadia, New France, and Canada generally, and without limits,—and particularly Port Royal, Quebec, and Cape Breton. In terms of this treaty, Charles sent peremptory instructions for the settlers at Port Royal to dispossess themselves, and transfer the place to the French authorities; but instead of stipulating that a sum should be awarded for what had been spent on the fort and other buildings erected in this place, these were ordered to be razed to the ground and the place left desolate, as when first occupied by Sir William Alexander younger and his followers. The King, however, in compensation for the money and labour that had been expended, and for the hardships they had to suffer in quitting this settlement, gave a warrant to pay the Viscount Stirling the sum of £10,000.

The site of this fort is well ascertained, and a stone having the date 1606 indicates the earlier French settlement, the fort having been erected by the Scottish settlers on the site of the French corn-fields previous to the treaty of St Germain. "The remains of this fort," says Judge Haliburton, "may be traced with great ease; the old parade, the embankment and ditch, have not been disturbed, and preserve their original form. It was occupied by the French for many years after the peace of 1632, and near the eastern parapet a large stone has been found, with the following monumental inscription, LEBEL, 1643."<sup>4</sup>

"The French" (says Chalmers) "gloried at a future day, not that they had recovered without consideration what the bravery of Englishmen had won, but that, in these transactions, the name of Nova-Scotia did not appear. Colonial historians, with an inattention or interestedness of which there are few examples, have always insisted, that, not-

<sup>1</sup> *Staggering State*, p. 74. <sup>2</sup> *Supra*, pp. 95, 96. <sup>3</sup> *Corps Diplomatique, Rymer's Fœdera, &c.*

<sup>4</sup> *An Historical and Statistical Account of Nova Scotia*, by Thomas C. Haliburton, vol. ii., p. 156, Halifax, 1829, 2 vols., 8vo.



withstanding the absolute restitution before mentioned, certain rights, with regard to that territory, still remained in England: And her statesmen, with a credulity and want of wisdom equally unexampled, have implicitly adopted their sentiments. But in what consists the justice or policy of preserving latent pretensions, which cannot be defended by candid discussion? The law of nations reprobates whatsoever contributes to disturb their repose.”<sup>1</sup>

A later author of a valuable work on British America says, that the vast importance of such possessions “should be estimated less by their territorial extent than by the resources they offer, the capabilities of improvement, the great increase of which their commerce is susceptible, and the extensive field they present for emigration.”<sup>2</sup>

But the connexion of the Alexanders with North America extended beyond the boundaries of Nova Scotia. At a later period, when New Scotland, so far as they were concerned, might be said to have ceased to exist, William Lord Alexander obtained from the Council for New England one of those indistinct or conflicting grants of land, which had become so common; in other words, which “were couched in vague language, and were made in hasty succession, without deliberation on the part of the Council of Plymouth, and without any firm purpose of establishing colonies on the part of those for whose benefit they were issued.”<sup>3</sup> It consisted of the Province of Maine, or that part of the mainland of New England extending from Piscataqua River, adjoining New Scotland, along the sea-coast to Sagadahoc, and up the river to Kenebek, to be called the country of Canada; also Long Island, &c. The date was April 1635.<sup>4</sup>

The Colonial Papers, now rendered accessible, throw some light on such transactions, having reference to extensive districts of which the proper boundaries were not strictly defined, and which proved, as might be expected, a fruitful source of dispute. Towards the end of January 1635

<sup>1</sup> Chalmers' Political Annals, p. 93, Lond., 1780, 4to, a work containing an immense mass of information. It is to be regretted that no second volume (with an index) ever appeared.

<sup>2</sup> The British Dominions in North America, by Joseph Bouchette, vol. i., p. vii.

<sup>3</sup> Bancroft's United States, vol. i., p. 335.

<sup>4</sup> See page 89.

the Earl of Stirling and his son Lord Alexander were admitted Councillors and Patentees. On the 3d of February it was proposed, upon obtaining separate personal grants of the lands, laid out in eight divisions, upon the sea-coast of New England, to be held immediately of his Majesty, to resign their great patent into the King's hands. Preliminary to this, deeds of feoffment were made, and leases drawn out in their own favour for the term of three thousand years (which sounds very like perpetuity) in virtue of the original charter to the patentees, adventurers and Council of New England.

At a meeting of the Council for New England, held in the Earl of Carlisle's chamber, Whitehall, 25th April 1635, a declaration was prepared for the intended resignation of their great charter. "*Present*,—Lord Gorges, President; Capt. Mason, Vice-President; Marquis of Hamilton; Earls of Arundel and Surrey, Southampton, Lindsey, Carlisle, Sterling; Lords Maltravers, Alexander; Sirs Ferdinando Gorges, Kenelm Digby, Robert Mansel, Henry Spilman, James Bagge, and Mr Montague. They have found, by long experience, that their endeavours to advance the plantation of New England have been attended with frequent troubles and great charges; that they have been deprived of near friends and faithful servants employed in that work; assaulted with sharp litigious questions before the Privy Council by the Virginia Company, who complained to Parliament that their plantation was a grievance to the Commonwealth, and that they have been much disheartened by the loss of the 'most noble and principal props thereof,' as the Duke of Lenox, Marquis of Hamilton, and many other 'strong stays to this weak building;' and also by the claims of the French Ambassador, taking advantage of the divisions of the sea-coast, which have been satisfactorily answered. These crosses only left a 'carcass in a manner breathless,' until some lands in Massachussets Bay were granted to certain persons, who surreptitiously obtained a second grant of lands justly passed to Captain Robert Gorges and others long before."<sup>1</sup>

Accordingly, on the 25th of April that year, when this declaration was adopted, Edward Lord Gorges, President, in name of himself and other members of the Council of New England, presented a

<sup>1</sup> Calendar of State Papers, Colonial, 1574-1660, pp. 204-205.

petition to Charles the First, on the 1st of May, respecting a voluntary surrender of the great patent of their Corporation, and praying for a royal confirmation of the proposed division of the saids lands. These arrangements seem to have been favourably received, and were probably carried into effect. The new patents were designedly extended both north and south, for the purpose of keeping up the English claims to New Netherlands in possession of the Dutch, to the southward, and to l'Acadie or Nova Scotia, then in possession of the French, to the northward.

On the 1st of November 1638 a meeting of the late Council for New England was held at London in Lord Stirling's house. The object of this meeting was to request the King for an augmentation of a degree more in latitude and longitude to such of themselves who should declare whether they would have it to the northward or westward,—these Councillors being Lord Maltravers, Lord Gorges, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, and the Earl of Stirling.<sup>1</sup>

It has been remarked by an old and intelligent writer that “Royal grants of lands if not occupied, and, in process of time, if another grant (with occupancy) is made to others, the first grant becomes void. Thus Duke Hamilton's grant in the Naraganset country, Mr Mason's grant of New Hampshire, and many grants in the north-east parts of New England, are become void.”<sup>2</sup> The obsolete grants to Sir William Alexander of Nova Scotia, as well as to his son of lands in New England, might have been specified in the instances of original holders who had neglected or relinquished their territorial acquirements.

Having in some measure traced the progress and termination of the Earl of Stirling's Colonial schemes, a brief notice may be given of the latter period of his life. He was sworn a privy counsellor, and appointed Secretary of State for Scotland in 1626. He was created Viscount of Stirling, Lord Alexander of Tullibody, 4th September 1630; he was admitted an extraordinary Lord of Session in 1631; and raised to the Earldom in 1633. He obtained at various times from the King several grants, which, although they promised to be lucrative, proved to be

<sup>1</sup> Colonial Papers, Calendar, p. 282.

<sup>2</sup> Douglass, vol. i. p. 111. See also pp. 366, 373.

otherwise. One was a license under the Privy Seal for the space of thirty-one years to print "The Psalms of King David, translated by King James," 28th December 1627. This metrical version, published in the King's name, was to a great extent the work of Sir William Alexander. It was not completed or published until the year 1636; but the expectation of having it introduced into general use, so as to supersede the old version of Sternhold and others, which would have insured its circulation to an incalculable extent, and been a lucrative speculation, proved a complete failure.<sup>1</sup> Another grant to Lord Stirling was to authorize the coinage of 6000 stones weight of an inferior kind of copper money. Sir John Scot, when he alludes to this permission to coin base money, far under the value of the weight of copper, says, that "this brought great prejudice to the kingdom,"<sup>2</sup> and rendered him so unpopular that it was said he durst not come to Scotland to attend to the King's affairs. In April 1631 he had a patent under the Privy Seal,<sup>3</sup> "granted be his Majestie to William, Earle of Stirlie, and John Alexander, his sone, and the longer liver of thame twa, to be maisters of all mineralls and metals within this kingdome." The embarrassed state of the Earl's affairs at the time of his decease is sufficient to prove that with all his schemes and speculations he had not succeeded in the ultimate object of acquiring wealth. "He conquest to his old heritage of Menstrie, the baronie of Tillicultrie and Gogar,—all which were comprised from his heirs instantly after his decease: And of six or seven sons none but one or two are remaining. The house of Menstrie was burnt by command of his superior the Earl of Argyle, because his sons were favourers of James Graham (Marquess of Montrose) and his party."<sup>4</sup> If so, this must have been four years after the Earl of Stirling's death. In 1632 Lord Stirling had erected a larger edifice for himself, beautifully situated, with terrace walks, at the head of the Castle Wynd in Stirling. After his death this was also seized by his creditors. It became the property of the Marquess of Argyle, who caused the Earl's armorial bearings and other ornaments to be

<sup>1</sup> See Bannatyne Miscellany, vol. i., p. 227-250, and Appendix to Baillie's Letters and Journals, vol. iii., pp. 525-532.

<sup>2</sup> Sir John Scot's Staggering State.    <sup>3</sup> Regist. Secret. Concilii.    <sup>4</sup> Scot's Staggering State.

taken down, and replaced with those of his own family.<sup>1</sup> It was long known as Argyll's Lodging, but has in late years been converted into a military hospital for the garrison.

The Earl of Stirling died at London in February 1640. By his wife, Janet Erskine, daughter of Sir William Erskine, Knight, he had a large family of seven sons and three daughters. Sir James Balfour says,—“His body was embalmed, and by sea transported to Streveling, and there privatly interr'd by night in Bowie's Lyle [aisle], in Streveling Church, the 12th of Apryle 1640.”<sup>2</sup> His patent as Earl in 1633 carries the title to himself and his heirs-male bearing the surname and arms of Alexander. His two eldest sons having predeceased him, it was alleged, with the view of supporting some false claims to succession, that the Earl, fearing the extinction of his male issue, resigned his honours in the King's hands, for the purpose of obtaining a new charter, changing the destination, failing heirs-male, in favour of heirs-female. But such resignation is a mere assumption, without a particle of evidence; and the alleged charter of Novodamus never existed except as a forged document.

It is not required in a volume like the present to trace in minute genealogical detail the descendants of William, Earl of Stirling. It is admitted on all hands, and we presume the matter was well ascertained at the time, that the male succession terminated in the person of Henry, fifth Earl of Stirling, who died at London on the 4th of December 1739.

WILLIAM ALEXANDER, the eldest son, was knighted, and, as presumptive heir of the Viscount and Earl of Stirling, he himself became Lord Alexander in 1630, and Viscount Canada in 1633. From the previous pages it will be seen that on more than one occasion he visited Nova Scotia, and resided for some time in the colony as Deputy-Lieutenant. He afterwards received an extensive grant of territory from the Council for New England on April 1635, as already noticed at page 89. He died during his father's life at London in March 1638, and his body was embalmed and brought to Scotland for interment in the church of Stirling. By his wife, Lady Margaret,

<sup>1</sup> An excellent view of the house will be found in Billings's *Antiq.*, vol. iv.

<sup>2</sup> Balfour's *Hist. Works*, vol. ii., p. 427.

daughter of William, Marquess of Douglas, he left one son, William, and two daughters. The lady survived till January 1, 1660.

WILLIAM, second Earl of Stirling, succeeded his grandfather in 1640, when about eight years of age, but he died that year, within a few months of his succession. Both his sisters were married, and their descendants are not extinct.

SIR ANTHONY ALEXANDER, the Earl of Stirling's second son, in July 1626 had a pass allowing him to travel for three years in foreign parts.<sup>1</sup> On the 1st April 1629 he was joined with James Murray of Kilbaberton (who had held the office since 26th December 1607), as joint Master of the King's Works and Buildings in Scotland. He married a daughter of Sir Henry Wardlaw of Pitreavie, but died at London, without issue, in August 1637, and was interred in the family vault in the church of Stirling. Drummond of Hawthornden honoured his memory in a poem of great beauty: "To the Exequies of the Honorable Sr. Antonye Alexander, Knight, &c., A Pastorall Elegie." Edinb., 1638, 4to. Sir James Balfour says,—“About the latter end of August (1637) Sir Anthony Alexander, knight, second son of William, Earl of Stirling, and Master of Works, &c., departed this lyffe at London, from whence his corps, being embalmed, was brought by sea, and, by torches light, privatly interred in Bowes Iyle, in the church of Striveling.”<sup>2</sup>

HENRY ALEXANDER, the third son, on the death of his nephew, succeeded as third Earl of Stirling in 1640; but he did not long enjoy his honours, having died about August 1644. By his wife, Mary, daughter of a wealthy London merchant, Sir Peter Vanlore, he had a son Henry, the fourth Earl of Stirling, who survived till 1690, and two daughters, Mary and Jane Alexanders. His widow, the Countess of Stirling, married for her second husband Colonel John Blount, who, after the Restoration of Charles II., presented a memorial respecting the claim, which is added on a subsequent page.

JOHN ALEXANDER, of Over Gogar, the fourth son. He married a daughter of Sir John Graham of Gartmore, leaving one daughter.

CHARLES ALEXANDER, the fifth son. He was witness in December

<sup>1</sup> Sir W. Alexander's Register of Letters.

<sup>2</sup> Balfour's Hist. Works, vol. ii., p. 251.



1642 to the testament of his sister Lady Elizabeth Alexander. He is said to have left a son, who died without issue.

Mr LUDOVICK ALEXANDER, the sixth son, had a pass to go to France in December 1634. He died without issue.

JAMES ALEXANDER, the seventh son, was a witness to his sister Lady Elizabeth's testament in December 1642. James Alexander and Grissell Hay had a daughter, Margaret, born 23d June 1669.

The place or vault where the Earl of Stirling and so many of his family were interred was in the Cross Kirk or High Church of Stirling. From its former proprietor it had been known as Bowye's Isle, but belonged to Thomas Craigengelt of that ilk, who, on the 26th February 1618, "resigned his right to that Ile in the Rude Kirk of Stirling, callit of auld the Bowey's Ile, and now Craigengeltis." The Kirk-session, on the 4th October 1631, granted the seat or loft within the said Kirk of Stirling to William, Viscount of Stirling; and on the 4th September 1632 the Session ratified to his Lordship the disposition by the Maister of the Hospital (with consent of the Provost), "of their Isle, situat on the south syde of their kirk, sometyme callit Bowye's or Craigingelt's Iyle, &c."<sup>1</sup> In 1656, when the church was divided into two distinct places of worship, the vault may have been injured. It remained at least long neglected; and the leaden coffins, it is supposed, were abstracted by Cromwell's soldiers. The only inscription of which we have any notice was that erected by the first Countess of Stirling to the memory of her parents, Sir William and Lady Erskine. In 1825, when the assumed Earl of Stirling visited the possessions of his alleged ancestors, and was welcomed by the Provost and Magistrates, with the church bells ringing on such an auspicious event, he presented the family vault to Mr Wright, a writer in the town, who caused it to be enclosed, and appropriated, when it should be required, for his own use. This insured the complete destruction of every vestige of the Alexanders of Menstrie, including the Erskine monument, but a copy of the inscription was fortunately preserved by a local antiquary.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Extracts from Maitland Miscellany, vol. i., pp. 455, 471, 472.

<sup>2</sup> See Mr Turnbull's Preface, pp. 42-44, to his Report on the Stirling Peerage Trial; where the inscription is printed. Edinb., 1839, 8vo.



## IV.—SIR ROBERT GORDON OF LOCHINVAR.

The author of the spirited proposals contained in the "Encouragements, &c. by mee, Lochinvar," in 1625, was SIR ROBERT GORDON, in Galloway. The family from which he was descended is traced back, in the Peerage, to the time of King Robert Bruce. Having at a subsequent date acquired this property in Kirkcudbright, Robert, the eldest son of Sir John Gordon of Lochinvar, was served his heir, 5th November 1604; and is described "as one of the strongest and most active men of his time." He had occasion to display his bodily power in the Border feuds between the inhabitants of Galloway and Annandale. He had the less enviable distinction of being selected, or accused, for the slaughter of James Gordon, his page, on the 29th of June 1608; but by a warrant signifying his Majesty's pleasure, signed by the Lord Chancellor, and the Secretary, George, Earl of Dunbar, "the dyet," or day fixed for his trial, was deserted.<sup>1</sup> Sir James Balfour, in his *Annals*, connects the murder of his servant with some scandalous reports, which he admits were unfounded, but uncharitably insinuates that Sir Robert was desirous to have got rid of his wife.<sup>2</sup> In the Court festivities at Prince Henry's Barriers (or tilting match), on the Twelfth Night, Sir Robert was one of the three successful champions to whom prizes were delivered by the Princess Elizabeth in January 1609-10. A contemporary writer indeed says that Gordon's success as a Scot was owing "more in favour of the nation, than for any due desert."<sup>3</sup>

When the proposed establishment of Colonies in America was sanctioned by the Crown, Sir Robert Gordon was among the first to embark in the scheme with a proper spirit. He obtained a Charter under the Great Seal, with ample privileges, of certain lands to be erected into the Barony of New Galloway in Nova Scotia, 8th November

<sup>1</sup> Pitcairn's *Criminal Trials*, vol. ii. p. 558.

<sup>2</sup> Balfour's *Hist. Works*, vol. ii. p. 20.

<sup>3</sup> R. Johnston's *Historia*, p. 714; Nicholl's *Progresses of King James*, vol. ii. p. 283.

1621. This Charter is printed in the present volume.<sup>1</sup> He appears to have engaged in this undertaking with more patriotic zeal and less selfish motives than his preeursor, "the Lieutenant Generall to his Majestie in the Kingdome of New Scotland," to whom he dedicates his "Encouragements," in 1625. This tract, which is now of great rarity, is highly honourable to the author, who assigns for his MOTIVES, the propagation of the Gospel among the Heathen; the service of his Prince and native Country, by enlarging its dominions; and the gain to be derived by those who should engage in such an enterprize. His OFFERS to Ministers of the Gospel, Gentlemen, and others who were inclined to become Undertakers, were most liberal and praiseworthy.

Gordon had also a similar Charter under the Great Seal of the barony and lordship of Charles's Island (*INSULA CAROLI*), dated 1st May 1626.<sup>2</sup> Four days later he obtained the pass for a ship which he was to dispatch to America.<sup>3</sup> In the Signature to Sir Robert Gordon of Lochinvar for this Charter, he is honourably mentioned, as "being one of the first of this Nation who hath projected and undertaken *at his owne charge* to procure a forraigne Plantation."<sup>4</sup>

In the Acts of Privy Council, 12th July 1627, we find that Sir Robert had personally appeared before the Lords of Council, and made the following declaration in regard to prizes, then a frequent subject of dispute. But Gordon's death in November that year brought all his schemes of Colonization to a premature close.

#### LOCHINVAR HIS DECLARATIOUN.

*Apud Halvyrudhous duodecimo Julij 1627.*

The whilk day in presence of the Lords of Secreit Counsell compeirit personallie Sir Robert Gordoun of Lochinvar Knight and declairit that notwithstanding of the Commissionn grantit and exped vnto him this day for his furtherance and advancement in the Kingis Maties service against the enemye, he was content, of his awne consent, that all the prysses that sall be tane be him, or be utheris having warrant and power from him, on this syde of the Equinoctiall Lyne sall be judged

<sup>1</sup> Charters, &c., p. 16.—Line 10, for *desuperet* should read *desuper et*.

<sup>2</sup> Reg. Magni Sig. Lib. li. No. 126.

<sup>3</sup> Printed supra, p. 35.

<sup>4</sup> Register of Signatures, &c., vol. xlix. July 8, 1626.

in no countrie but in this kingdome be the Admirall of this kingdome, and that he sall make payment to the Kingis Ma<sup>tie</sup> and the Admirall of the proportioun dew to thame out of the prysses And that this Declaratioun and Act sall stand in force so long as his Commissioun stands, and ay and whill he give up the same to the saidis Lords.

Dr Robert Johnston, who belonged to that part of the country, and was no doubt personally acquainted with Sir Robert Gordon, in mentioning his death says, "*Calculo extinctus est. Qui excelsi corporis robore, et animi magnitudine, in omni ætate conspicuus vigerat. Unde singularem gratiam apud magnanimum Principem Henricum promeruerat; solennique Armorum exercitatione, in Aula victor evaserat; ac præmium meritæ palmæ tulerat: Henricoque mortuo, fabricatis navibus, ultra Æquinoctialem Scotici nominis famam propagare destinauerat. Verum, morte ejus tam laudabilis conatus evanuit.*"<sup>1</sup>

Sir Robert Gordon married Lady Elizabeth Ruthven,<sup>2</sup> one of the daughters of William, first Earl of Gowrye; and had issue, two sons and two daughters. They were divorced about the year 1609, and she became the second wife of Sir Hugh Campbell of Loudon, first Lord Loudoun. She died in January 1617.<sup>3</sup> The eldest son, Sir John Gordon, who seems to have taken no special share in this project of colonization, was served heir of his father 29th March 1628. He was created Viscount of Kenmore and Lord of Lochinvar, by patent, dated 8th January 1633; but he did not long enjoy his honours, having died on 12th September 1634, aged thirty-five. The second son, Robert Gordon of Gilston, was joined with his father in the Royal Charter of 1621, containing the grant of the barony of New Galloway in Nova Scotia; and he appears to have taken the most active share in this enterprise, by visiting the Colony, and superintending its affairs. He died without issue.

<sup>1</sup> Rerum Britannicarum Historiæ, Lib. xxii., p. 714. Amstel. 1655, folio.

<sup>2</sup> In the Peerages this Lady is always called Isabella. It would appear, however, from her Confirmed Testament, that her name was Elizabeth. (Paterson's Ayrshire Families, vol. ii. p. 206.)

<sup>3</sup> Douglass' Peerage, by Wood, vol. ii. p. 147.

## V.—JOHN BURNETT, ABERDEEN.

Although not specially connected with the Collections in the present volume, the following warrant "to traffique with Virginia," preserved among the Colonial Papers, may be added in illustration of the traffic, to a limited extent, which was carried on at this period from some of the ports in Scotland. Of Burnett himself we have no information.

1638.  
July 2.

[CHARLES R.]

Whereas the Bearer hereof John Burnett of Aberdeene being the sole Marchant of o<sup>r</sup> Kingdome of Scotland, that hath supplied the Plantacion of that o<sup>r</sup> Colony of Virginia, & become o<sup>r</sup> tenant there, hath by occasion of our late proclamation of the fourteenth of March in the thirteenth yeare of o<sup>r</sup> reigne apprehended that some stopp or impeachment of his trade into Scotland may be made by o<sup>r</sup> officers there in regard of o<sup>r</sup> demand in the said proclamation expressed that all the Tobacco of that Plantacion should be vnloded and brought into o<sup>r</sup> Port of London, whereas the same is only exclusive of other Ports w<sup>th</sup>in o<sup>r</sup> Dominions of England, Ireland and Wales, and no wayes intended to impeach the freedome of commerce and traffique into o<sup>r</sup> Kingdome of Scotland by the Natives thereof: These are therefore to will and require you upon sight hereof to permitt vnto the said John Burnett and his factors a free commerce and traffique from o<sup>r</sup> kingdome of Scotland to that o<sup>r</sup> Colony, and from thence back againe, as well to importe and vnlode any Marchandize in any port or haven of the said Colony, as likewise to loade and exporte Tobacco or any other Marchandize from thence into any port or ports of o<sup>r</sup> said Kingdome, And that without any stop or hindrance or impeachment from you or any other o<sup>r</sup> officers or louing subjects as ye or they will answere the contrarey at your perill providing alweis that they pay o<sup>r</sup> usuall customes, and enter into bond that he shall not vnlode any where other than in the ports of o<sup>r</sup> Kingdome of Scotland, and at every returne shew good Certificates of soe doing before the said Bonds to be released. And for his better security in the premisses it is o<sup>r</sup> pleasure that this o<sup>r</sup> warrant be by you putt vpon public record. Given vnder o<sup>r</sup> hande and seale att o<sup>r</sup> Courte att Greenwich the second day of July in the fourteenth yeare of our reigne.

To o<sup>r</sup> Trusty and Wellbeloved the Govern<sup>r</sup> of o<sup>r</sup> Colony of  
Virginia or any other o<sup>r</sup> officers that are for the present  
or that shall be hereafter, whome it may concerne.

VI.—NOVA SCOTIA PAPERS SUBSEQUENT TO THE  
YEAR 1640.

The following papers are added, with no design of tracing the history of Nova Scotia subsequent to the death of the Earl of Stirling, but simply as throwing some light on transactions with which he had been connected. The name of New Scotland no longer appearing in our Parliamentary or Privy Seal Records; but Acadia and Nova Scotia continued to be mixed up in the contests between the French and English settlers. Perhaps no clearer account is to be found of this period of its history than is given by a late popular writer, Judge Haliburton, in his work entitled, "An Historical and Statistical Account of Nova-Scotia," 1829. Sir Charles St Estienne, or Stephen de La Tour, son and heir of Claude de La Tour, having proved his right to the proprietary of this country by virtue of his father's purchase from Sir William Alexander in 1630, and the subsequent confirmation of his title by the French King, in the fresh disputes which arose after the country was once more regained by the English, the Protector adjudged these lands to La Tour, and granted a charter in his favour, along with Sir Thomas Temple and William Crowne, of the territory under the designation of Acadia, and part of the country commonly called Nova Scotia, extending south-westward to the river St George.

Dr William Douglass, author of "A Summary, Historical and Political, of British Settlements in North America," has a chapter on Nova Scotia or L'Accadie, in which he says,—“Hitherto, it cannot be called a Colony; it is only an impotent British garrison in an ill-regulated French settlement.” He adds,—

“There have been many revolutions in the property and dominion of Nova Scotia.

“1. Anno 1627 and anno 1628, Sir David Kirk and associates, upon a private adventure, but by commission from the King or Crown of

England, conquered the French settlements in Canada and Nova Scotia; and patents were obtained from the Court of England, by which the lands called Canada, north of the river St Laurence were granted to Sir David Kirk, and the lands called Nova Scotia south of the said river were confirmed to Sir William Alexander.

"2. Sir William sold the property to M. Claude de la Tour d'Aunay, a French Protestant, and anno 1632, March 29, by treaty King Charles quit-claim'd it to France.

"3. Cromwell sent Col. Sedgwick; he reduced it anno 1654, and it was confirmed to England by treaty in the year following; M. St Estienne, son and heir of the above Claude de la Tour, came to England, made out his claim, and had the property surrendered to him; this La Tour sold the property to Sir Thomas Temple, who was governor and in possession of the property until anno 1662; it was then delivered up to the French by King Charles II. (that race ought to be called sons of France, not sons of Great Britain) who agreed with the Temples for a sum of 10,000*l.* sterl. to be paid them (but it never was satisfied) upon account of their right.

"Menival was appointed Governor, and built a small stockaded fort, called Port-Royal, upon a bason, nine miles from the bay of Fundy; Nova Scotia was confirmed to the French by the Breda treaty, anno 1667, in the manner of a quit-claim. La Tour, a French Protestant, upon his returning to the Roman Catholic way of worship, had it confirmed (as to property) to him by the Court of France. La Tour in the various vicissitudes, was Protestant when the country was under the dominion of England, and Roman Catholic when it was subject to the King of France."<sup>1</sup>

In the successive changes that took place, when Nova Scotia, Canada, and the islands on their coasts, had been ceded to France, and afterwards regained by the English, the name of New Scotland never appears; and it is certain that no claims were preferred, nor any reservations made of rights of superiority supposed to be inherited by the Earl of Stir-

<sup>1</sup> A Summary, Historical and Political, of the First Planting, Progressive Improvements, and Present State of the British Settlements in North America. By William Douglass, M.D., vol. i., p. 306. Boston, 1755; London, reprinted 1755, 2 vols., 8vo

ling's representatives; and, in fact, Henry fourth Earl of Stirling, in his Case submitted to Charles the Second in the year 1660, became an applicant for a continuation of the former grant of Nova Scotia, being in the King's hands, or for payment of the £10,000, also claimed for his Sisters; but neither of them seem to have been successful.<sup>1</sup>

When Major-General Robert Sedgwick, as Lieutenant to the Lord Protector in 1654, took possession of these territories, Cromwell never contemplated restoring the conquered countries to the French, while negotiating the peace of Westphalia. Sir Charles St Estienne, having succeeded his father, presented a memorial setting forth his claims in virtue of the purchase from Sir William Alexander by his father Claude de La Tour. His rights were fully recognized in the following documents:—

1656. July 14.—Warrant for Articles of Agreement between Oliver, Lord Protector, and Sir Charles St Stephen, Lord Delatour, Bart. of Scotland, Thos. Temple, and Will. Crowne, to pass the Great Seal. Letters Patent to be granted on or before 10th of August next, for all those lands in America called Acadia and that part of the country called Nova Scotia, the boundaries of which are particularly described, with reservation of lands already granted to any colony in New England. Some articles or conditions are specified which it is not necessary here to recapitulate.<sup>2</sup>

1656. August 9.—Patent containing a grant to Sir Charles St Stephen, Baron Delatour, Thomas Temple, and William Crowne, of the country and territories called Laccady and Nova Scotia, with reservation of powers and privileges as in the above articles of agreement.<sup>3</sup>

A month later (20th September) La Tour is said to have made a conveyance of his rights to Temple and Crowne. Colonel Temple was not allowed to retain peaceable possession of the country, being exposed to French aggressions, as we learn from the Colonial Papers of 1658 and 1659.<sup>4</sup> He, however, was in possession at the Restoration, and was one of the competing parties who endeavoured to obtain from Charles the Second either a new grant of Nova Scotia, or to be reimbursed for the heavy charges they had severally incurred.

<sup>1</sup> See *infra*, p. 119.

<sup>2</sup> Colonial Papers, p. 444.

<sup>3</sup> *Ib.*, p. 447.

<sup>4</sup> *Ib.*, pp. 469-478.



1660  
(end of.)

EXTRACT FROM SEVERALL PROCEEDINGS RELATING TO THE TITLE TO  
NOVA SCOTIA.

- Anno 1606. That Mons<sup>r</sup> De la Tour first discover'd that country neare 60 years agoe, and built for his owne habitation on the place called S<sup>t</sup> Johns Fort vpon the river of S<sup>t</sup> Johns.
1621. Mons<sup>r</sup> de la Tour coming in to Scotland engaged S<sup>r</sup> Will<sup>m</sup> Alexander then Sec<sup>y</sup> of state to King James to support his right in it, and for that end to take part of the Interest & in order thereto Sir Will<sup>m</sup> Alexander obtained a Grant of it from K. James 1621.
1625. This grant was by K. Ch. I. confirmed to Sir Will<sup>m</sup> Alexander (now Earle of Sterline) 1625.
1630. In the yeare 1630 the Ea. of Sterline for consideracion conveyed part of Nova Scotia to M<sup>r</sup> De la Tour with all rights, &c. and this was confirmed vnder the Great Seale of Scotland.
1632. In the year 1632 the Earle of Sterline at the Kings perswasion did (inter alia) surrender into the hands of the French by vertew of a Treaty of that yeare, Fort Royal which was not contained in his grant to La Tour (for which surrender the K. gave the Ea. a Pr. Seale for 10,000 li. issuable out of the Realme of Scotland, which grant was neuer paid the Earle And thus the pretencions of the Earles Widdow marryed to Col<sup>l</sup> Blount, and of the Earles heires (Daughters & Sonnes). In the Earles right come in Sir Lewis Kirke, Mr Fran. Barkly, &c. who bestowed vast sums in planting that Countrey vpon contract with the Earle & who having vpon the said Treaty surrendred their Interest to the French for 60,000 li w<sup>ch</sup> was neuer satisfied by the French: Kirke and Barkly think they have a equitable pretencion in the matter.
- After the yeare 1632 the French that were in possession of Fort Royal make warre vpon La Tour at S<sup>t</sup> John's Fort, whereby La Tour was constrained to goe to New England for succour, for obtaining of w<sup>ch</sup> he mortgages his Fort of S<sup>t</sup> Johns to Mr Gibbons but when La Tour returned to Nova Scotia he finds the French vnder one Douey had seized his Fort S<sup>t</sup> Johns and committed severall other outrages. Of this he complains to the K. of France who disowns the action, & gives La Tour a power to seize Douey whereuer he finds him, in order to satisfaction: La Tour returning to Nova Scotia finds Douey dead, and marrying his widdow enters into possession of Port Royal which he now holds by that right.
1655. Att lengthe in 1655 Sedgwicke having a designe of attempting something in America vpon the Manhattans, the Dutch, & the Peace with Holland having

diuered him; turnes without order his force vpon the French in Nova Scotia seizes La Tour's Forts & brings himselfe pretencions to Cromwell. But Cromwell thought fitt to restore that Countrey to La Tour & with him (vpon Articles agreed between them) to Tho. Temple and Crowne by a Deed, 1656: And so it remained when the King returned. It may be doubted

1. In which Prince the R<sup>t</sup> of Souerainty, and the propriety is, the King of England or the French King?
2. If in his Ma<sup>ty</sup> and his subjects, then whether in Temple & Crowne, &c. by Cromwell's Grant? or which pretentions are to be allowed?
1. Kirke } for their 60,000 li, &c.  
Barkley }
2. Gibbons for his Mortgage.
3. Earle of Sterline's heires & for their 10,000 li.

TO THE RIGHT HON<sup>BLE</sup> THE LORDS OF HIS MA<sup>TIES</sup> MOST HONORABLE PRIVY COUNCILL  
THE HUMBLE PETITION OF CHARLES S<sup>r</sup> STEPHENS LORD DE LA TOUR BARONET OF NOVA SCOTIA, THOMAS TEMPLE, AND WILLIAM CROWNE, ESQ<sup>R</sup>.

1661.  
March.

Humbly Shewing,

That whereas the Right Honb<sup>le</sup> Lord Sterlin Secretary of State to King James for the Kingdome of Scotland and one of his said Ma<sup>ties</sup> Privy Councill had not only in the yeare 1621 a ffeofm<sup>t</sup> and grant of all Nova Scotia to him his heires and assignes for ever, but also power to create Baronets there; which was confirmed by his late Ma<sup>tie</sup> of blessed memory in the yeare 1625 And whereas the said Lord Sterline as well out of affection to yo<sup>r</sup> Pet<sup>r</sup> De la Tour's father and himselfe, as also in lieu & recompence of their great paines and expences, Together with the hazard of their lives in adventureing first into the Wildernes among the Savages to discover the Countrey for the service of his said Ma<sup>tie</sup> and the publike good and other consideration haueing settled there above 15 yeares before any grant from either of the said Kings, Was pleased to grant a part of the said bordering towards New England vnto your said Pet<sup>rs</sup> father and himselfe their heires and assignes for euer, and created them Baronetts of the said Countrey as a further acknowledgement of their said service, as by the said grants more fully appeares of which said Countree yo<sup>r</sup> said Pet<sup>rs</sup> and his Father were quietly possessed duringe the Raigne of the aforesaid Kings without any interruption, as relating vnto the Crowne of England or Scotland. But in the yeare 1654 by strength of forces of the late Cromwells vnder the command of one Major Generall Sedgwick your said Pet<sup>rs</sup> was by violence forced out of possession and his goods plundered and taken away to the value of about £10,000, and was carried to the

said Cromwell where your said Pet<sup>rs</sup> waited nere a yeaere before he could be heard. And then no releife without paying Cromwells Souldiers and other Debts to the value of about £5000 as by the said Articles dothe appeare. And your Pet<sup>rs</sup> Temple and Crowne's right being by purchase from your Pet<sup>r</sup> De La Tour upon valuable consideration as by theire covenants fully appeareth, And whereas wee have been lately informed that some not knowing the true state of the right which your Pet<sup>rs</sup> have to the said Country, haue endeavoured to obtaine a grant from his now Mat<sup>ie</sup> thereof Wee doe not doubt your Lo<sup>pps</sup> clemency and justice but that when the evidence of your Pet<sup>rs</sup> foresaid right and title shall appeare, wee shall receive a gratus confirmation therein.

Your Pet<sup>rs</sup> humble suit to your Lo<sup>pps</sup> is That in tender consideration of the premises they may be admitted to make theire said Titles appeare And that in the interem nothing may be done to theire prejudice.

And your Pet<sup>rs</sup> (as in duty bound) shall pray, &c.

(*In dorso.*) The Petition of Charles St Stephens Lord de La Tour Baronet of Nova Scotia, Thomas Temple and W<sup>m</sup> Crowne. Received first of March 166½.  
Read at Committee the 12 March 1660[1].

1660.  
March.

#### THE STATE OF THE CASE OF COLONEL TEMPLE AS TO HYS INTEREST IN NOVA SCOTIA.

These parts of North America called Nova Scotia or Nova Francia, and the severall p<sup>ts</sup> thereof Canada & La Cadia have been continually disputed between the subjects of the 2 Crownes of England & France, sometimes the one and sometimes the other haucing possession thereof.

About 1632 they were wholly or for the moste part in the possession of the English in which yeaere by treatye between the 2 Crownes dated 29th March they were all to be restored to the French and satisfaction in money was agreed to be given to some English, not ffor the said Countreys and fforts but ffor certaine shippes, goods and equipage thereof (w<sup>ch</sup> some interested therein say was never performed) viz. 64,246 liuers 4 solz, trois deniers tournois pour le merchandizes du Vassieu de Jaques & 69,896 liuers neuve solz deuz deniers tournois pour les merchandizes du Vassieu lo Benediction le tout temp du Roy et satisfacion pour le regard du naivo Le Bride au la Espouse les Counsels.

But the French were putt in possession of the ffortes & Countreyes and the Countrey of L<sup>r</sup>Cadia (with part whereof Co<sup>l</sup> Temple is nowe possessed) was in the

hands of Mons<sup>r</sup> S<sup>t</sup> Etienne Siegnur de La Tour, who the better to secure himself on all sides tooke a grant thereof from Sir William Alexander to whom K. James 10th September 1621 granted a pattent thereof and alsoe ffrom the Frenche Kinge) And built S<sup>t</sup> Johns forte (now the cheife if not the onely fort) att his owne chardge ffor that Port Royal which was one of those surrendered 1632, was lately demolished soone after itt & all the Countrey & fforts of L'Cadia were taken ffrom de La Tour by Major Sedgwicke in Oliver's time wherevpon he being brought into England solicited the restitution of the fforts and Countrey to him as holding them by a pattent ffrom the Crowne of England; and came to an agree<sup>mt</sup> w<sup>th</sup> Col. Temple and William Crowne and made over his interest to them by deed dated 20th of Sep<sup>r</sup> 1656 upon a valuable consideration p. v<sup>t</sup> in the deed videlicet, 3,379 li to Margaret Gibbons the Relict of Major Edward Gibbons ffor w<sup>ch</sup> La Tour had some yeares before engaged the said fforts.

Besides Temple could not have the fforts and Countrey out off the handes off Sedgwickes officers & ffrom the power then in being, untill he had paid 1,800 li to them, besides he is out of purse many thousand pounds to mainteyne them from the Frenche who assaulted him and tooke them But were retaken by Col. Temple, though by the Treatye made betweene France and the Protectour that together with other differences considering damages received on the one side & the other, stood referred to arbitrage w<sup>ch</sup> is not yett determined.

So his Case Col. Temple is able to make out by such pattents and evidences as he hath w<sup>th</sup> him in New England.

RO. NELSON.

(*In dorso.*) Col Temples Case, Mr R. Nelson received  
20th Aug<sup>st</sup> 1660.

TO THE KING'S MOST EXCELLENT MAJESTIE THE HUMBLE PETITION OF COL JOHN 1660.  
BLOUNT, THE LADYS MARY AND JANE ALEXANDER DAUGHTERS OF THE LATE December 4.  
EARLE OF STERLINE.

Sheweth,

That WILL<sup>m</sup> late EARLE OF STERLINE Principal Secretary of Scotland having to his vast Expence & the Wastenge of his whole estate in Scotland Planted a Colony in Nova Scotia, and a peace beinge concluded between his late Ma<sup>tie</sup> of euer blessed memory & the late French King, Nova Scotia was included in the Articles of peace to be rendered to the French by which the said Earles whole fortune there was lost for reparation whercof His late Ma<sup>tie</sup> was graciously pleased to thinke himselfe bound in equity to relieve him & grant his pattents for the reim-

bursement and payment of £10,000 to him & his assignes out of the Excheq<sup>r</sup> and all other the profits in Scotland whatsoever that should first arise: But the warres ensuing there, and afterwards here the said Earle and his Son, ffather to your petitioners Mary, and Jane, dyed before payment of the said £10,000 & your Pet<sup>r</sup> John marryed Dame Mary Countesse of Sterlinge and disbursed for her necessitys and preservation of her Estate and her children £2500.

In tender consideration whereof and for that £10,000 is all the expectancie & subsistence of your Pet<sup>rs</sup> Mary and Jane & to reimburse your Pet<sup>r</sup> John who faithfully served his late Ma<sup>tie</sup> & your Ma<sup>tie</sup> ever since the first warre in Scotland and commaunded your Ma<sup>ties</sup> owne Regiment of Horse That your Ma<sup>tie</sup> will be graciously pleased to grant your Letters Patents for the satisfaction of the said £10,000 in proportion to your Pet<sup>rs</sup> out of your Ma<sup>ties</sup> Receipts in Scotland or other wayes as your Ma<sup>tie</sup> shall thinke fitt.

And your Pet<sup>rs</sup> shall ever pray, &c.

Whitehall, 4 December 1660.

1661.  
March.

His Maty<sup>e</sup> being sensible of the Pet<sup>rs</sup> condition and sufferings is graciously inclined to reliev them, and is pleased to refer their case to the right Hon<sup>ble</sup> the Lord Chambirlane of his Ma<sup>tie</sup> hous, that he may consider of their pretensions in equity to Nova Scotia, and to report what he conceaves fit to be done therein whereupon his Maty<sup>e</sup> will declare his further pleasure.

LAUDERDAILL.

(*In dorso.*) Pet<sup>n</sup> of Coll. John Blount, &c. Read at the Committee the 12 March 1661.

May it please yo<sup>r</sup> most Excellent Ma<sup>tie</sup>

According to your Ma<sup>ties</sup> reference to me vpon the Petition annexed I see find by the patent therein mentioned, of the late King Charles your Royall Father of blessed memory That William late Earle of Sterlino did by speciall order and command from his said Ma<sup>tie</sup> According to Articles with the French King render back to the French his plantation of Nova Scotia in consideration whereof His said Ma<sup>tie</sup> conceived himselfe bound to relieve him, and gave him the said Patent for Tenne thousand pounds payable out of the first profits of the Revenue of Scotland, which the Petiti<sup>o</sup>n affirms to bee yett unsatisfyed And therefore humbly conceive it equitable that the Petiti<sup>o</sup>ns may be paid the same, And in all humility submit it to yo<sup>r</sup> Ma<sup>ties</sup> Royal consideration.

MANCHESTER.

THE CASE OF THE RIGHT HON<sup>BLE</sup> HENRY EARLE OF STERLINE TOUCHING  
NOVA SCOTIA IN AMERICA.

1660  
(end of.)

King James by his Letters Patents vnder the Greate Seale of Scotland beareing date 10th Dec. 1621 did give and grant vnto Sir William Alexander afterwards EARLE OF STERLINE and his heires All that County of New Scotland.

King Charles by his Infeoffment under the Great Seale of Scotland of the 12th of July 1625, did give graunt and dispose vnto the said Sir William Alexander his heires and assignes, All and singular the lands and dominion of the Signor of New Scotland in America.

King Charles by his Letters Patents vnder the great Seale of Scotland beareing date the 3d of May 1627 reciteing the Infeoffm<sup>t</sup> afores<sup>d</sup> did graunt vnto the said Sir William Alexander and his heires the Admiraltie of New Scotland in America. Sir William Alexander afterwards dyed Henry Earle of Sterline beinge his sonne and heire who is likewise dead Henry now Earl of Sterline being his sonne and heire. It is said that S<sup>r</sup> William Alexander did in his lifetime by the Kings generall command withdraw his Plantations in New Scotland. But if any such thing was, it was done vpon consideration of £10,000 to be paid vnto him by the King haueing expended in settling the Plantation there above £20,000 which 10,000 are to this day vnpaid.

It is humbly prayed by the now EARLE OF STERLINE that in regards the 10,000 li remaine vnpaid and that the Sig<sup>re</sup> of New Scotland is now in the possession of his Majestie that his Majestie would be pleased to continue vnto him the graunt of that Countrie.

(*In dorso.*) The Case of the Earle of Sterline touching Nova Scotia.

# VII.—ROLL OF BARONETS OF NOVA SCOTIA WHO HAD TERRITORIAL GRANTS FROM SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER, EARL OF STIRLING.

The numbers at the right hand side refer to the pages of a volume in the General Register House, containing Precepts of Charters to the several Baronets of Nova Scotia. It is titled on the back "Regist. Precep. Cart. pro Baronettis Nov. Scotiæ" 1625-1630. The Precepts are entered not in strict Chronological order, but probably according to the time of their Registration. The names having no references are given on the authority of former lists.

1625.

May	28.	Sir ROBERT GORDOUN, knight, son of the late Alexander Earl of Sutherland . . . . .	1
	28.	WILLIAM, Earl MARISCHALL, Lord KEITH, &c. . . . .	19
	28.	ALEXANDER STRACHAN, of Strachan . . . . .	
	29.	Sir DUNCAN CAMPBELL, of Glenurquhie, knight, &c. . . . .	46
	29.	ROBERT INNES, of Innes . . . . .	49
	29.	Sir JOHN WEYMIS, of Weymis, knight . . . . .	50
	30.	DAVID LIVINGSTOUN, of Donnepace or Donypace . . . . .	20
	30.	Sir WILLIAM DOUGLAS, of Glenbervie, knight . . . . .	20
July	14.	Sir DONALD MAKDONALD, of Slett, knight . . . . .	72
	19.	Master RICHARD MURRAY, of Cockpuill . . . . .	22
August	30.	JOHN COLQUHOUN, of Luss . . . . .	21
	31.	Sir ALEXANDER GORDOUN, of Clunie, knight . . . . .	22
September	1.	JOHN LESLIE, of Wardes . . . . .	23
	2.	JAMES GORDOUN, of Lesmoir . . . . .	24
	3.	GILBERT RAMSAY, of Balnayne . . . . .	23
November	17.	Sir GEORGE FORRESTER, of Corstorphine, knight . . . . .	67
December	28.	ERSKINE . . . . .	
	28.	Sir WILLIAM GRAHAME, of Braco, knight . . . . .	65
	28.	PATRICK HUME, of Polwarth . . . . .	

1626.

March	30.	WILLIAM FORBES, of Monymusk . . . . .	24
	31.	GEORGE JOHNSTOUN, of Caskibene . . . . .	25
April	21.	Sir THOMAS BURNET, of Leyis, knight . . . . .	25
	22.	JOHN MONCREIFF, of Moncreiff . . . . .	27
	24.	GEORGE OGILVIE, of Carnowsie . . . . .	26



# PREFACE.

121

May 1.	ROBERT GORDOUN, of Lochinvar . . . . .	27
June 1.	Sir WILLIAM MURRAY, of Clairmounth, knight . . . . .	28
July 18.	Sir JOHN BLAKADER, of Tullialline, knight . . . . .	45
September 29.	Sir JOHN OGILVIE, of Innerquharatie . . . . .	1627.
March 18.	Sir DONALD McKYE, of Strathnaver, knight . . . . .	57
	28. Sir JAMES MAXWELL, of Calderwood, knight . . . . .	68
April 18.	JAMES STEWART, second lawful son of Alexander Earl of Galloway . . . . .	74
May 2.	Sir ARCHIBALD NEPAR, of Merchistoun, knight . . . . .	45
June 25.	JOHN LEVINGSTOUN, of Kinnaird . . . . .	47
July 4.	WILLIAM CUNNYNGHAME, of Cunnyngamehead . . . . .	48
July 17.	JAMES CARMICHAELL, of Westerraw . . . . .	77
	19. Master JAMES MARGILL, of Cranstounriddell . . . . .	49
	20. GEORGE OGILVIE, of Banff . . . . .	48
October 18.	SAMUEL JOHNSTOUN, of Elphinstoun . . . . .	59
November 21.	WILLIAM COCKBURNE, apparent of Langtoun . . . . .	63
December 13.	COLIN CAMPBELL, of Lundie, in Angus . . . . .	54
	JAMES CAMPBELL, of Aberuchill . . . . .	1628.
January 1.	Sir ARCHIBALD ACHISONE, of Clancairny, knight . . . . .	73
10.	SANDILANDS . . . . .	61
10.	Sir ROBERT MONTGOMERIE, of Skelmurlie, knight . . . . .	61
12.	JAMES HALIBURTON, of Pitcur . . . . .	60
12.	DUGALD CAMPBELL, of Auchinbreck . . . . .	61
14.	Master DONALD CAMPBELL, of Ardnamurachane . . . . .	51
February 19.	Master THOMAS HOPE, of Craighall, King's Advocate . . . . .	70
22.	Sir JAMES SKENE, of Curriehill . . . . .	66
22.	Sir JOHN PRESTOUN, of Airdrie, knight . . . . .	63
February 22.	ALEXANDER GIBSON, of Durie . . . . .	58
May 14.	JOHN CRAWFORD, of Kilbirny . . . . .	66
14.	JOHN RIDDELL, of Riddell . . . . .	63
15.	Sir ARCHIBALD MURRAY of Blakbarronie, knight . . . . .	66
16.	Sir PATRICK MURRAY, of Elibank, knight . . . . .	66
21.	CADELL . . . . .	66
21.	Sir JOHN McKENZIE, of Tarbet, knight . . . . .	66
June 20.	Master WILLIAM ELPHINSTOUN, Cupbearer to his Majesty . . . . .	66
September 29.	ROBERT BARR, . . . . .	59
	29. Captain ARTHUR FORBES, of Castle Forbes, (Longford) . . . . .	59

September 29.	FRANCIS HAMMILTON, of Killach, (Down)	. . .	59
October 2.	ANDREW STEWART, Lord Castlestewart, (Tyrone)	. . .	
	EDWARD (BARRETT,) Lord of Newburgh	. . .	62
1629.			
June 26.	WILLIAM BRUCE, of Stanehouse	. . .	64
July 27.	Master JOHN NICOLSONE, of Leswade	. . .	65
	27. MICHAEL ARNOT, fear of Arnot	. . .	68
	28. Master JAMES OLIPHANT, of Newtown	. . .	64
	28. Sir PATRICK AGNEW, of Lochnaw, knight	. . .	66
	28. Sir WILLIAM KEITH, of Lndquharne, knight	. . .	68
November 30.	CLAUDE ST ESTIENNE, SEIGNEUR DE LA TOUR	. . .	
1630.			
March 31.	Sir ROBERT HANNAY, of Mochrum, knight	. . .	92
April 20.	WILLIAM FORBES, of Cragivar	. . .	70
	18. JAMES LORD STEWART of Ochilttrie (Cancelled before being recorded, see supra, p. 78, June 7, 1632)	. . .	
	24. Sir PEIRS CORSBIE, knight, one of the Privy Council in Ireland and WALTER CORSBIE, of Corsbie Park (Wicklow,) and the heirs-male of either	. . .	74
May 12.	CHARLES ST ESTIENNE, Seigneur de St Denis Court	. . .	
July 24.	JAMES SIBBALD, of Rankelour	. . .	69
October 2.	WILLIAM MURRAY, of New Duncarn	. . .	
November 13.	ROBERT RICHARDSONE, of Pencaitland,	. . .	69
	25. JOHN MAXWELL, of Pollock	. . .	
	25. DAVID CUNNYNGHAM, of Robertlandis	. . .	71
1631.			
March 5.	Sir HENRY WARDLAW, of Pittrevie, knight	. . .	71
June 2.	JAMES SINCLARE, of Caniesbie, son lawfull of Sir William Sinclare of Catboll, knight	. . .	72
	18. JOHN GORDOUN, of Kanbo	. . .	73
September 3.	LACHLAN McLEANE, of Morvaren	. . .	74
1633.			
December 22.	Sir JAMES BALFOUR, (of Denmilne), knight, Lyon King at Armes	. . .	88
	23. DAVID CUNNYNGHAME, of Auchinhervie	. . .	77
1634.			
June 7.	PHILIBERT VERNATE, of Carletoun (in Yorkshire) knight	. . .	78
	7. Captain HENRY BINGHAME, of Castlewar (in county Mayo in Ireland)	. . .	80
	7. Colonel HECTOR MONRO, of Foullis	. . .	80

# PREFACE.

123

June 7.	ALEXANDER FOULLES, fear of Colingtoun . . . . .	81
1635.		
January 6.	JAMES HAMMILTOUN, of Broomehill . . . . .	81
[June 8.]	Sir JOHN GASCOIGNE, of Barnbow, in regionem Orcaden—(the date left blank) . . . . .	82
	18. WALTER NORTOUN, of Chestone, in the county of Suffolk . . . . .	83
	29. ARTHUR PILKINGTON, of Stainlie, in the county of York . . . . .	83
September 26.	EDWARD WIDDRINGTON, of Cairntington, Northumberland . . . . .	84
December 10.	JAMES HAY, of Smithfield . . . . .	84
	19. MARIA BOLLES, of Osburtone, in the county of Nottingham, widow, and her heirs-male and assignees . . . . .	84
	19. JOHN RANEY, of Rotham alias Rutam, in the county of Kent . . . . .	85
1636.		
February 17.	JOHN FORTESCUE, of Salden, in the county of Buckingham . . . . .	86
	20. THOMAS THOMSONE, of Dudingstoun . . . . .	86
June 17.	JOHNE BROWNE, of Neale (Mayo) . . . . .	86
	18. EDWARD MOIR, of Longfuir, in the county of Nottingham . . . . .	86
	18. ALEXANDER ABERCROMBY, of Birkenbog . . . . .	87
	18. JOHN SINCLARE, of Stevinstoun . . . . .	87
	18. JOHN CURZON, of Kedlestone, in the county of Derby . . . . .	87
September 13.	JOHN RANY, of Rotham, &c. (see 1635, December 19) . . . . .	88
November 21.	GEDIAN BAILZIE, of Lochend . . . . .	89
1637.		
January 16.	Master THOMAS NICOLSON, of Carnock . . . . .	89
March 13.	Master GEORGE PRESTON, fear of Valafeild . . . . .	89
July 31.	ANDREW KER, of Greinheid . . . . .	91
1638.		
March 2.	HENRY SLINGSBIE, of Skriven, in the county of York . . . . .	91
	24. THOMAS PEIR, of Stanypittis, in the county of Kent . . . . .	91
December 17.	EDWARD LONGUELL, of Wolwerdin, in the county of Buckingham . . . . . (Two blank Precepts, names and dates not supplied) . . . . .	92 92

Several of the above are included in the Register of the Great Seal, and also, at great length, in the "Register of Signatouris in the Office of Comptrollerie;" but others, probably from not having paid the fees, seem not to have been registered.

---

In drawing these Collections to a close, a few words may be added in reference to the extraordinary claims to Territorial possessions and Superiority supposed to be attached to the Earldom of Stirling. Unless for the assumption that the royal grants to Sir William Alexander of vast territories were inalienable, and remained in full force, to be resumed with the title, we might never have heard of claimants whose pretensions were utterly baseless. That the direct male succession to the Earldom became extinct in 1739 is admitted on all hands. Supposing, however, there had been a continuous and undisputed succession, before any such Superiority could be reclaimed in virtue of grants made by Kings James and Charles, the following questions would remain to be solved:—

First, Whether Sir William Alexander fulfilled all or any of the obligations contained in his grants, by undertaking the Conversion of the infidel natives to the Christian faith,<sup>1</sup> or by the actual Plantation of colonies in New Scotland?

Secondly, Whether Sir William, about the time when raised to the Peerage, had not actually divested himself of whatever right or title he possessed to the Superiority and lordship of his lands in Nova Scotia in terms of his arrangements with Claude St Estienne, Seigneur de la Tour? And

<sup>1</sup> In all the early Signatures, the similar words are repeated: "for Propagation of Christiane religion within the bounds, countrey, and dominion of New Scotland, lyand within the bounds of America." But not a single instance is on record of either the King, Sir William Alexander, or his adventurers having, I will not say sent, but even of having proposed to send, a minister or missionary for such a purpose. Had the King set his sons Charles II. and James II. an example of "banishing to the Plantations" some of the obstreperous clergy, who opposed his innovations in the church, he might have unintentionally rendered the cause of religion a good service. It is to the undying credit of the Protector, that Cromwell, in 1649, ordered a general collection to be made in all the parishes of England and Wales for erecting a Corporation for the propagation of the Gospel in New England.

Thirdly, Whether Charles the First could be said to have exceeded his royal prerogative when, by the treaty of St Germain-en-laye, in March 1632, the whole British possessions in Nova Scotia and Canada, and places adjacent, were ceded and transferred to France, with no reservation in favour of Viscount Stirling and the other proprietors of lands in these territories, which had previously been conveyed to them by charters under the Great Seal of Scotland?

Charles the First indeed admitted that Lord Stirling was entitled to compensation for money that his son Lord Alexander and friends had spent in erecting a fort at Port Royal, before the settlers in that colony were, by the King's peremptory command, in a summary way, dispersed. The sum allotted was £10,000 sterling, but this, as we learn from the petitions of Henry Earl of Stirling,<sup>1</sup> and of Colonel John Blount, the husband of the Countess of Stirling, on behalf of himself and her two daughters,<sup>2</sup> remained unpaid at the Restoration in 1660.

No doubt the King, in his letter to the Privy Council of Scotland, in June 1632, says that this sum of £10,000 of indemnification was not to interfere with the Earl of Stirling's territory in Nova Scotia, &c. But these were mere soothing words of course, signifying nothing, or only a permission to retain an empty titular distinction; for what rights could his Lordship or any other British subject not resident possess in a country which was ceded unconditionally to France? Again, the King, in his letter to the Privy Council, September 27, 1633, says, "hearing that there was a rumour given out by some that *We had totallie left our purpose to plant in that countrie, as having surrendered our right thereof*, leist anie further mistaking sould arise heirupon, We thought good heerby to cleare our intention therein: Which is, That our said Erle, with all such as sall adventure with him, *sall prosecute the said worke*, and be encouraged by all lawfull helpes *as weill by compleitting of the intended number of Knight Baronets* as otherwise." Such vague language conveys no other meaning than that *prosecuting the said worke* extended no further than endeavours to increase the proposed number of Baronets, the King engaging still to maintain the dignity and privileges of the Order, but giving no assurance either for securing the

<sup>1</sup> Supra, p. 119.

<sup>2</sup> Ib. p. 117.

lands conveyed to them by their patents, or for any active measures to be pursued towards the plantation of a country which no longer was subject to the British Crown.

The individual claims of the earlier Knight Baronets of Nova Scotia should also form no unimportant element in regard to the Territorial rights claimed for the Earldom of Stirling, although this in a great measure has been ignored or overlooked. In 1625, when this Order was instituted, Nova Scotia was nominally divided into so many baronies, with a certain allotment of land attached to each; and Sir William Alexander was empowered to dispose of these, along with the hereditary dignity, to persons of rank or distinction, upon payment of a stipulated sum. The number of persons was not to exceed One hundred and fifty;<sup>1</sup> and the sum payable by each was three thousand merks<sup>2</sup> (the equivalent to £166, 13s. 4d. sterling). Of this sum one-third was to go into Alexander's pocket, he engaging that the remaining two-thirds should be expended in setting forth the Plantation. Had it been exacted, as in the case of the Ulster settlers, that each Baronet, with a stated number of colonists, should take personal possession, it is certain the number of applicants would have been scanty indeed. To obviate this difficulty it was held, by a fiction of the law, that the usual legal form of taking possession by an instrument of seisin, or infeftment of lands on the other side of the Atlantic, should take place within the Castle of Edinburgh. Yet it appears that during the first four years the applicants who received patents were only about sixty, while during the next ten years about fifty more were induced to avail themselves of this hereditary title;<sup>3</sup> and thus the object remained unaccomplished during the reign of Charles, although its original sphere was so enlarged as to render persons not connected with Scotland admissible to this dignity.

<sup>1</sup> *Supra*, p. 65, May 5, 1631.

<sup>2</sup> *Supra*, p. 21.

<sup>3</sup> It is no easy matter to prepare a very accurate or satisfactory List of these Knight Baronets. The earliest List I have met with is contained in "A Catalogue of the Dukes, Marquesses, Earles, Viscounts, Bishops, Barons of the Kingdomes of England, Scotland, and Ireland, &c." Collected by T. W. London, 1640, 12mo. At p. 71 we find "The names of Knight Baronets of Scotland," amounting in all to ninety-five, including Sir Henry Gib (of St Martin's), but the dates of the patents are not given. Of this Catalogue by T. W. or Thomas Walkely, Lowndes quotes several editions.

Such were the immediate results of this scheme, notwithstanding the interest taken by the King in his repeated and urgent appeals to have the number of Baronets completed, as if his own personal advantage was concerned, rather than that of merely serving a favourite in promoting a scheme which had promised to establish his personal dignity and interest.

The precept for a charter to each Knight Baronet was granted in the name of Sir William Alexander, who surrendered to the Crown the respective proportions of his said Lordship of New Scotland to be attached to the Baronetcy, with all the privileges of regality. It is thus clear that the Knight Baronets, according to the extent of their several Baronies, holding of the Crown, were placed on precisely the same footing with the lord superior, and consequently his individual rights, while these remained in force, must have become more and more contracted by each successive resignation.

In the later patents the locality of the lands attached to each new grant of the dignity of Knight Baronet ceased to be defined. This may be reckoned a matter of the smallest importance. Should the representative of any one of the first Nova Scotia Baronets, on the faith of his original patent, conveying to him and his heirs in perpetuity a certain extent of land, to form a distinct Barony in that country, with its boundaries described with seeming minuteness and accuracy, set out on a voyage of discovery, to ascertain its locality, and claim his right to possession, we may presume he would soon find that his prospects of success were by no means very encouraging.

DAVID LAING.

*April 30, 1867.*





CHARTERS UNDER THE GREAT SEAL

GRANTED TO

SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER OF MENSTRIE

AND

SIR ROBERT GORDON OF LOCHINVAR,  
OF LANDS IN NOVA SCOTIA.

M.DC.XXI.—M.DC.XXVIII.



## CHARTERS.

---

### CARTA DOMINI WILLELMI ALEXANDRI EQUITIS DOMINII ET BARONLÆ NOVÆ SCOTLÆ IN AMERICA. 10 SEPTEMBRIS 1621.

JACOBUS Dei gratia Magnae Britanniae Franciae et Hiberniae Rex &c. Fideique Defensor Omnibus probis hominibus totius terrae suae clericis et laicis salutem. SCIATIS nos semper ad quamlibet quae ad decus et emolumentum regni nostri Scotiae spectaret occasionem amplectendam fuisse intentos nullamque aut faciliorem aut magis innoxiam acquisitionem censere quam quae in exteris et incultis regnis ubi vitae et victui suppetunt commoda novis deducendis coloniis facta sit; praesertim si vel ipsa regna cultoribus prius vacua vel ab infidelibus quos ad Christianam converti fidem ad Dei gloriam interest plurimum insessa fuerunt; sed cum et alia nonnulla regna et haec non ita pridem nostra Anglia laudabiliter sua nomina novis terris acquisitis et a se subactis indiderunt quam numerosa et frequens Divino beneficio haec gens hac tempestate sit nobiscum reputantes quamque honesto aliquo et utili cultu eam studiose exerceri ne in deteriora ex ignavia et otio prolabatur expediat plerosque in novam deducendos regionem quam coloniis compleant operae pretium duximus qui et animi promptitudine et alacritate corporumque robore et viribus quibuscunque difficultatibus si qui alii mortalium uspiam se audeant opponere hunc conatum huic regno maxime idoneum inde arbitramur quod virorum tantummodo et mulierum jumentorum et frumenti non etiam pecuniae transvectionem postulat neque incommodam ex ipsius regni mercibus retributionem hoc tempore cum negotiatio adeo imminuta sit possit reponere hisce de causis sicuti et propter bonum fidei et gratum dilecti nostri consilarii Domini Willelmi Alexandri equitis servitium nobis praestitum et praestandum qui propriis impensis ex nostratibus primus externam hanc coloniam ducendam conatus sit diversasque terras infra-designatis limitibus circumscriptas incolendas expetiverit Nos igitur ex regali nostra ad

Christianam religionem propagandam et ad opulentiam prosperitatem pacemque naturalium nostrorum subditorum dicti regni nostri Scotiae aquirendam cura sicuti alii principes extranei in talibus casibus haecenus fecerunt cum avisamento et consensu praedilecti nostri consanguinei et consilarii Joannis Comitis de Mar Domini Erskin et Gareoch summi nostri thesaurarii computorum rotulatoris collectoris ac thesaurarii novarum nostrarum augmentationum hujus regni nostri Scotiae ac reliquorum dominorum nostrorum commissionariorum ejusdem regni nostri Deditimus concessimus et disposuimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae damus concedimus et disponimus praefato Domino Willelmo Alexander haeredibus suis vel assignatis quibuscunque haereditarie omnes et singulas terras continentis ac insulas situatas et jacentes in America intra caput seu promontorium communiter Cap de Sable appellatum jacens prope latitudinem quadraginta trium graduum aut eo circa ab equinoctiali linea versus septentrionem a quo promontorio versus littus maris tendentes ad occidentem ad stationem Sanctae Mariae navium vulgo *Sanctmariis Bay* et deinceps versus septentrionem per directam lineam introitum sive ostium magnae illius stationis navium trajicientes quae excurrit in terrae orientalem plagam inter regiones Suriquorum et Etecheminorum vulgo *Suriquois* et *Etechemines* ad fluvium vulgo nomine Sanctae Crucis appellatum et ad scaturiginem remotissimam sive fontem ex occidentali parte ejusdem qui se primum praedicto fluvio immiscet unde per imaginariam directam lineam quae pergere per terram seu currere versus septentrionem concipietur ad proximam navium stationem fluvium vel scaturiginem in magno fluvio de Cannada sese exonerantem et ab eo pergendo versus orientem per maris oras littorales ejusdem fluvii de Canada ad fluvium stationem navium portum aut littus communiter nomine de Gathepe vel Gaspie notum et appellatum et deinceps versus euronotum ad insulas Bacalaos vel Cap Britton vocatas relinquendo easdem insulas a dextra et voraginem dicti magni fluvii de Canada sive magnae stationis navium et terras de Newfundland cum insulis ad easdem terras pertinentibus a sinistra et deinceps ad caput sive promontorium de Cap Britton praedictum jacens prope latitudinem quadraginta quinque graduum aut eo circa et a dicto promontorio de Cap Britton versus meridiem et occidentem ad praedictum Cap Sable ubi inceptit perambulatio includendo et comprehendendo intra dictas maris oras littorales ac earum circumferentias a mari ad mare omnes terras continentis cum fluminibus torrentibus sinibus littoribus insulis aut maribus jacentibus prope aut infra sex leucas ad aliquam earundem partem ex occidentali boreali vel orientali partibus orarum littoralium et praecinctuum earundem et ab euronoto (ubi jacet Cap Britton) et ex australi parte ejusdem (ubi est Cap de Sable) omnia maria ac insulas versus meridiem intra quadraginta leucas dictarum orarum littoralium earundem magnam insulam vulgariter appellatam Yle de Sable vel Sablon includendo jacentem versus Carban

vulgo *south-south-eist* circa triginta leucas a dicto Cap Britton in mari et existentem in latitudine quadraginta quatuor graduum aut eo circa Quaequidem terrae prae-dictae omni tempore affuturo nomine NOVAE SCOTIAE IN AMERICA gaudebunt quas etiam praefatus Dominus Willelmus in partes et portiones sicut ei visum fuerit dividet iisdemque nomina pro beneplacito imponet Unacum omnibus fodinis tam regali-bus auri et argenti quam aliis fodinis ferri plumbi cupri stanni aeris ac aliis mine-ralibus quibuscunque cum potestate effodiendi et de terra effodere causandi puri-ficandi et repurgandi easdem et convertendi ac utendi suo proprio usui aut aliis usibus quibuscunque sicuti dicto Domino Willelmo Alexander haeredibus suis vel assignatis aut iis quos suo loco in dictis terris stabilire ipsum contigerit visum fuerit (reservando solummodo nobis et successoribus nostris decimam partem metalli vulgo *ore* auri et argenti quod ex terra in posterum effodietur aut lucrabitur) Relinquendo dicto Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis quodeunque ex aliis metallis cupri chalibis ferri stanni plumbi aut aliorum mineralium nos vel successores nostri quovismodo exigere possumus ut eo facilius magnos sumptus in extrahendis praefatis metallis tollere possit Unacum margaritis vulgo *pearle* ac lapidibus pretiosis quibuscunque aliis lapideinis silvis virgultis mossis marresis lacubus aquis pesca-tionibus tam in aqua salsa quam recenti tam regalium piscium quam aliorum vena-tione aucupatione commoditatibus et haereditamentis quibuscunque Unacum ple-naria potestate privilegio et jurisdictione liberae regalitatis capellae et cancellariae imperpetuum cumque donatione et patronatus jure ecclesiarum capellaniarum et beneficiorum cum tenentibus tenandriis et liberetenentium servitiis earundem una cum officiis justiciariae et admiralitatis respective infra omnes bondas respective supra mentionatas Una etiam cum potestate civitates liberos burgos liberos portus villas et burgos baroniae erigendi ac fora et nundinas infra bondas dictarum terrarum constituendi curias justiciariae et admiralitatis infra limites dictarum terrarum flu-viorum portuum et marium tenendi una etiam cum potestate imponendi levandi et recipiendi omnia tolonia custumas anchoragia aliasque dictorum burgorum fororum nundinarum ac liberorum portuum devorias et eisdem possidendi et gaudendi adeo libere in omnibus respectibus sicuti quivis baro major aut minor in hoc regno nostro Scotiae gavisus est aut gaudere poterit quovis tempore praeterito vel futuro cum omnibus aliis prerogativis privilegiis immunitatibus dignitatibus casualitatibus pro-ficiis et devoriis ad dietas terras maria et bondas earundem spectantibus et pertinen-tibus et quae nos ipsi dare vel concedere possumus adeo libera et ampla forma sicuti nos aut aliquis nostrorum nobilium progenitorum aliquas cartas patentes literas infeofamenta donationes aut diplomata concesserunt cuivis subdito nostro cujuscunque qualitatis aut gradus cuivis societati aut communitati tales colonias in quascunque par-tes extraneas deducendi aut terras extraneas investiganti in adeo libera et ampla forma

sicuti eadem in hac praesenti carta nostra insereretur Facimus etiam constituimus et ordinamus dictum Dominum Willelmum Alexander haeredes suos aut assignatos vel eorum deputatos nostros HÆREDITARIOS LOCUMTENENTES GENERALES ad representandum nostram personam regalem tam per mare quam per terram in regionibus maris oris ac finibus praedictis in petendo dietas terras quamdiu illie manserit ac redeundo ab eisdem ad gubernandum regendum et puniendum omnes nostros subditos quos ad dietas terras ire aut easdem inhabitare contigerit aut qui negotiationem cum eisdem suscipient vel in eisdem locis remanebunt ac eisdem ignoscendum et ad stabiliendum tales leges statuta constitutiones directiones instructiones formas gubernandi et magistratuum ceremonias infra dietas bondas sicut ipsi Domino Willelmo Alexander aut ejus praedictis ad gubernationem dietae regionis et ejusdem incolarum in omnibus causis tam criminalibus quam civilibus visum fuerit et easdem leges regimina formas et ceremonias alterandum et mutandum quoties sibi vel suis praedictis pro bono et commodo dietae regionis placuerit ita ut dietae leges tam legibus hujus regni nostri Scotiae quam fieri possunt sint concordēs Volumus etiam ut in casu rebellionis aut seditionis legibus utatur militaribus adversus delinquentes vel imperio ipsius sese subtrahentes adeo libere sicuti aliquis locumtenens cujusvis regni nostri vel domini virtute officii locumtenentis habent vel habere possunt excludendo omnes alios officarios hujus regni nostri Scotiae terrestres vel maritimos qui in posterum aliquid jurisclamei commoditatis authoritatis aut interesse in et ad dietas terras aut provinciam praedictam vel aliquam inibi jurisdictionem virtute alicujus praecedentis dispositionis aut diplomatis praetendere possunt Et ut viris honesto loco natis sese ad expeditionem istam subeundam et ad coloniae plantationem in dietis terris addatur animus nos pro nobis nostrisque haeredibus et successoribus cum avisamento et consensu praedicto virtute praesentis cartae nostrae damus et concedimus liberam et plenariam potestatem praefato Domino Willelmo Alexander suisque praedictis conferendi favores privilegia munia et honores in demerentes cum plenaria potestate eisdem aut eorum alicui quos cum ipso Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis pactiones vel contractus facere pro eisdem terris contigerit sub subscriptione sua vel suorum praedictorum et sigillo infra mentionato aliquam portionem vel portiones dictarum terrarum portuum navium stationum fluviorum aut praemissorum alicujus partis disponendi et extradonandi erigendi etiam omnium generum machinas artes facultates vel scientias aut easdem exercendi in toto vel in parte sicuti ei pro bono ipsorum visum fuerit Dandi etiam concedendi et attribuendi talia officia titulos jura et potestates constituendi et designandi tales capitaneos officarios balivos gubernatores clericos omnesque alios regalitatis baroniae et burgi officarios aliosque ministros pro administratione justitiae infra bondas dictarum terrarum aut in via dum terras istas petunt per mare et ab eisdem redeunt sicuti ei necessarium



videbitur secundum qualitates conditiones et personarum merita quos in aliqua coloniarum dictae provinciae aut aliqua ejusdem parte habitare contigerit aut qui ipsorum bona vel fortunas pro commodo et incremento ejusdem periculo committent et eosdem ab officio removendi alterandi et mutandi prout ei suisque praescriptis expediens videbitur Et cum hujusmodi conatus non sine magno labore et sumptibus fiunt magnamque pecuniae largitionem requirant adeo ut privati cujusvis fortunas excedant et multorum suppetiis indigeant ob quam causam praefatus Dominus Wilhelmus Alexander suiique praescripti cum diversis nostris subditis aliisque pro particularibus periclitationibus et susceptionibus ibidem qui forte cum eo suisque haeredibus assignatis vel deputatis pro terris piscationibus mercimoniis aut populi transportatione cum ipsorum pecoribus rebus et bonis versus dictam Novam Scotiam contractus inibunt volumus ut quicumque tales contractus cum dicto Domino Wilhelmo suisque praescriptis sub ipsorum subscriptionibus et sigillis expedient limitando assignando et affigendo diem et locum pro personarum bonorum et rerum ad navem deliberatione sub pena et forisfactura cujusdam monetæ summæ et eosdem contractus non perficient sed ipsum frustrabunt et in itinere designato ei nocebunt quod non solum dicto domino Wilhelmo suisque praedictis poterit esse praejudicio et nocumento verum etiam nostrae tam laudabili intentioni obstat et detrimentum inferet tunc licitum erit praefato Domino Wilhelmo suisque praedictis vel eorum deputatis et conservatoribus inframentionatis in eo casu sibi suisve praedictis quos ad hunc effectum substituet omnes tales summas monetæ bonæ et res forisfactas per talium contractuum violationem assumere Quod ut facilius fiat et legum prolixitas evitetur dedimus et concessimus tenoreque praesentis cartæ nostrae damus et concedimus plenariam licentiam libertatem et potestatem dicto Domino Wilhelmo suisque haeredibus et assignatis praedictis eligendi nominandi assignandi ac ordinandi libertatum et privilegiorum per praesentem nostram cartam sibi suisque praedictis concessorum conservatorem qui expeditæ executioni leges et statuta per ipsum suosque praedictos facta secundum potestatem eis suisque praedictis per dictam nostram cartam concessam demandabit volumusque et ordinamus potestatem dicti conservatoris in actionibus et causis ad personas versus dictam plantationem contrahentes spectantibus absolutam esse sine ulla appellatione aut procrastinatione quacunque quiquidem conservator possidebit et gaudebit omnia privilegia immunitates libertates et dignitates quascunque quæ quivis conservator Scotticorum privilegiorum apud extraneos vel in Gallia Flandria aut alibi hactenus possiderunt aut gavisī sunt quovis tempore praeterito Et licet omnes tales contractus inter dictum Dominum Wilhelmum suosque praedictos et praedictos periclitatores per periclitationem et transportationem populorum cum ipsorum bonis et rebus ad statutum diem perficiuntur et ipsi cum suis omnibus pecoribus et bonis ad littus

illius provinciae animo coloniam ducendi et remanendi appellent et nihilominus postea vel omnino provinciam Novae Scotiae et ejusdem confinia sine licentia dicti Domini Willelmi ejusque praedictorum vel eorum deputatorum vel societatem et coloniam praedictam ubi primum combinati et conjuncti fuerant derelinquent et ad agrestes indigenas in locis remotis et desertis ad habitandum sese conferent quod tunc amittent et forisfacient omnes terras prius iis concessas omnia etiam bona infra omnes praedictas bondas et licitum erit praedicto Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis eadem fisco applicare et easdem terras recognoscere eademque omnia ad ipsos vel eorum aliquem quovismodo spectantia possidere et suo peculiari usui suorumque praedictorum convertere Et ut omnes dilecti nostri subditi tam regnorum nostrorum et dominiorum quam alii extranei quos ad dictas terras aut aliquam earundem partem ad mercimonia contrahenda navigare contigerit melius sciant et obedientes sint potestati et auctoritati per nos in praedictum fidelem nostrum consiliarium Dominum Willelmum Alexander ejusque praedictos collatae in omnibus talibus commissionibus warrantis [et] contractibus quos quovis tempore futuro faciet concedet et constituet pro deceniori et validiori constitutione officiariorum pro gubernatione dictae coloniae concessione terrarum et executione justitiae dictos inhabitantes periclitantes deputatos factores vel assignatos tangentibus in aliqua dictarum terrarum parte vel in navigatione ad easdem terras nos cum avisamento et consensu praedicto ordinamus quod dictus Dominus Willelmus Alexander suique praedicti unum commune sigillum habebunt ad officium locumtenentis justiciariae et admiralitatis spectans quod per dictum Dominum Willelmum Alexander suosque praedictos vel per deputatos suos omni tempore affuturo custodietur in cujus uno latere nostra insignia insculpentur cum his verbis in ejusdem circulo et margine SIGILLUM REGIS SCOTIAE ANGLIAE FRANCIAE ET HYBERNIAE et in altero latere imago nostra nostrorumque successorum cum his verbis (PRO NOVAE SCOTIAE LOCUMTENENTE) cujus justum exemplar in manibus ac custodia dicti conservatoris remanebit quo prout occasio requirit in officio suo utetur Et cum maxime necessarium sit ut omnes dilecti nostri subditi quotquot dictam provinciam Novae Scotiae vel ejus confinia incolent in timore Omnipotentis Dei et vero ejus cultu simul vivant omni conamine nitescentes Christianam religionem ibi stabilire pacem etiam et quietem cum nativis incolis et agrestibus aboriginibus earum terrarum colere (unde ipsi et eorum quilibet mercimonia ibi exercentes tuti cum oblectamento ea quae magno cum labore et periculo acquisiverunt quiete possidere possint) nos pro nobis nostrisque successoribus volumus nobisque visum est per praesentis cartae nostrae tenorem dare et concedere dicto Domino Willelmo Alexander suisque praedictis et eorum deputatis vel aliquibus aliis gubernatoribus officiariis et ministris quos ipsi constituent liberam et absolutam potestatem tractandi et pacem affinitatem amicitiam et mutua colloquia operam et communicationem cum

agrestibus illis aboriginibus et eorum principibus vel quibuscunque aliis regimen et potestatem in ipsos habentibus contrahendi observandi et alendi tales affinitates et colloquia quae ipsi vel sui praedicti cum iis contrahent modo foedera illa ex adversa parte per ipsos silvestres fideliter observentur quod nisi fiat arma contra ipsos sumendi quibus redigi possunt in ordinem sicuti dicto Willelmo suisque praedictis et deputatis pro honore obedientia et Dei servitio ac stabilimento defensione et conservatione autoritatis nostrae inter ipsos expediens videbitur Cum potestate etiam praedicto Domino Willelmo Alexander suisque praedictis per ipsos vel eorum deputatos substitutos vel assignatos pro ipsorum defensione [et] tutela omni tempore et omnibus justis occasionibus in posterum aggrediendi ex inopinato invadendi expellendi et armis repellendi tam per mare quam per terram omnibus modis omnes et singulos qui sine speciali licentia dicti Domini Willelmi suorumque praedictorum terras inhabitare aut mercaturam facere in dicta Novae Scotiae provincia aut quavis ejusdem parte conabuntur et similiter omnes alios quoscunque qui aliquid damni detrimenti destructionis laesionis vel invasionis contra provinciam illam aut ejusdem incolas inferre praesumunt quod ut facilius fiat licitum erit dicto Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis eorum deputatis factoribus et assignatis contributiones a periclitantibus et incolis ejusdem levare in unum cogere per proclamationes vel quovis alio ordine talibus temporibus sicuti dicto Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis expediens videbitur omnes nostros subditos infra dictos limites dictae provinciae Novae Scotiae inhabitantes et mercimonia ibidem exercentes convocare pro meliori exercituum necessariorum supplemento et populi et plantationis dictarum terrarum augmentatione et incremento Cum plenaria potestate privilegio et libertate dicto Domino Willelmo Alexander suisque praedictis per ipsos vel eorum substitutos per quaevis maria sub nostris insigniis et vexillis navigandi cum tot navibus tanti oneris et tam bene munitione viris et victualibus instructis sicuti possunt parare quovis tempore et quoties iis videbitur expediens ac omnes cujuscunque qualitatibus et gradus personas subditi nostri<sup>1</sup> existentes aut qui imperio nostro sese subdere ad iter illud suscipiendum voluerint cum ipsorum jumentis equis bobus ovibus bonis et rebus omnibus munitionibus machinis majoribus armis et instrumentis militaribus quotquot voluerint aliisque commoditatibus et rebus necessariis pro usu ejusdem coloniae mutuo commercio cum nativis inhabitantibus earum provinciarum aut aliis qui cum ipsis plantatoribus mercimonia contrahent transportandi et omnes commoditates et mercimonia quae iis videbuntur necessaria in regnum nostrum Scotiae sine alicujus taxationis custumae aut impositionis pro eisdem solutione nobis vel nostris custumariis aut eorum deputatis inde portandi eosdem ab eorum officiis in hac parte pro spatio septem annorum diem datae

<sup>1</sup> Sic in Reg.—should be *subditos nostros*.

praesentium immediate sequentium inhibendo quamquidem solam commoditatem per spatium tredecim annorum in posterum libere concessimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae concedimus et disponimus dicto Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis secundum proportionem quinque pro centum postea mentionatam Et post tredecim illos annos finitos licitum erit nobis nostrisque successoribus ex omnibus bonis et mercimoniis quae ex hoc regno nostro Scotiae ad eandem provinciam vel ex ea provincia ad dictum regnum nostrum Scotiae exportabuntur vel importabuntur in quibusvis hujus regni nostri portibus per dictum Willelmum suosque praedictos tantum quinque libras pro centum secundum antiquam negotiandi morem sine ulla alia impositione taxatione custuma vel devoria ab ipsis imperpetuum levare et exigere quaquidem summa quinque librarum pro centum sic soluta per dictum Dominum Willelmum suosque praedictos aliisque nostris officariis ad hunc effectum constitutis exinde licitum erit dicto Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis eadem bona de nostro hoc regno Scotiae in quasvis alias partes vel regiones extraneas sine alicujus alterius custumae taxationis vel devoriae solutione nobis vel nostris haeredibus aut successoribus aut aliquibus aliis transportare et avehere proviso tamen quod dicta bona infra spatium tredecim mensium post ipsarum in quovis hujus regni nostri portu apulsionem navi rursus imponantur Dando et concedendo absolutam et plenariam potestatem dicto Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis ab omnibus nostris subditis qui colonias ducere mercimonia exercere aut ad easdem terras Novae Scotiae et ab eisdem navigare voluerint praeter dictam summam nobis debitam pro bonis et mercimoniis quinque libras de centum vel ratione exportationis ex hoc regno nostro Scotiae ad provinciam Novae Scotiae vel importationis a dicta provincia ad regnum hoc nostrum Scotiae praedictum in ipsius ejusque praedictorum proprios usus sumendi levandi et recipiendi et similiter de omnibus bonis et mercimoniis quae per nostros subditos coloniarum ductores negotiatores et navigatores de dicta provincia Novae Scotiae ad quaevis nostra dominia aut alia quaevis loca exportabuntur vel a nostris regnis et aliis locis ad dictam Novam Scotiam importabuntur ultra et supra dictam summam nobis destinatam quinque libras de centum Et de bonis et mercimoniis omnium extraneorum aliorumque sub nostra obedientia [minime] existentium quae vel de provincia Novae Scotiae exportabuntur vel ad eandem importabuntur ultra et supra dictam summam nobis destinatam decem libras de centum dicti Domini Willelmi suorumque praedictorum propriis usibus per tales ministros officarios vel substitutos eorumve deputatos aut factores quos ipsi ad hunc effectum constituent et designabunt levandi sumendi ac recipiendi Et pro meliori dicti Domini Willelmi suorumque praedictorum aliorumque omnium dictorum nostrorum subditorum qui dictam Novam Scotiam inhabitare vel ibidem mercimonia exercere voluerint securitate et commoditate et generaliter omnium aliorum qui nostrae auctoritati et

potestati sese subdere non gravabuntur nobis visum est volumusque quod licitum erit dicto Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis unum aut plura munimina propugnacula castella loca fortia specula armamentaria *lie blokhouss* aliaque aedificia cum portubus et navium stationibus aedificare vel aedificari causare unacum navibus bellicis easdemque pro defensione dictorum locorum applicare sicut dicto Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis pro dicto conamine perficiendo necessarium videbitur proque ipsorum defensione militum catervas ibidem stabilire praeter praedicta supramentionata et generaliter omnia facere quae pro conquista augmentatione populi inhabitatione preservatione et gubernatione dictae Novae Scotiae ejusdemque orarum et territorii infra omnes hujusmodi limites pertinentias et dependentias sub nostro nomine et autoritate quodcumque nos si personaliter essemus praesentes facere potuimus licet casus specialem et strictum magis ordinem quam per praesentes praescribitur requirat cui mandato volumus et ordinamus strictissimeque praecipimus omnibus nostris justiciariis officiariis et subditis ad loca illa sese conferentibus ut sese applicent dictoque Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis in omnibus et singulis supra mentionatis earum substantiis circumstantiis et dependentiis intendant et obediant eisque in earum executione in omnibus adeo sint obedientes ut nobis cujus personam representat esse deberent sub pena disobedientiae et rebellionis Et quia fieri potest quod quidam ad dicta loca transportandi refractarii sint et ad eadem loca ire recusabunt aut dicto Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis resistent nobis igitur placet quod omnes vicecomites senescalli regalitatum ballivi pacis justiciarii praepositi et urbium ballivi eorumque officarii et justitiae ministri quicumque dictum Dominum Willelmum suosque deputatos aliosque praedictos in omnibus et singulis legitimis rebus et factis quas facient aut intendent ad effectum praedictum similiter et eodem modo sicuti nostrum speciale warrantum ad hunc effectum haberent assistent fortisficient et eisdem suppetias ferant Declaramus insuper per praesentis cartae nostrae tenorem omnibus christianis regibus principibus et statibus quod si aliquis vel aliqui qui in posterum de dictis coloniis vel de earum aliqua sit in dicta provincia Novae Scotiae vel aliqui alii sub eorum licentia vel mandato quovis tempore futuro piraticam exercentes per mare vel terram bona alicujus abstulerint vel aliquod injustum vel indebitum hostiliter contra aliquos nostros nostrorumve haeredum et successorum aut aliorum regum principum gubernatorum aut statuum in foedere nobiscum existentium subditos quod tali injuria sic oblata aut justa querela desuper mota per aliquem regem principem gubernatorem statum vel eorum subditos praedictos nos nostri haeredes et successores publicas proclamationes fieri curabimus in aliqua parte dicti regni nostri Scotiae ad hunc effectum magis commoda ut dictus pirata vel piratae qui tales rapinas committent stato tempore per praefatas proclamationes limitando plenarie restituent quaecumque bona sic ablata et pro dictis injuriis omni-



modo satisfaciant ita ut dicti principes alique sic conquaerentes satisfactos se esse reputent et quod si talia facinora committent bona ablata non restituent aut restitui faciant infra limitatum tempus quod tunc in posterum sub nostra protectione et tutela minime erunt et quod licitum erit omnibus principibus aliisque praedictis delinquentes eos hostiliter prosequi et invadere Et licet neminem nobilem aut generosum de patria hac sine licentia nostra decedere statutum sit nihilominus volumus quod praesens hoc diploma sufficiens erit licentia et warrantum omnibus qui se huc itineri committent qui laesa majestatis non sunt rei vel aliquo alio speciali mandato inhibiti atque etiam per praesentis cartae nostrae tenorem declaramus volumusque quod nemo patria hac decedere permittatur versus dictam Novam Scotiam nullo tempore nisi ii qui juramentum suprematatis nostrae primum susceperint ad quem effectum nos per praesentes dicto Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis vel eorum conservatori vel deputatis idem hoc juramentum omnibus personis versus illas terras in ea colonia sese conferentibus requirere et exhibere plenariam potestatem et auctoritatem damus et concedimus Praeterea nos cum avisamento et consensu praedicto pro nobis et successoribus nostris declaramus decernimus et ordinamus quod omnes nostri subditi qui ad dictam Novam Scotiam proficiscuntur aut eam incolent eorumque omnes liberi et posteritas qui [quos] ibi nasci contigerit alique omnes ibidem periclitantes habebunt et possidebunt omnes libertates immunitates et privilegia liberorum et naturalium subditorum regni nostri Scotiae aut aliorum nostrorum dominiorum sicuti ibidem nati fuissent Insuper nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris damus et concedimus dicto Domino Willelmo Alexander suisque praedictis liberam potestatem stabiliendi et eudere causandi monetam pro commercio liberi in habitantibus dictae provinciae cujusvis metalli quo modo et qua forma voluerint et eisdem praescribent Atque etiam si quae quaestiones aut dubia super interpretatione aut constructione alicujus clausulae in hac presenti carta nostra contentae occurrerent ea omnia sumuntur et interpretabuntur in amplissima forma et in favorem dicti Domini Willelmi suorumque praedictorum Praeterea nos ex nostra certa scientia proprio motu auctoritate regali et potestate regia fecimus univimus annexavimus creximus creavimus erigimus creamus et incorporamus totam et integram praedictam provinciam et terras Novae Scotiae cum omnibus earundem limitibus et maribus<sup>1</sup> ac mineralibus auri et argenti plumbi cupri chalibis stanni acris ferri aliisque quibuscunque fodinis margaritis lapidibus praeiosis lapideis silvis virgultis mossis marresis lacubus aquis piscationibus tam in aquis dulcibus quam salis tam regalium piscium quam aliorum civitatibus liberis portubus liberis burgis urbibus baroniae burgis maris portubus anchoragiis machinis molendinis officiis et jurisdictionibus omnibusque aliis gene-

<sup>1</sup> In Reg. Mag. Sigilli maris.

raliter et particulariter supra mentionatis in unum integrum et liberum dominium et baroniam per praedictum nomen Novae Scotiae omni tempore futuro appellandum Volumusque et concedimus ac pro nobis et successoribus nostris decernimus et ordinamus quod unica sasina nunc per dictum Dominum Willelmum suosque praedictos omni tempore affuturo super aliquam partem fundi dictarum terrarum et provinciae praescriptae stabit et sufficiens erit sasina pro tota regione cum omnibus partibus pendiculis privilegiis casualitatibus libertatibus et immunitatibus ejusdem supramentionatis absque aliqua alia speciali et particulari sasina per ipsum suosve praedictos apud aliquam aliam partem vel ejusdem locum capienda penes quam sasina omniaque quae inde secuta sunt aut sequi possunt nos cum avisamento et consensu praescripto pro nobis et successoribus nostris dispensavimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae modo subius mentionato dispensamus imperpetuum TENENDAM ET HABENDAM totam et integram dictam regionem et dominium Novae Scotiae cum omnibus ejusdem limitibus infra praedicta maria mineralibus auri et argenti cupri chalibis stanni ferri aeris aliisque quibuscunque fodinis margaritis lapidibus praeciosis lapicidinis silvis virgultis mossis marresis lacubus aquis piscationibus tam in aquis dulcibus quam salsis tam regalium piscium quam aliorum civitatibus liberis burgis liberis portubus urbibus baroniae burgis maris portubus anchoragiis machinis molendinis officiis et jurisdictionibus omnibusque aliis generaliter et particulariter supra mentionatis cumque omnibus aliis privilegiis libertatibus immunitatibus casualitatibus aliisque supra expressis praefato Domino Willelmo Alexander haeredibus suis et assignatis de nobis nostrisque successoribus in feodo haereditate libero dominio libera baronia et regalitate imperpetuum modo supramentionato per omnes rectas metas et limites suas prout jacent in longitudine et latitudine in domibus aedificiis aedificatis et aedificandis boscis planis moris marresis viis semitis aquis stagnis rivolis pratis pascuis et pasturis molendinis multuris et eorum sequelis aucupationibus venationibus piscationibus petariis turbariis carbonibus carbonariis cuniculis cuniculariis columbis columbariis fabrilibus brasinis brueriis et genistis silvis nemoribus et virgultis lignis lapicidis lapide et calce cum curiis et curiarum exitibus herezeldis bludewetis et mulierum marchetis cum furca fossa sok sak thole thame infangtheiff outfangtheiff vert wrak wair veth vennysoun pitt et gallous ac cum omnibus aliis et singulis libertatibus commoditatibus proficuis asiamentis ac justis suis pertinentiis quibuscunque tam non nominatis quam nominatis tam subius terra quam supra terram procul et prope ad praedictam regionem spectantibus seu juste spectare valentibus quomodolibet in futurum libere quiete plenarie integre honorifice bene et in pace absque ulla revocatione contradictione impedimento aut obstaculo aliquali Solvendo inde annuatim dictus Dominus Willelmus Alexander suique praedicti nobis nostrisque haeredibus et successoribus unum



denarium monetae Scotiae super fundum dictarum terrarum et provinciae Novae Scotiae ad festum Nativitatis Christi nomine albae firmæ si petatur tantum Et quia tentione dictarum terrarum et provinciae Novae Scotiae et alba firma praedicta deficiente tempestivo et legitimo introitu ejusvis haeredis vel haeredum dicti Domini Willelmi sibi succedentium quod difficulter per ipsos praestari potest ob longinquam distantiam ab hoc regno nostro eadem terrae et provincia ratione non-introitus in manibus nostris nostrorumve successorum devenient usque ad legitimum legitimi haeredis introitum et nos nolentes dictas terras et regionem quovis tempore in non-introitu cadere neque dictum Dominum Willelmum suosque praedictos beneficiis et proficiis ejusdem eatenus frustrari idcirco nos cum avisa-mento praedicto cum dicto non-introitu<sup>1</sup> quandocunque contigerit dispensavimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae pro nobis et successoribus nostris dispensamus ac etiam renunciavimus et exoneravimus tenoreque ejusdem cartae nostrae cum consensu praedicto renunciavimus et exoneramus dictum Dominum Willelmum ejusque praescriptos praefatum non-introitum dictae provinciae et regionis quando-cunque in manibus nostris deveniet aut ratione non-introitus cadet cum omnibus quoque desuper sequi possunt proviso tamen quod dictus Dominus Willelmus sui-que haeredes et assignati infra spatium septem annorum post decessum et obitum suorum praedecessorum aut introitum ad possessionem dictarum terrarum aliorum-que praedictorum per ipsos vel eorum legitimos procuratores ad hunc effectum potes-tatem habentes nobis nostrisque successoribus homagium faciant et dictas terras domi-nium et baroniam aliaque praedicta adeant et per nos recipiantur secundum leges et statuta dicti regni nostri Scotiae Denique nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris volumus decernimus et ordinamus praesentem hanc nostram cartam et infeofamen-tum supra scriptam praedictarum terrarum domini et regionis Novae Scotiae privi-legia et libertates ejusdem in proximo nostro parlamento dicti regni nostri Scotiae cum contigerit ratificari approbari et confirmari ut vim et efficaciam decreti inibi habeat penes quod nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris declaramus hanc nostram cartam sufficiens fore warrantum et in verbo principis eandem ibi ratificari et appro-bari promittimus atque etiam alterare renovare et eandem in amplissima forma augere et extendere quoties dicto Domino Willelmo ejusque praedictis necessarium et expediens videbitur Insuper nobis visum est ac mandamus et praecipimus dilectis nostris

vicecomitibus nostris in hac parte specialiter constitutis quatenus post hujus cartae nostrae nostro sub magno sigillo aspectum statum et sasinaum actualem et realem praefato Domino Willelmo suisque praedictis eorumve actornato vel actornatis terra-rum domini baroniae aliorumque praedictorum cum omnibus libertatibus privilegiis

<sup>1</sup> In Reg. Mag. Sigilli introitu.

immunitatibus aliisque supra expressis dare et concedere quam sasinam nos per præsantis cartae nostrae tenorem adeo legitimam et ordinariam esse declaramus ac si praeceptum sub testimonio nostri Magni Sigilli in amplissima forma cum omnibus clausulis requisitis ad hunc effectum praedictum haberet penes quod nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris imperpetuum dispensamus In cujus rei testimonium huic praesenti cartae nostrae magnum sigillum nostrum apponi praecepimus testibus praedilectis nostris consanguineis et consiliariis Jacobo Marchione de Hammiltoun comite Arranie et Cambridge domino Aven et Innerdail<sup>1</sup> Georgio Mariscalli comite domino Keyth &c. regni nostri mariscallo Alexandro comite de Dumfermeling domino Fyvie et Urquhart &c. nostro cancellario Thoma comite de Melros domino Binning et Byres nostro secretario dilectis nostris familiaribus consiliariis dominis Ricardo Cockburne juniore de Clerkingtoun nostri secreti sigilli custode Georgio Hay de Kinfawnis nostrorum rotulorum registri ac consilii clerico Joanne Cockburne de Ormestoun nostrae justiciariae clerico et Joanne Scot de Scotstarvett nostrae cancellariae directore militibus Apud castellum nostrum de Windsore decimo die mensis Septembris anno Domini millesimo sexcentesimo vigesimo primo regnorum-que nostrorum annis quinquagesimo quinto et decimo nono.

Per signaturam manu S. D. N. Regis suprascriptam ac manibus Cancellarii Thesaurarii Principalis Secretarii ac reliquorum Dominorum nostrorum Commissionariorum ac Secreti Consilii ejusdem Regni Scotiae subscriptam.

Writtin to the Great Seall,

29. Septemb. 1621.

J. SCOTT,

*gratis.*

Sigellat. Edinburgi,

29. Septemb. 1621,

JA. RAITHE,

*grs.*

<sup>1</sup> In the Regist. Mag. Sigilli the names of the witnesses are not given, but only a reference, as specified in an earlier Charter in the Record. The indorsement of the Charter, "Writtin, &c.," of course is not found in the Register itself.

CARTA DOMINI ROBERTI GORDOUN DE LOCHINVAR  
MILITIS BARONIE DE GALLOWAY IN NOVA SCOTIA  
IN AMERICA. 8 NOVEMBRIS 1621.

JACOBUS Dei gratia Magne Britannie Francie et Hibernie Rex Fideique Defensor OMNIBUS probis hominibus totius terre sue clericis et laicis salutem SCIATIS quia nos per nostrum infeofamentum et patentes literas nostro sub magno sigillo regni nostri Scotie de data dedimus concessimus et disposuimus nostro fideli et predilecto consiliario Domino Willielmo Alexander de Menstri militi heredibus suis et assignatis hereditarie totas et integras terras dominium et baroniam Nove Scotie in America jacentes et bondatas modo in dicto infeofamento mentionato Cujusquidem regionis plantationem cum omnino deserta vel ad minimum ab infidelibus inhabita sit dictus Dominus Willielmus Alexander aggressus est Que plantatio cum privati ejusvis conatus et vires desuperet dictus Dominus Willielmus Alexander plerosque subditorum nostrorum ad ibidem periclitandum commovit ac presertim dilectum nostrum Dominum Robertum Gordoun de Lochinvar militem qui rogatu prefati Domini Willielmi magnum opus subiturus magnosque sumptus et expensas in dicta periclitacione impensurus est in quorum sumptuum et expensarum compensationem per contractum et appunctuamentum inter memoratum Dominum Willielmum Alexander de Menstri militem ab una et prefatum Dominum Robertum Gordoun de Lochinvar militem pro seipso ac onus in se suscipientem pro Roberto Gordoun ejus filio legitimo secundo genito ab altera partibus initum et confectum de data apud Edinburgum et diebus Septembris et vigesimo secundo et anno Domini millesimo sexcentesimo vigesimo primo predictus Dominus Willielmus Alexander ad concurrendum cum prenominato Domino Roberto Gordoun seipsum astrinxit et obligavit pro acquisitione et procuracione in et ad favorem dicti Roberto Gordoun heredum suorum et assignatorum hujus presentis infeofamenti illius partis et portionis dicti domini et baronie Nove Scotie in America postea modo subsequenti nominate prout in dicto contractu et appunctuamento de data prescripta latius continetur Nos igitur cum avisamento et consensu prefidelis et predilecti nostri consanguinei et consiliarii Joannis Marrie comitis Domini Erskene et Gareoche &c. principalis nostri thesaurarii computorum rotularis collectoris

nostrarumque nostrarum augmentationum dicti regni nostri Scotie thesaurarii ac etiam cum avisamento et consensu reliquorum Dominorum nostri secreti consilii ejusdem regni nostri nostrorum commissionariorum dedimus concessimus et disposuimus tenoreque presentis carte nostre damus concedimus et disponimus prefato Roberto Gordoun heredibus suis et assignatis hereditarie totam et integram illam partem et portionem predicti domini et baronie Nove Scotie bondatam ut sequitur videlicet Incipiendo a capite seu promontorio nomine de Caip Brettoun noto et appellato et inde pergendo versus occidentem per oras maritimas insule seu insularum de Caip Brettoun ad stationem navium fretum fluvium aut scaturiginem de Campseaw et ad mediam partem ejusdem que dictas oras maritimas et insulas de Caip Brettoun a continenti regionis Suriquorum (que Nove Scotie provincia est) dividere supponitur ac inde pergendo per mediam partem dicte scaturiginis freti aut fluvii versus septentrionem ad stationem navium Chaleur mediculleum<sup>1</sup> ejusdem perpetuo tenendo et deinceps ad voraginem sive magnum fluvium de Canada relinquendo insulas Cape Brettoun predicto pertinentes a dextra et oras maritimas ex boreali parte continentis Nove Scotie ubi stationes navium de Chaleur et Gaspie jacent a sinistra et deinceps versus septentrionem et orientem ad regionem terre nove vulgo Newfoundland et ad caput Ray partem ejusdem et infra decem leucas ejusdem et ab hinc pergendo versus meridiem et occidentem ad caput et promontorium de Caip Brettoun predictum ubi perambulatione incepit et sex leucas a continenti ad mare ab ulla parte predictarum terrarum infra borealem et australem partes limitum earundem inclusum aut eisdem pertinens aut in dicto contractu contentum inter Badischaleur et portum seu introitum scaturiginis predictae de Campseaw aut juxta eandem ex boreali australi et orientali partibus esse reputatum Quequidem pars et portio dicti domini et baronie Nove Scotie omni tempore affuturo BARONIA DE GALLOWAY in Nova Scotia in America nuncupabitur et nominabitur Quam etiam prefatus Robertus suique predicti sicuti ipsum expedientissimum videbitur in partes dividend easdem nominibus suis distinguant unacum omnibus fodinis tam regalibus auri et argenti quam aliis fodinis ferri plumbi cupri stanni aeris ac aliis mineralibus quibuscunque cum potestate effodiendi aut de terra effodere et extrahere causandi purificandi et repurgandi eadem in suos proprios usus aliosve usus quoscunque convertendi et utendi sicuti dicto Roberto Gordoun heredibus suis et assignatis vel iis quos suo loco in dictis terris stabilire ipsum contigerit visum fuerit RESERVANDO solummodo nobis et successoribus nostris decimam partem metalli vulgo Oore auri et argenti quod e terra imposterum effodietur aut lucrabitur Relinquendo

<sup>1</sup> This word stands in the Reg. *meditulleū* or *mediculleū*—i. e. *meditulleum* or *mediculleum*; probably it should be *medialveum*. The boundary evidently runs northward through the gulf or strait of *Canso*, and then westward through Northumberland strait to the Bay of *Chaleurs*.

prenominato Roberto suisque predictis quocunque ex aliis metallis cupri chalybis ferri stanni plumbi aut aliorum mineralium nos vel successores nostri exigere possumus ut eo facilius magnos sumptus in extrahendis metallis tollere posset unacum omnibus margaritis vulgo *pearlis* ac lapidibus preciosis lapacidinis sylvis virgultis mossis marresii lacubus aquis piscationibus tam in aquis dulcibus quam in salsis tam regalium quam aliorum piscium venatione aucupatione commoditatibus et hereditamentis quibuscunque unacum plenarie potestate privilegio et jurisdictione libere regalitatis capelle et cancellarie imperpetuum cumque donatione et iuro patronatus ecclesiasticarum capellaniarium et beneficiorum cum tenentibus tenandis et liberetenentibus servitiis earundem unacum officiis admiralitatis et iusticiarie infra omnes bondas respective supra mentionatas una etiam cum potestate civitates liberos burgos liberos portus villas et burgos baronie erigendi ac fora et nundinas infra bondas terrarum et baronie predictarum constituendi curias iusticiarie et admiralitatis infra limites dictarum terrarum fluviorum portuum et narium tenendi una etiam cum potestate imponendi levandi et recipiendi omnia tolonia custumas anchoragia aliasque dietorum burgorum fororum nundinarum et liberorum portuum devorias eisdemque fruendi et gaudendi adeo libere in omnibus respectibus sicuti quivis baro major aut minor in hoc regno nostro Scotie gavisus est aut gaudere poterit quovis tempore preterito aut futuro cum omnibus aliis privilegiis prerogativis dignitatibus immunitatibus casualitatibus proficiis et devoriis ad predictam baroniam maria et bondas ejusdem quovismodo spectantibus et pertinentibus et que nos ipsi dare vel concedere possumus in adeo libera et ampla forma sicuti nos aut aliquis nostrorum progenitorum aliquas alias literas cartas patentes infeofamenta donationes aut diplomata concesserunt cuivis subdito nostro cujuscunque qualitatis aut gradus aut cuivis societati et communitati periclitanti aut tales colonias in quascunque partes extraneas deducenti terras extraneas investiganti ac in tam libera et ampla forma sicuti eadem hac presenti carta nostra insererentur cum plena potestate prefato Roberto Gordoun suisque predictis gubernandi regendi et puniendi omnes nostros subditos quos sub mandato dicti Roberti ad dietam partem et portionem domini et baronie Nove Scotie predicti proficisci aut eandem habitare contigerit aut qui in aliqua parte ejusdem negotiabantur et remanebunt et stabiliendi ejusmodi leges statuta constitutiones directiones instructiones formas et ceremonias regiminum et magistratuum infra dictas bondas sicuti prefato Roberto ejusque predictis pro gubernatione dictae regionis et ejusdem incolarum in omnibus causis criminalibus et civilibus visum fuerit ac easdem leges regimina formas et ceremonias alterandi et mutandi quoties sibi suisque predictis pro bono et commodo dictae regionis placuerit proviso tamen quod dictae leges legibus hujus regni nostri Scotie quam maxime fieri possint sint concordantes Ac etiam quod prefatus Robertus Gordoun suique predicti sint subjecti et obediens legibus tam ecclesiasticis quam civilibus per nos aut successores aliosve

potestatem a nobis habentes statuendis pro gubernatione dicti domini et baronie de Galloway in Nova Scotia tam ecclesiasticarum quam communitatum ejusdem nostrorumve subditorum ibidem remanentium ac aliorum quovis tempore futuro eo proficiscentium et frequentantium Et ut viris honesto loco natis sese suosque expeditionem conferant in et ad colonie plantationem in predicta baronia de Galloway faciendam et stabiliendam addatur animus nos pro nobis nostrisque successoribus cum avisamento et consensu predicto tenore presentis carte nostre damus et concedimus liberam et plenariam potestatem prefato Roberto Gordoun suisque predictis approbandi conferendi et consignandi iis eorumque alicui aut aliis quos cum ipso Roberto suisque predictis pactiones vel contractus facere pro eisdem contigerit sub subscriptione sua et sigillo suorumve predictorum aliquam portionem seu portiones terrarum portuum navium stationum fluviorum aut alicujus partis predictae baronie de Galloway omnium etiam generum machinas artes facultates et scientias erigendi aut easdem coercendi in toto vel in parte vel qualibet alia mensura sicuti ipsis pro bono ipsorum expedientissimum videbitur ejusmodi etiam officia titulos jura et potestates dandi concedendi et attribuendi ac tales capitaneos officarios ballivos gubernatores clericos omnesque alios regalitatum baroniarum et burgorum officarios aliosque ministros constituendi et designandi pro administratione justicie infra bondas predictae baronie aut in via dum eo per mare proficiscuntur et inde rediunt sicuti ei necessarium videbitur secundum qualitates conditiones et personarum merita quas in aliqua coloniarum dictae baronie aut aliqua ejusdem parte habitare contigerit aut qui ipsorum fortunas aut bona pro commodo et incremento ejusdem in ista expeditione periculo committent ac eosdem ab officio removendi alterandi et mutandi prout ei suisque predictis expediens videbitur **RESERVANDO** tamen nostro fideli et predilecto consiliario Domino Willelmo Alexander militi nostro in predicta baronia locumtenenti hereditibus suis et assignatis de predictis terris et bondis de Cape Brettoun sive baronia de Galloway prescripta et ejusdem limitibus insulam seu talem partem continentis dictae insule seu insularum de Cape Brettoun predictarum que litoribus terre nove proxime adjacent in optione prefati Domini Willelmi Allexander suorumque predictorum Proviso tamen quod viginti quinque miliaria mensure Scotie in circuitu non excedant cum integris privilegiis officiis jurisdictionibus libertatibus et immunitatibus infra bondas predictae insule aut partem continentis jacentibus sicuti nos eadem per patentes nostras literas sub nostro magno sigillo regni nostri Scotie predicti Domino Willelmo hereditibus suis et assignatis per prius concessimus Et licet omnes ejusmodi contractus inter dictum Robertum Gordoun suosque predictos et dietos periclitatores per periclitationem et populorum transportationem cum ipsorum bonis et fortunis ad diem et locum prius statutos perficiantur et ipsi cum suis populis bonis et fortunis ad quamlibet partem predictae baronie de Galloway coloniam deducendi et ibidem remanendi gratia appellent Et nihilominus postea



vel omnino predictam baroniam de Galloway in Nova Scotia et ejusdem confinia sine licentia prefati Roberti suorumve predictorum vel eorum deutorum aut societatem suam et coloniam predictam ubi primum combinati et conjuncti fuerant derelinquent et deserent et ad agrestes indigenas et in locis remotis et desertis sese conferent quod tunc omnes terras prius iis concessas aut concedendas omniaque bona et fortunas infra quamlibet partem bondarum predictarum forisfactura perdent et amittent ac prefato Roberto Gordoun suisque predictis licitum erit ad fiscum redigere et recognoscere omnes ejusmodi terras bona et fortunas eademque omnia iis quovismodo spectantia et pertinentia recipere et possidere et in suum suorumque predictorum particulares usus convertere Et cum maxime necessarium erit ut omnes dilecti nostri subditi quotquot dictam baroniam de Galloway incolent in timore omnipotentis Dei et vero ejus cultu simul vivant cunctis viribus nitentes christianam religionem ibidem stabilire et pacem et quietem civilem cum nativis incolis et agrestibus aboriginibus illarum terrarum colere unde ipsi ipsorumque quilibet mercimonia ibi excrecentes tuti et cum majori oblectamento et commoditate ea que magno labore et periculo acquirunt possidere possint SIMILITER nos pro nobis nostrisque successoribus volumus nobisque beneplacitum est ac per presentis carte nostre tenorem damus et concedimus prefato Roberto Gordoun suisque predictis eorumque deputatis vel aliis hujusmodi gubernatoribus officiariis et ministris quod ipsi constituent liberam et absolutam potestatem pacem amicitias et affinitatem foedera mutua colloquia et communicationem cum agrestibus aboriginibus et eorum principibus vel quibuscunque aliis regimen et potestatem in ipsos habentibus tractandi et contrahendi hujusmodi foedera et affinitates que ipsi vel sui predicti cum iis contrahant alendi observandi et magna cura retinendi modo ipsi sylvestres foedera illa ex sua parte fideliter observent quod nisi fiat arma contra ipsos sumendi eosque in talem ordinem redigendi sicuti dicto Roberto suisque predictis eorumve deputatis pro honore obedientia et Dei servitio nostreque autoritatis inter ipsos stabilimento protectione et conservatione expediens videbitur cum potestate dicto Roberto Gordoun suisque predictis per ipsos vel eorum deputatos substitutos et assignatos pro ipsorum defensione et tutela omni tempore omnibusque justis occasionibus in posterum aggrediendi ex inopinato invadendi expellendi et armis repellendi tam per mare quam terram omnibus modis omnes et singulos qui sine licentia speciali prefati Roberti Gordoun ejusque predictorum dictam baroniam de Galloway in Nova Scotia vel quamlibet ejusdem partem inhabitare aut ibidem mercaturam facere conabuntur et similiter omnes alios quoscunque qui aliquid damni detrementi destructionis lesionis vel invasionis contra dictam baroniam ejusdemque incolas inferre presument Ac pro meliori ipsorum adversus ejusmodi personas munitione et fortificatione prenominato Roberto Gordoun suisque predictis eorumque deputatis factoribus et assignatis licitum erit periclitantibus et ejusdem incolis contributiones levare ac



etiam omnibus nostris subditis infra dictos limites baronie de Galloway predictæ inhabitantibus et mercimonia ibidem exercentibus pro meliori copiarum eidem necessariarum supplemento imperare eosque per proclamationes vel quemvis alium ordinem (ejusmodi temporibus et locis sicuti prefato Roberto ejusque predictis visum fuerit) in unum cogere et convocare Ac pro majori populi et plantationis coloniarum in dicta baronia incremento cum plenaria potestate privilegio et libertate supradicto Roberto Gordoun ejusque predictis per ipsos eorumve substitutos per quevis maria sub nostris insignibus navigandi tantis onere munitione viris et victualibus oneratis et instructis sicuti quovis tempore et quoties ipsis videbitur expediens emitte re possunt et a quovis dominiorum seu regnorum nostrorum omnes cujuscunque qualitatis status aut gradus personas subditos nostros aut qui imperio nostro subdere ad iter illud suscipiendum voluerint cum ipsorum jumentis equis equabus bobus ovibus bonis et fortunis munitionibus machinis majoribus armis et instrumentis militariibus quotquot voluerint aliisque commoditatibus et rebus necessariis pro usu colonias deducendi ac cum nativis incolis dicte baronie de Galloway aliisque qui cum ipsis coloniarum ductoribus ibidem mercimonia exercebunt mutuo commercio ad dictam baroniam de Galloway transportandi et omnes commoditates et merces que ipsis necessarie videbuntur in regnum nostrum Scotie sine alicujus taxationis custume aut impositionis pro eisdem solutione nobis customariis nostris eorumve deputatis inde portandi eos ab eisdem ipsorumque in hac parte officii pro spatio septem annorum diem date presentium sequentium inhibendo Quarumquidem solam commoditatem per spatium tredecim annorum imposterum libere concessimus et disposuimus tenoreque presentis carte nostre concedimus et disponimus prefato Roberto Gordoun ejusque predictis secundum proportionem quinque de centum postea mentionatam Et post tredecim illos annos finitos nobis heredibus et successionibus nostris licitum erit ab omnibus bonis et mercimoniis que ex hoc regno nostro Scotie ad baroniam predictam exportabuntur vel inde ad quosvis portus dicti regni nostri Scotie per perfatum Robertum Gordoun ejusque predictos importabuntur quinque libras tantummodo de centum secundum antiquam negotiandi consuetudinem sine aliqua alia impositione taxatione custuma aut devoria ab ipsis imperpetuum levanda Quaquidem summa quinque librarum de centum per dictum Robertum ejusque predictos nostris officariis ad hunc affectum constitutis soluta exinde prefato Roberto suisque predictis licitum et liberum erit eadem bona et hoc regno nostro Scotie in quasvis alias partes vel regiones extraneas sine alicujus alterius custume taxationis vel devorie solutione nobis vel heredibus et successoribus nostris aliisve quibuscunque transportare et avehere Proviso tamen quod dicta bona infra spatium tredecim mensium post ipsorum in quovis hujus regni nostri portu appulsionem navi rursus imponantur dando et concedendo absolutam et plenariam potestatem prefato Roberto suisque predictis ab omnibus nostris subditis qui colonias deducere

mercaturam facere aut ad dictam baroniam de Galloway et ad eadem navigare voluerint preter dictam summam nobis solvi statutam pro bonis et mercibus ut predictur quinque libras de centum vel ratione exportationis ex hoc regno nostro Scotie ad dictam baroniam de Galloway vel importationis a dicta baronia ad hoc regnum nostrum Scotie predictum in ipsius suorumque prescriptorum proprios usus sumendi levandi et recipiendi et similiter de omnibus bonis et mercimoniis que per nostros subditos coloniarum deductores negotiatores et navigatores a dicta baronia de Galloway ad quevis nostra dominia aut alia quevis loca exportabuntur vel a regnis nostris et aliis locis ad dictam baroniam importabuntur preter et ultra summam nobis destinatam quinque libras de centum ac etiam de bonis et mercimoniis omnium extraneorum aliorumque sub nostro imperio minime existentium que vel de predicta baronia de Galloway exportabuntur vel ad eandem importabuntur preter et ultra summam nobis destinatam decem libras de centum in dicti Roberti suorumque predictorum proprios usus per tales ministros officarios et substitutos eorumve substitutos factores et assignatos quales ipsi constituent et designabunt levandi recipiendi et colligendi Et pro meliori prefati Roberti ejusque predictorum aliorumque omnium dilectorum nostrorum subditorum qui dictam baroniam de Galloway inhabitare vel ibidem mercaturam exercere voluerint et generaliter omnium aliorum qui ibidem nostre authoritati et regie potestati sese subdere minime gravabuntur securitate et commoditate nos volumus et damus licentiam prefato Roberto Gordoun ejusque predictis unum aut plura presidia propugnacula loca fortia munitoria turres excubitorias asyla hospitia aliaque edificia cum portubus et navium stationibus edificare seu edificari causandi navesque bellicas extruendi easdemque pro dictorum locorum defensione collocandi sicuti dicto Roberto suisque predictis pro dicto conamine perficiendo utile et necessarium videbitur et pro eorum protectione presidia ponendi et ultra et supra ea que in hac presenti carta nostra mentionata sunt et generaliter omnia faciendi que pro dominatione populi frequentatione inhabitatione preservatione et gubernatione dicto baronie de Galloway et omnium orarum et pomeriorum infra precinctum ejusdem et pertinentiarum et dependentiarum ejusdem sub nostro nomine et authoritate quecumque legitime fieri possunt exceptis iis que ad officium generalis nostri locumtenentis totius et integri dicti domini et baronie in America spectant quod officium cum privilegiis et libertatibus eidem pertinentibus predicto Domino Willelmo Alexander ejusque predictis expresse reservatur PRETEREA nos mandamus et ordinamus strictissimeque precipimus omnibus officiariis justiciariis et subditis ad loca predicta sese conferentibus ut sese accommodent et predicto Roberto Gordoun ejusque predictis in omnibus et singulis predictis eorum substantiis circumstantiis et dependentiis attendant et obediant sub pena contumacie et rebellionis Et quia fieri potest quod sunt quidam licentiosi et dissoluti ad dictam baroniam de Galloway transportandi qui forsitan dicto Roberto Gordoun iisque

[ejusque] predictis renuent et resistent NOBIS igitur beneplacitum est quod omnes vicecomites senescalli ballivi regalitatum pacis justiciarii prepositi et ballivi burgorum eorumque officarii et justicie ministri quicumque prefato Roberto ipsius deputatis aliisque predictis in omnibus et singulis rebus quas ad effectum prescriptum intendunt aut efficient similiter ac eodem modo ac si nostrum speciale warrantum ad hunc effectum scriptum haberent assistant auxilientur protegant et suppetias ferant INSUPER per presentis carte nostre tenorem declaramus omnibus christianis regibus principibus et statibus quod si aliquis vel aliqui qui coloniam dicte baronie de Galloway vel quamvis aliam imposterum incolet vel aliqui alii sub eorum licentia de mandato quovis tempore futuro piraticam exercentes per mare vel terram bona alicujus diripuerint et abstulerint vel aliquod injustum vel illegitimum facinus hostiliter contra aliquos nostros nostrorumve heredum vel successorum aut aliorum regum principum aut statuum nobiscum et heredibus nostris confederatorum subditos patnaverint quod tali injuria sic oblata ac justa querela desuper mota per aliquem regem principem gubernatorem statum vel eorum subditos predictos nos nostri heredes et successores publicas proclamationes fieri curabimus infra aliquam partem regni nostri Scotie ad hunc effectum magis commodam ut dictus predador vel predatores qui tales rapinas commiserint stato tempore per dictas proclamationes limitando quecunque bona sic ablata plenarie restituant et pro dictis injuriis omnino satisfaciant ita ut dicti principes alique sic conquerentes sese plenarie satisfactos et contentos esse reputent Et si aliquis vel aliqui talia facinora patrantes bona ablata restituere aut congruam et condignam satisfactionem infra ejusmodi tempus limitandum facere recusaverint quod tunc nostra protectione et tutela omnino imposterum privabuntur et cunctis principibus aliisque predictis licitum erit ejusmodi predatores eorumve singulos hostiliter prosequi et invadere Et licet neminem nobilem aut generosum de hac sua patria sine permissione et licentia nostra decedere statutum sit nihilominus volumus hoc presens diploma sufficientem fore licentiam et warrantum omnibus qui expeditionem hanc suscipient nisi fuerint lesemaiestatis rei vel aliquo speciali mandato inhibiti AC ETIAM per presentis carte nostre tenorem volumus et declaramus quod nemo versus dictam baroniam de Galloway de hac sua patria decedere permittatur nisi qui juramentum supremitatis nostre prius susceperint ad quem effectum nos per presentes damus et concedimus plenariam potestatem et licentiam prefato Roberto Gordoun suisque predictis vel privilegiorum Nove Scotie conservatoribus eorumve deputatis idem hoc juramentum omnibus quos versus illam coloniam expeditionem facere et ibidem remanere contigerit requirendi et exhibendi PRETEREA nos cum avisamento predicto pro nobis et successoribus nostris declaramus decernimus et ordinamus quod omnes nostri subditi qui ad dictam baroniam de Galloway proficiscuntur aut eam incolent omnesque eorum liberi et posteritas quos infra ejusdem limites nasci contigerit et similiter omnes qui ibidem

periclitabuntur omnes libertates immunitates et privilegia liberorum et naturalium subditorum dicti regni nostri Scotie aut quorumvis aliorum nostrorum dominiorum possidebunt et gauderunt ac si ibidem nati fuissent Et **PRETEREA** nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris damus et concedimus prefato Roberto Gordoun et suis predictis eorumve successoribus pro faciliori et meliori commercio et coemptione bonam et usualementam inter incolas stabiliendi et eudere causandi ex quovis metallo iis modo et forma quos ipsi limitabunt et designabunt ac etiam volumus si que questiones aut dubia super interpretatione aut constructione alicujus clausule in hac presenti carta nostra occurrant ea omnia in amplissima et optima forma in favorem dicti Roberti Gordoun ejusque prescriptorum accipi et interpretari **INSUPER** nos ex nostris certa scientia proprioque motu autoritate regali et regia potestate fecimus univimus annexavimus creavimus et incorporavimus tenoreque presentis carte nostre facimus univimus annexamus creamus et incorporamus totam et integram dictam partem et portionem dicti domini et baronie Nove Scotie in America cum omnibus fodinis auri et argenti plumbi cupri chalybis stanni aeris ferri aliisque fodinis et mineralibus quibuscunque cum omnibus margaritis lapidibus preciosis lapacidinis sylvis virgultis mossis marresius lacubus aquis piscationibus tam in aquis dulcibus quam salsis tam regalium quam aliorum piscium civitatibus liberis burgis liberis portubus urbibus baroniarum burgis portubus marinis anchoragiis machinis molendinis officiis et jurisdictionibus omnibusque aliis generaliter et particulariter supra expressis in unam integram et liberam baroniam baroniam de Galloway omni tempore affuturo nuncupandam Volumusque et concedimus ac pro nobis et successoribus nostris decernimus et ordinamus quod unica sasina nunc per prefatum Robertum Gordoun heredes suos et assignatos predictos omni tempore futuro super fundo alicujus partis predictae partis et portionis dicti domini et baronie Nove Scotie in America capienda stabit et sufficiens erit sasina pro tota et integra predicta parte et portione dicti domini et baronie Nove Scotie cum omnibus partibus pendiculis privilegiis casualitatibus libertatibus et immunitatibus ejusdem supra mentionatis absque aliqua alia speciali aut particulari sasina per ipsum suosque predictos apud aliquam aliam partem seu locum ejusdem capienda penes quam sasina omniaque inde sequuta aut que desuper sequi possunt nos cum avisaumento et consensu prescripto pro nobis et successoribus nostris dispensavimus tenoreque presentis carte nostre dispensamus imperpetuum modo subtus specificato **TENENDAM ET HABENDAM** totam et integram predictam partem et portionem predicti domini et baronie Nove Scotie in America nunc unitam creatam et incorporatam in unam integram et liberam baroniam baroniam de Galloway ut predictum nuncupandam cum omnibus fodinis auri et argenti plumbi cupri chalybis stanni aeris ferri aliisque fodinis et mineralibus quibuscunque cum omnibus margaritis lapidibus pretiosis lapacidinis sylvis virgultis mossis marresius lacubus aquis piscationibus tam in aquis dulcibus quam salsis tam regalium quam

aliorum piscium civitatibus liberis burgis liberis portubus urbibus baroniarum burgis portubus marinis anchoragiis machinis molendinis officiis et jurisdictionibus omnibusque aliis generaliter et particulariter supra expressis ac cum omnibus aliis privilegiis immunitatibus casualitatibus aliisque supramentionatis sepefato Roberto Gordoun heredibus suis et assignatis predictis nobis et successoribus nostris in libera baronia et regalitate imperpetuum modo supra expresso per omnes rectas metas suas antiquas et divisas prout jacent in longitudine et latitudine in domibus edificiis boscis planis moris marresiiis viis semitis aquis stagnis rivolis pratis pascuis et pasturis molendinis multuris et eorum sequelis aucupationibus venationibus piscationibus petariis turbariis carbonibus carbonariis cuniculis cuniculariis columbis columbariis fabrilibus brasinis brueriis et genestis sylvis nemoribus et virgultis lignis tignis lapicidiis lapide et calce cum curiis et earum exitibus herezeldis bluduitis et mulierum merchetis ac cum furca fossa sok sak thole them infangtheiff outfangtheiff wrak wair wraith vert et vennessoun pit et gallowis ac cum omnibus aliis et singulis libertatibus commoditatibus proficuis asiamentis ac justis suis pertinentiis quibuscunque tam non nominatis quam nominatis tam subtus terra quam supra terram procul et prope ad predictas terras et baroniam aliaque predicta cum pertinentiis spectantibus seu justo spectare valentibus quomodolibet in futurum libere quiete plenarie integre honorifice bene et in pace sine aliquo revocatione impedimento aut obstaculo quocunque SOLVENDO inde annuatim prefatus Robertus Gordoun ejusque predicti nobis et successoribus nostris unum denarium monete Scotie super solo dictarum terrarum et baronie de Galloway ad festum Nativitatis Christi nomine albe firme si petatur tantum Et quia tentione dicte baronie de Galloway et alba firma predicta deficiente tempestivo et legitimo introitu cujusvis heredis aut heredum prefati Roberti Gordoun vel sibi in eisdem succedentium (quod difficulter ab iis prestari potest ob longinquam distantiam dictarum terrarum ab hoc regno nostro) eodem terre et baronia predicta ratione nonintroitus in manibus nostris nostrorumve successorum devenient et earundem commoditas et proficua nobis et successoribus nostris redundabunt usque ad legitimum legitimi heredis introitum Et nos nolentes dictam baroniam quovis tempore futuro in nonintroitum cadere neque dictum Robertum ejusque predictos proficuis et emolumentis ejusdem baronie catenus frustrari Idcirco nos cum avisamento predicto cum dicto nonintroitu quodocunque contigerit dispensavimus ac pro nobis et successoribus nostris tenore presentis carte nostre dispensamus Ac ETIAM renunciavimus et exoneravimus tenoreque presentis carte nostre cum consensu prescripto renunciamus [et] exoneramus dictum Robertum Gordoun ejusque predictos de predicto nonintroitu terrarum et baronie de Galloway prescriptarum quodocunque in manibus nostris devenire contigerit cum omnibus proficuis earundem ac omnibus que desuper sequi possunt pro nunc et imperpetuum Proviso tamen quod prefatus Robertus heredes sui et assignati predicti infra spatium septem annorum post



decessum et obitum suorum prediceorum aut introitum ad possessionem dictarum terrarum aliorumque predictorum per ipsos vel eorum legitimos procuratores ad hunc effectum potestatem habentes nobis successoribus nostris pareant seu homagium præstent et ad dictas terras et baroniam aliaque predicta intrentur et secundum leges et statuta dicti regni nostri Scotie per nos recipiantur DENIQUE nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris volumus decernimus et ordinamus presentem hanc nostram cartam et infeofamentum suprascriptum predictarum terrarum et baronie de Galloway privilegiorum et libertatum earundem in proximo parlamento dicti regni nostri Scotie cum contigerit ratificare approbare et confirmare ut vim et efficaciam decreti et acti inde habeat penes quas nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris declaramus hanc presentem cartam nostram sufficiens fore warrantum et in verbo Principis eandem ratificare et approbare promittimus ac etiam alterare renovare et eandem in amplissimam formam augere et extendere quoties dicto Roberto suisque predictis necessarium et expediens videbitur INSUPER volumus et precipimus dilectis nostris

vicecomitibus nostris in hac parte specialiter constitutis quatenus post hujus carte nostre sub nostro magno sigillo aspectum statum et sasinam actualet et realem prefato Roberto Gordoun suisque predictis eorumve actornato vel actornatis terrarum et baronie de Galloway aliorumque predictorum cum omnibus libertatibus privilegiis immunitatibus aliisque supra expressis sine dilatione tradant et concedant quam sasinam nos per presentis carte nostre tenorem tam legitimam et ordinariam fore declaramus quam si preceptum sub testimonio magni nostri sigilli in amplissima forma cum omnibus clausulis requisitis ad hunc effectum predictum habere penes quod nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris imperpetuum dispensamus IN CUJUS REI testimonium huic presenti carte nostre magnum sigillum nostrum apponi precepimus TESTIBUS predilectis nostris consanguineis et consiliariis Jacobo Marchione de Hammiltoun Comite de Arrania Domino Even &c. Georgio Mariscalli Comite Domino Keith &c. regni nostri mariscallo Alexandro Comite de Dumfermling Domino Fyvie et Urquhart &c. nostro cancellario Thoma Comite de Melrois Domino Binning et Byris &c. nostro secretario dilectis nostris familiaribus consiliariis Dominis Richardo Cokburne juniore de Clerkintoun nostri secreti sigilli custode Georgio Hay de Kinfawinis nostrorum rotulorum registri ac consilii clerico Joanne Cokburne de Ormestoun nostre Justiciarie clerico et Joanne Scott de Scottistartvet nostre cancellarie direttore militibus Apud Theobaldis octavo die mensis Novembris anno Domini millesimo sexcentesimo vigesimo primo regnorumque nostrorum annis quinquagesimo quarto et decimo nono.

CARTA DOMINI WILLELMI ALEXANDER DE MENSTRIE  
MILITIS TERRARUM BARONIE ET DOMINII NOVE  
SCOTIE IN AMERICA. 12 JULII 1625.

CAROLUS Dei gratia Magnae Britanniae Franciae et Hiberniae Rex Fideique Defensor Omnibus probis hominibus totius terrae suae clericis et laicis salutem SCIATIS nos semper ad quamlibet quae ad decus et emolumentum regni nostri Scotiae spectaret occasionem amplectendum fuisse intentos nullamque aut faciliorem aut magis innoxiam acquisitionem censere quam quae in exteris et incultis regnis ubi vitae et victui suppetunt commoda novis deducendis coloniis facta sit praesertim si vel ipsa regna cultoribus prius vacua vel ab infidelibus quos ad Christianam converti fidem ad Dei gloriam interest plurimum in sessa fuerunt sed cum et alia nonnulla regna et haec non ita pridem nostra Anglia laudabiliter sua nomina novis terris acquisitis et a se subactis indiderunt quam numerosa et frequens Divino beneficio haec gens hac tempestate sit nobiscum reputantes quamque honesto aliquo et utili cultu eam studiose exerceri ne in deteriora ex ignavia et otio prolabatur expediat plerosque in novam deducendos regionem quam coloniis compleant operae praetium duximus qui et animi promptitudine et alacritate corporumque robore et viribus quibuscunque difficultatibus si qui alii mortalium uspiam se audeant opponere hunc conatum huic regno maxime idoneum inde arbitramur quod virorum tantummodo et mulierum jumentorum et frumenti non etiam pecuniae transvectionem postulat neque incommodum ex ipsius regni mercibus retributionem hoc tempore cum negotiatio adeo imminuta sit possit reponere Hisce de causis sicuti et propter bonum fidele et gratum dilecti nostri consilarii Domini Willielmi Alexander equitis servitium nobis praestitum et praestandum qui propriis impensis ex nostratibus primus externam hanc coloniam ducendam conatus sit diversasque terras infradesignatis limitibus circumscriptas incolendas expetiverit Nos igitur ex regali nostra ad Christianam religionem propagandam et ad opulentiam prosperitatem pacemque naturalium nostrorum subditorum dicti regni nostri Scotiae acquirendam cura sicuti alii principes extranei in talibus casibus hactenus fecerunt cum avisamento et consensu praedilecti nostri consanguinei et consilarii Joannis Comitis de Mar Domini Erskene et Garioche &c. summi nostri thesaurarii computorum rotulatoris collectoris ac thesaurarii novarumstrarum augmentationum hujus regni nostri Scotiae ac reliquorum dominorum nostrorum commissionariorum ejusdem regni nostri



Dedimus concessimus et disposuimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae damus concedimus et disponimus praefato Domino Wilhelmo Alexander haeredibus suis vel assignatis quibuscunque haereditarie OMNES et singulas terras continentis ac insulas situatas et jacentes in America juxta caput seu promontorium communiter *Cap de Sable* appellatum jacens prope latitudinem quadraginta trium graduum aut eo circa ab equinoxiali linea versus septentrionem a quo promontorio versus littus maris tendendo ad occidentem ad stationem navium Sanctae Mariae vulgo *St Maries Bay* et deinceps versus septentrionem per directam lineam introitum sive ostium magnae illius stationis navium transeundo quae excurrit in terrae orientalem plagam inter regiones Suriquorum et Etecheminorum vulgo *Suriquois* et *Etechemines* ad fluvium vulgo Sanctae Crucis appellatum et ad scaturiginem remotissimam sive fontem ex occidentali parte ejusdem qui se primum praedicto fluvio immisceat unde per imaginariam directam lineam quae pergere per terram seu currere versus septentrionem concipietur ad proximam navium stationem in fluvium vel scaturiginem in magno fluvio de Cannada sese exonerantem et ab eo pergendo versus orientem per maris oras littorales ejusdem fluvii de Cannada ad fluvium stationem navium portum aut littus communiter nomine de *Gathepe* vel *Gaspie* notum et appellatum et deinceps versus euronotum ad insulas Bacalaos vel *Cap Britton* vocatas reliquendo easdem insulas a dextra et voraginem dicti magni fluvii de Cannada sive magnae stationis navium et terras de Newfoundland cum insulis ad easdem terras pertinentibus a sinistra et deinceps ad caput sive promontorium de Cap Britton praedictum jacens prope latitudinem quadraginta quinque graduum aut eo circa et a dicto promontorio de Cap Britton versus meridiem et occidentem ad praedictum Cap Sable ubi inceptit perambulatio includendo et comprehendendo intra dictas maris oras littorales ac earum circumferentias a mari ad mare omnes terras continentis cum fluminibus torrentibus sinibus littoribus insulis aut maribus jacentes prope aut infra sex leucas ad aliquam earundem partem ex occidentali boreali vel orientali partibus orarum littoralium et praecinctuum earundem et ab euronoto (ubi jacet Cap Britton) ex australi parte ejusdem (ubi est Cap de Sable) omnia maria et insulas versus meridiem intra quadraginta leucas dictarum orarum littoralium earundem magnam insulam vulgariter appellatam *Ile de Sable* vel *Sablon* includendo jacentem versus Carbane vulgo *south-south-east* circa triginta leucas a dicto Cap Britton in mari et existentem in latitudine quadraginta quatuor graduum aut eo circa Quaequidem terrae praedictae omni tempore affuturo nomine NOVAE SCOTIAE IN AMERICA gaudebunt quas etiam praefatus Dominus Wilhelmus in partes et portiones sicut ei visum fuerit dividet eisdemque nomina pro beneplacito imponet Unacum omnibus fodinis tam regalibus auri et argenti quam aliis fodinis ferri plumbi cupri stanni aeris ac aliis mineralibus quibuscunque cum potes-

tate effodiendi et ex terra effodere causandi purificandi et repurgandi easdem ac convertendi ac utendi suo proprio usui aut aliis usibus quibuscunque sicuti dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander haeredibus suis et assignatis aut iis quos suo loco in dictis terris stabilire ipsum contigerit visum fuerit *RESERVANDO* solummodo nobis et successoribus nostris decimam partem metalli vulgo *ure* auri et argenti quod ex terra imposterum effodietur aut lucrabitur Relinquendo dicto Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis quodcunque ex aliis metallis cupri chalybis ferri stanni plumbi aut aliorum mineralium nos vel successores nostri quovismodo exigere possumus ut eo facilius magnos sumptus in extrahendis praefatis metallis tolerare possint Unacum margaritis vulgo *pearle* ac lapidibus praeciosis quibuscunque aliis lapidinis silvis virgultis mossis marresiiis lacubus aquis piscationibus tam in aqua salsa quam recenti tam regalium piscium quam aliorum venatione aucupatione commoditatibus et haereditamentis quibuscunque Unacum plenaria potestate privilegio et jurisdictione liberae regalitatis capellae et cancellariae imperpetuum cumque donatione et jure patronatus ecclesiarum capellaniarum et beneficiorum cum tenentibus tenandriis et liberetenentium servitiis earundem Unacum officiis justiciariae et admiralitatis respective infra omnes bondas respective supra mentionatas Una etiam cum potestate civitates liberos burgos liberos portus villas et burgos baroniae erigendi ac fora et nundinas infra bondas dictarum terrarum constituendi curias justiciariae et admiralitatis infra limites dictarum terrarum fluviorum portuum et marium tenendi Una etiam cum potestate imponendi levandi et recipiendi omnia tononia custumas anchoragia aliasque dictorum burgorum fororum nundinarum et liberorum portuum devorias et eisdem possidendi et gaudendi adeo libere in omnibus respectibus sicuti quivis baro major vel minor in hoc regno nostro Scotiae gavisus est aut gaudere poterit quovis tempore praeterito vel futuro Cum omnibus aliis praerogativis privilegiis immunitatibus dignitatibus casualitatibus proficuis et devoriis ad dictas terras maria et bondas earundem spectantibus et pertinentibus Et quae nos ipsi dare et concedere possumus adeo libere et ampla forma sicuti nos aut aliquis nostrorum nobilium progenitorum aliquas cartas patentes literas infeofamenta donationes aut diplomata concesserunt cuivis nostro subdito cujuscunque gradus aut qualitatis cuivis societati aut communitati tales colonias in quascunque partes extraneas deducendi aut terras extraneas investiganti in adeo libera et ampla forma sicuti eadem in hac praesenti carta nostra insererentur *FACIMUS ETIAM* constituimus et ordinamus dictum Dominum Willielmum Alexander haeredes suos et assignatos vel eorum deputatos nostros haereditarios locumtenentes generales ad repraesentandum nostram personam regalem tam per mare quam per terram in regionibus maris oris et finibus praedictis in petendo dictas terras quamdiu illic manserit ac redeundo ab eisdem ad gubernandum regendum puniendum et remittendum omnes nostros subditos quos

ad dietas terras ire aut easdem inhabitare contigerit aut qui negotiationem cum eisdem susceperint vel in eisdem locis remanebunt ac eisdem ignoscendum et ad stabiliendum tales leges statuta constitutiones directiones instructiones formas gubernandi et magistratuum caeremonias infra dietas bondas sicuti ipsi Domino Willielmo Alexander aut ejus praedictis ad gubernationem dictae regionis aut ejusdem incolarum in omnibus causis tam criminalibus quam civilibus visum fuerit et easdem leges regimina formas et caeremonias alterandum et mutandum quoties sibi vel suis praedictis pro bono et commodo dictae regionis placuerit ita ut dictae leges tam legibus dicti regni nostri Scotiae quam fieri possunt sint concordantes Volumus etiam ut in casu rebellionis aut seditionis legibus utatur militaribus adversus delinquentes vel imperio ipsius sese subtrahentes adeo libere sicuti aliquis locumtenens cujusvis regni nostri vel domini virtute officii locumtenentis habent vel habere possunt Excludendo omnes alios officarios hujus regni nostri Scotiae terrestres vel maritimos qui imposterum aliquid juriselamei commoditatis autoritatis aut interesse in et ad dietas terras aut provinciam praedictam vel aliquam inibi jurisdictionem virtute alicujus praecedentis dispositionis aut diplomatis praetendere possunt Et ut viris honesto loco natis sese ad expeditionem istam subeundam et ad coloniae plantationem in dictis terris addatur animus nos pro nobis nostrisque haeredibus et successoribus cum avisamento et consensu praedicto virtute praesentis cartae nostrae damus et concedimus liberam et plenariam potestatem praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque praedictis conferendi favores privilegia munia et honores in demerentes Cum plenaria potestate eisdem aut eorum alicui quos cum ipso Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis pactiones vel contractus facere pro eisdem terris contigerit sub subscriptione sua vel suorum praedictorum et sigillo inframentationato aliquam portionem seu portiones dictarum terrarum portuum navium stationum fluviorum aut praemissorum alicujus partis disponendi et extradonandi Erigendi etiam omnium generum machinas artes vel scientias aut easdem exercendi in toto vel in parte sicuti ei pro bono ipsorum visum fuerit Dandi etiam et concedendi et attribuendi talia officia titulos jura et potestates constituendi et designandi tales capitaneos officarios balivos gubernatores omnesque alios regalitatis baroniae et burgi officarios clericos aliosque ministros pro administratione justitiae infra bondas dietarum terrarum aut in via dum terras istas petunt per mare et ab eisdem redeunt sicuti ei necessarium videbitur secundum qualitates condiciones et personarum morita quos in aliqua coloniarum dietae provinciae aut aliqua ejusdem parte habitare contigerit aut qui ipsorum bona et fortunas pro commodo et incremento ejusdem periculo committent et eosdem ab officio removendi alterandi et mutandi prout ei suisque praescriptis videbitur expediens Et quum hujusmodi conatus non sine magno labore et sumptibus fiunt magnamque pecuniae

largitionem requirant adeo ut privati cujusvis fortunæ excedant et multorum suppetiis indigeant Ob quam causam dictus Dominus Willielmus Alexander suique præscripti cum diversis nostris subditis aliisque pro particularibus periclitationibus et susceptionibus ibidem qui forte cum eo suisque hæredibus assignatis vel deputatis pro terris piscationibus mercimoniis aut populi transportatione cum ipsorum pecoribus rebus et bonis versus dictam Novam Scotiam contractus inibunt Volumus ut quicumque tales contractus cum dicto Willielmo suisque prædictis sub ipsorum subscriptionibus et sigillis expedient limitando assignando et affigendo diem et locum pro personarum bonorum rerumque deliberatione in navim imponendorum sub forisfactura cujusdam monetæ summæ et eosdem contractus non perficient sed ipsum frustrabunt et in itinere designato ei nocebunt quod non solum dicto Domino Willielmo suisque prædictis poterit esse præjudicio et nocumento verum etiam nostræ tam laudabili intentioni obstat et detrimentum inferet tunc licitum erit dicto Domino Willielmo suisque prædictis vel eorum deputatis et conservatoribus infra-mentionatis in eo casu sibi suisve prædictis quos ad hunc effectum substituet omnes tales summas monetæ bonæ et res forisfactas per talium contractuum violationem assumere Quod ut facilius fiat et legum prolixitas evitetur dedimus et concessimus tenoreque præsentium damus et concedimus plenariam potestatem nostri consilii dominis ut eos in ordinem redigant et talium contractuum vel foederum violatores pro transportatione populorum factorum puniant Et licet omnes tales contractus inter dictum Dominum Willielmum suosque prædictos et prædictos periclitatores per periclitationem et transportationem populorum cum ipsorum bonis et rebus ad statutum diem perficiantur et ipsi cum suis omnibus pecoribus et bonis ad littus illius provincie animo coloniam ducendi et remanendi appellent et nihilominus postea vel omnino provinciam Novæ Scotiæ et ejusdem confinia sine licentia dicti Domini Willielmi suorumque prædictorum vel eorum deputatorum aut societatem et coloniam prædictam ubi primum combinati et conjuncti fuerant derelinquent et ad agrestes indigenas in locis remotis et desertis habitandum sese conferent quod tunc amittent et forisfacient omnes terras prius iis concessas omnia etiam bona infra omnes prædictas bondas licitumque erit prædicto Domino Willielmo suisque præscriptis eadem fisco applicare et easdem terras recognoscere eademque omnia ad ipsos vel eorum aliquem quovismodo spectantia possidere et suo peculiari usui suorumque prædictorum applicare et convertere Et ut omnes dilecti nostri subditi tam regnorum nostrorum et dominiorum quam alii extranei quos ad dictas terras aut aliquam earundem partem ad mercimonia contrahenda navigare contigerit melius sciant et obedientes sint potestati et authoritati per nos in prædictum fidelem nostrum consiliarum Dominum Willielmum Alexander suosque prædictos collatæ in omnibus talibus commissionibus warrantis et contractibus quos quovis tempore futuro

faciet concedet et constituet pro decentiori et validiori constitutione officiariorum pro gubernatione dictae coloniae concessione terrarum et executione justitiae dictos inhabitantes periclitantes deputatos factores vel assignatos tangentes in aliqua dictarum terrarum parte vel in navigatione ad easdem terras nos cum avisamento et consensu praedicto ordinamus quod dictus Dominus Willielmus Alexander sive praedicti unum commune sigillum habebunt ad officium locumtenentis justiciariae et admiralitatis spectans quod per dictum Dominum Willielmum Alexander suosque praedictos vel per suos deputatos omni tempore affuturo custodietur in ejus uno latere nostra insignia inculpentur cum his verbis in ejusdem circulo et margine SIGILLUM REGIS SCOTIE ANGLIE FRANCIE ET HIBERNIE et in altero latere imago nostra nostrorumque successorum cum his verbis PRO NOVE SCOTIE LOCUMTENENTE ejus justum exemplar in manibus ac custodia conservatoris privilegiorum Novae Scotiae remanebit quo ut occasio requiret in officio suo utatur Et quum maxime necessarium sit ut omnes dilecti nostri subditi quotquot dictam provinciam Novae Scotiae vel ejus confinia incolent in timore Omnipotentis Dei et vero ejus cultu simul vivant omni conamine intendentes Christianam religionem ibi stabilire pacem etiam et quietem cum nativis incolis et agrestibus aboriginibus earum terrarum colere (unde ipsi et eorum quilibet mercimonia ibi exercentes tuti cum oblectamento ea quae magno cum labore et periculo acquisiverunt quiete possidere possunt) nos pro nobis nostrisque successoribus volumus nobisque visum est per presentis cartae nostrae tenorem dare et concedere dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque praedictis et eorum deputatis vel aliquibus aliis nostris gubernatoribus officiariis et ministris quos ipsi constituent liberam et absolutam potestatem tractandi et pacem affinitatem amicitiam mutua colloquia operam et communicationem cum agrestibus illis aboriginibus et eorum principibus et quibuscunque aliis regimen et potestatem in ipsos habentibus contrahendi observandi et alendi tales affinitates et colloquia quae ipsi vel sui praedicti cum iis contrahent modo foedera illa ex adversa parte per ipsos silvestres fideliter observentur quod nisi fiat arma contra ipsos sumendi quibus redigi possunt in ordinem sicuti dicto Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis et deputatis suis pro honore obedientia et Dei servitio ac stabilimento defensione et conservatione auctoritatis nostrae inter ipsos expediens videbitur Cum potestate etiam praedicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque praescriptis per ipsos vel eorum deputatos substitutos vel assignatos pro eorum defensione et tutela omni tempore et omnibus justis occasionibus imposterum aggrediendi ex inopinato invadendi expellendi et armis repellendi tam per mare quam per terram omnibus modis omnes et singulos qui sine speciali licentia dicti Domini Willielmi suorumque praedictorum terras eas inhabitare aut mercaturam exercere in dicta provincia Novae Scotiae aut quavis ejusdem parte conabuntur et similiter omnes alios quoscunque



qui aliquid damni detrimenti destructionis laesionis vel invasionis contra provinciam illam aut ejusdem incolae inferre praesumunt Quod ut facilius fiat licitum erit dicto Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis eorum deputatis factoribus et assignatis contributiones a periclitantibus et incolis ejusdem levare in unum cogere per proclamationes vel quovis alio ordine talibus temporibus sicuti dicto Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis expediens videbitur omnes nostros subditos infra dictos limites dictae provinciae Novae Scotiae inhabitantes et mercimonia ibidem exercentes convocare pro meliori exercitio necessariorum supplemento et populi ac plantationis dictarum terrarum augmentatione et incremento Cum plenaria potestate privilegio et libertate dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque praescriptis per ipsos vel eorum substitutos per quaevis maria sub nostris insigniis et vexillis navigandi cum tot navibus tanti oneris et tam bene munitione viris et victualibus instructis sicuti possunt parare quovis tempore et quoties iis videbitur expediens ac omnes cujuscunque qualitatis et gradus personas subditos nostros existentes aut qui imperio nostro sese subdere ad iter illud suscipiendum voluerint cum ipsorum jumentis equis bobus ovibus bonis et rebus omnibus munitionibus machinis majoribus armis et instrumentis militaribus quotquot voluerint aliisque commoditatibus et rebus necessariis pro usu ejusdem coloniae mutuo commercio cum nativis inhabitantibus earum provinciarum aut aliis qui cum ipsis plantatoribus mercimonia contrahent transportandi et omnes commoditates et mercimonia quae iis videbuntur necessaria in regnum nostrum Scotiae sine alicujus taxationis custumae et impositionis pro eisdem solutione nobis vel nostris custumariis aut eorum deputatis inde portandi eosdemque ab eorum officiis in hac parte pro spatio septem annorum diem datae praesentis cartae nostrae immediate sequentium inhibendo QUAMQUIDEM solam commoditatem per spatium tredecim annorum imposterum libere concessimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae concedimus et disponimus dicto Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis secundum proportionem postea mentionatam Et post tredecim illos annos finitos licitum erit nobis nostrisque successoribus ex omnibus bonis et mercimoniis quae ex hoc regno nostro Scotiae ad eandem provinciam Novae Scotiae vel ex ea provincia ad dictum regnum nostrum Scotiae exportabuntur vel importabuntur in quibuscunque hujus regni nostri portibus per dictum Dominum Willielmum suosque praedictos tantum quinque libras pro centum secundum antiquum negotiandi modum sine ulla alia impositione taxatione custuma vel devoria ab ipsis imposterum levare et exigere quaquidem summa quinque librarum pro centum sic soluta per dictum Dominum Willielmum suosque praedictos aliisque nostris officiariis ad hunc effectum constitutis exinde licitum erit dicto Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis eadem bona de hoc regno nostro Scotiae in quasvis alias partes et regiones extraneas sine alicujus alterius custumae taxationis vel devoriae solutione nobis vel nostris haeredibus aut

successoribus aut aliquibus aliis transportare et avehere Proviso tamen quod dicta bona infra spatium tredecim mensium post ipsarum in quovis hujus regni nostri portu appulsionem navi rursus imponantur Dando et concedendo absolutam et plenariam potestatem dicto Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis ab omnibus nostris subditis qui colonias deducere mercimonia exercere aut ad easdem terras Novae Scotiae et ab eisdem navigare voluerint praeter dictam summam nobis debitam pro bonis et mercimoniis quinque libras de centum vel ratione exportationis ex hoc regno nostro Scotiae ad dictam provinciam Novae Scotiae vel importationis a dicta provincia ad hoc regnum nostrum Scotiae praedictum in ipsius ejusque praedictorum proprios usus sumendi levandi et recipiendi Et similiter de omnibus bonis et mercimoniis quae per nostros subditos coloniarum ductores negotiatores et navigatores de dicta provincia Novae Scotiae ad quaevis nostra dominia aut alia quaevis loca exportabuntur vel a nostris regnis et aliis locis ad dictam Novam Scotiam importabuntur ultra et supra dictam summam nobis destinata[m] quinque libras de centum Et de bonis et mercimoniis omnium extraneorum aliorumque sub nostra obedientia minime existentium quae vel de dicta provincia Novae Scotiae exportabuntur vel ad eandem importabuntur ultra et supra dictam summam nobis destinata[m] decem libras de centum dicti Domini Willielmi suorumque praedictorum propriis usibus per tales ministros officarios vel subditos eorumve deputatos aut factores quos ipsi ad hunc effectum constituent et designabunt levandi sumendi ac recipiendi Et pro meliori dicti Domini Willielmi suorumque praedictorum aliorumque omnium dictorum nostrorum subditorum qui dictam Novam Scotiam inhabitare vel ibidem mercimonia exercere voluerint securitate et commoditate et generaliter omnium aliorum qui nostrae auctoritati et potestati sese subdere non gravabuntur nobis visum est volumusque quod licitum erit dicto Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis unum vel plura munimina propugnacula castella loca fortia specula armamentaria *lie blokhous* aliaque aedificia cum portubus et navium stationibus aedificare vel aedificari causare unam navibus bellicis easdemque pro defensione dictorum locorum applicare sicuti dicto Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis pro dicto conamine perficiendo necessarium videbitur proque ipsorum defensione militum catervas ibidem stabilire praeter praedicta supramentionata et generaliter omnia facere quae pro conquestu augmentatione populi inhabitatione preservatione et gubernatione dictae Novae Scotiae ejusdemque terrarum et territorii infra omnes hujusmodi limites pertinentias et dependentias sub nostro nomine et auctoritate quodcumque nos si personaliter essemus praesentes facere potuimus licet casus specialem et strictum magis ordinem quam in hac praesenti carta nostra praescribitur requirat cui mandato volumus et ordinamus strictissimeque praecipimus omnibus nostris justiciariis officiariis et subditis ad loca illa sese conferentibus ut sese applicent dictoque Domino Wil-



lielmo suisque praedictis in omnibus et singulis supramentionatis earum substantiis et dependentiis intendant et obediant eisque in earum executione in omnibus adeo sint obedientes ut nobis cujus personam representat esse deberet sub poena disobedientiae et rebellionis DECLARAMUS insuper per praesentis cartae nostrae tenorem omnibus Christianis regibus principibus et statibus quod si aliquis vel aliqui qui imposterum de dictis coloniis vel de earum aliqua sit in provincia Novae Scotiae predicta vel aliqui alii sub eorum licentia et mandato quovis tempore futuro piraticam exercentes per mare vel terram bona alicujus abstulerint vel aliquod injustum aut indebitum hostiliter contra aliquos nostros nostrorumve haeredum aut successorum seu aliorum regum principum gubernatorum aut statuum in foedere nobiscum existentium subditos quod tali injuria sic oblata aut justa querela desuper mota per aliquem regem principem gubernatorem statum vel eorum subditos predictos nos nostri haeredes et successores publicas proclamationes fieri curabimus in aliqua parte dicti regni nostri Scotiae ad hunc effectum magis commoda ut dicti pirata vel piratae qui tales rapinas committent stato tempore per prefatas proclamationes limitando plenarie restituant quaecunque bona sic ablata et pro dictis injuriis omnimodo satisfaciant ita ut dicti principes alique sic conquirentes satisfactos se esse reputent et quod si talium facinorum commissores neque satisfactionem condignam facient nec fieri infra tempus limitandum curabunt quod tunc is vel ii qui tales rapinas commiserint neque sunt nec imposterum sub nostra obedientia et protectione erunt quodque licitum et legitimum erit omnibus principibus aliisque quibuscunque tales delinquentes eorumve quemlibet omni cum hostilitate prosequi et invadere Et LICET neminem nobilem et generosum de patria hac sine licentia nostra discedere statutum sit nihilominus volumus quod hoc praesens nostrum diploma sufficiens erit licentia et warrantum omnibus qui se huic itinere committent nisi laesaemajestatis sint rei aut aliquo alio speciali mandato sint inhibiti atque per praesentis cartae tenorem declaramus volumusque quod nemo patria hac discedere permittatur et ad dictam regionem Novae Scotiae tendere nisi qui juramentum nostrae suprematatis primum susceperint ad quem effectum nos tenore praesentis cartae nostrae dicto Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis vel eorum conservatoribus et deputatis idem hoc juramentum omnibus personis versus illas terras in ea colonia sese conferentibus requirere et exhibere plenariam potestatem et auctoritatem damus et concedimus PRAETEREA nos cum avisamento et consensu praedicto pro nobis et successoribus nostris declaramus decernimus et ordinamus quod omnes nostri subditi qui ad dictam Novam Scotiam proficiscuntur aut eam incolent eorumque omnes liberi et posteritas qui ibi nasci contigerint alique omnes ibidem periclitantes habebunt et possidebunt omnes libertates immunitates et privilegia liberorum et naturalium subditorum regni nostri Scotiae aut aliorum nostrorum dominiorum sicuti

ibidem nati fuissent INSUPER nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris damus et concedimus dicto Domino Willielmo suisque praedictis liberam potestatem stabiliendi et eudere causandi monetam pro commercio liberiori inhabitantium dictae provinciae cuiusvis metalli quomodo et qua forma voluerint et easdem praescribent Atque etiam si quae quaestiones aut dubia super interpretatione et constructione alicujus clausulae in hac praesenti carta nostra contentae occurrent ea omnia sumentur et interpretabuntur in amplissima forma et in favorem dicti Domini Willielmi suorumque praedictorum PRAETEREA nos ex nostra certa scientia proprio motu autoritate et potestate regali fecimus univimus annexavimus ereximus creavimus et incorporavimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae facimus univimus annexamus erigimus creamus et incorporamus totam et integram dictam provinciam et terras Novae Scotiae cum omnibus earundem limitibus et maribus in unum integrum et liberum dominium et baroniam per praedictum nomen NOVAE SCOTIAE omni tempore futuro appellandum Volumusque et concedimus ac pro nobis nostrisque successoribus decernimus et ordinamus quod unica sasina nunc per dictum Dominum Willielmum suosque praedictos omni tempore affuturo modo subsequente sumenda stabit et sufficiens erit sasina pro tota dicta regione cum omnibus partibus pendiculis privilegiis casualitatibus et immunitatibus ejusdem supramentionatis absque aliqua alia speciali aut particulari sasina per ipsum suosque praedictos apud aliquam aliam partem capienda penes quam sasinam omniaque quae inde sequuta sunt aut sequi possunt nos cum avisamento et consensu praescripto pro nobis et successoribus nostris dispensavimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae modo subtextu mentionato dispensamus imperpetuum TENENDAM ET HABENDAM totam et integram dictam regionem et dominium Novae Scotiae cum omnibus ejusdem limitibus infra praedicta maria cunctisque aliis privilegiis libertatibus immunitatibus casualitatibus aliisque supra expressis praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander haeredibus suis et assignatis de nobis et successoribus nostris in feodo haereditate libero dominio libera baronia et regalitate imperpetuum modo supra mentionato per omnes rectas metas et limites suos prout jacent in longitudine et latitudine in domibus aedificiis aedificatis et aedificandis boscis planis moris marresis viis semitis aquis stagnis rivolis pratis pascuis et pasturis molendinis multuris et eorum sequelis aucupationibus venationibus piscationibus petariis turbariis carbonibus carbonariis cuniculis cuniculariis columbis columbariis fabrilibus brasinis brueriis et genestis silvis nemoribus et virgultis lignis tignis lapideis lapide et calce cum curiis et earni exitibus herczeldis amerciamentis bluiduitis et mulierum merchetis cum communi pastura liberoque introitu et exitu cum furca fossa sok sake thoile theme vert venisoun infangtheiff outfangtheiff pit et gallows ac cum omnibus aliis et singulis libertatibus commoditatibus proficuis asiamentis ac justis suis pertinentiis quibuscunque tam non nominatis

quam nominatis tam subtus terra quam supra terram procul et prope ad praedictum dominium baroniam et regalitatem spectantibus seu juste spectare valentibus quomodolibet in futurum libere quiete plenarie integre honorifice bene et in pace sine ulla revocatione contradictione impedimento aut obstaculo quocunque REDDENDO inde annuatim dictus Dominus Willielmus Alexander suiue praedicti nobis nostrisque haeredibus et successoribus unum denarium monetae regni nostri Scotiae super fundo dictarum terrarum et provinciae Novae Scotiae ad festum Nativitatis Christi nomine albae firmæ si petatur tantum Et quia tentione dictarum terrarum et provinciae Novae Scotiae in alba firma ut praedicitur deficiente tempestivo et legitimo introitu cujusvis haeredis vel haeredum dicti Domini Willielmi sibi succedentium quod difficulter per ipsos praestari potest ob longinquam distantiam ab hoc regno nostro eadem terrae et provincia ratione non-introitus in manibus nostris nostrorumve successorum devenient usque ad legitimum legitimi haeredis introitum et nos nolentes dictas terras et regionem quovis tempore in non-introitu cadere neque dictum Dominum Willielmum suosque praedictos beneficiis et proficiis ejusdem eatenus frustrari idcirco nos cum avisamento praedicto cum dicto non-introitu quandocunque contigerit dispensavimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae pro nobis et successoribus nostris dispensamus ac etiam renunciavimus et exoneravimus tenoreque ejusdem cartae nostrae cum consensu praedicto renunciamus et exoneramus dictum Dominum Willielmum suosque praedictos de prefato non-introitu dictae provinciae et regionis cum omnibus beneficio et commoditate earundem firmis proficiis censibus et devoriis hujusmodi cum omnibus quae desuper sequi possunt quandocunque in manibus nostris devenient aut ratione non-introitus cadent Proviso tamen quod dictus Dominus Willielmus suiue haeredes et assignati infra spatium septem annorum post decessum et obitum suorum praedecessorum aut introitum ad possessionem dictarum terrarum aliorumque praedictorum per ipsos vel eorum legitimos procuratores ad hunc effectum potestatem habentes nobis nostrisque successoribus homagium faciant et dictum dominium terras et baroniam aliaque praedicta adeant et per nos recipientur secundum leges et statuta dicti regni nostri Scotiae In quocunque casu haeredes et assignati dicti Domini Willielmi Alexander non obstante praedicto non-introitu gaudebunt et possidebunt omnes et singulas praedictas terras regionem et dominium Novae Scotiae cum omnibus et singulis proficiis commoditatibus beneficiis privilegiis et libertatibus earundem ac si dictus non-introitus non fuisset vel ac si in non-introitum nunquam cecidissent QUAEQUIDEM terrae regio et dominium Novae Scotiae tam terra firma quam insulae infra omnes et singulas dictas bondas et maria earundem cum silvis piscationibus tam in aquis salsis quam dulcibus tam piscium regalium quam aliorum cum margaritis praeciosis lapidibus venis mineralibus regiis auri et argenti aliis mineralibus ferri chalybis

plumbi cupri aeris stanni orichalei aliisque quibuscunque ac omnibus privilegiis libertatibus immunitatibus praerogativis officiis et jurisdictionibus aliisque specialiter et generaliter supra-recitatis perprius ad dictum Dominum Willielmum Alexander suosque haeredes et assignatos pertinuerunt et per ipsum suosque procuratores suo nomine in manibus nostris debite et legitime resignatae fuerunt et hoc pro novo nostro haereditario infeofamento earundem in favorem dicti Domini Willielmi suorumve haeredum et assignatorum praedictorum in debita et competenti forma ut congruit concedendo TENNDARUM ut dictum est cum dispensatione non-introitus modo praescripto cum contigerit INSUPER nos cum avisamento praescripto pro bono fidei et gratuito servitio nobis per dictum Dominum Willielmum Alexander praestito et impenso et respectu habito magnarum et multarum expensarum et sumptuum conferendarum et impendendarum in plantatione dictarum bondarum domini et regionis Novae Scotiae et earundem sub nostra obedientia reductione aliisque gravibus et causis onerosis DE NOVO dedimus concessimus et disposuimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae damus concedimus et disponimus praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque haeredibus et assignatis haereditarie Omnes et singulas praedictas terras dominium et regionem Novae Scotiae unacum omnibus et singulis castellis turribus fortaliciis manerierum locis domibus aedificiis exstructis et extruendis hortis pomariis plantatis et plantandis toftis croftis pratis pascuis sylvis virgultis molendinis multuris terris molendinariis piscationibus tam rubrorum quam alborum piscium salmonum piscium tam magnorum quam minorum tam in aquis salsis quam dulcibus unacum omnibus et singulis decimis garbalibus earundem inclusis tam magnis quam minutis cum advocacione donatione beneficiorum ecclesiarum et capellaniarum et juribus patronatuum earundem annexis connexis dependentiis tenentibus tenandriis et liberetenentium servitiis earundem Unacum omnibus et singulis praeciosis lapidibus gemmis cristallo alumine corallio et aliis cum omnibus et singulis mineralibus venis et lapideis earundem tam metallorum et mineralium regalium et regionum auri et argenti infra dictas bondas et dominium Novae Scotiae quam aliorum mineralium ferri chalybis stanni plumbi cupri aeris orichalei aliorumque mineralium quorumcunque cum omnibus et singulis partibus pendiculis pertinentiis privilegiis libertatibus et immunitatibus omnium et singularum praedictarum terrarum domini et regionis Novae Scotiae Cum plena potestate et privilegio dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander haeredibus suis et assignatis tentandi et investigandi fodiendi et scrutandi fundum pro eisdem et extrahendi eadem purgandi et repurgandi purificandi eadem utendi convertendi ac suis propriis usibus applicandi (reservata solummodo nobis nostrisque successoribus decima parte regalium metallorum vulgo appellatorum *the ure* auri et argenti inveniendorum et extrahendorum imposterum de dictis terris et regione) et reliqua dictorum metallorum mineralium praeciosorum lapidum

gemmarum ac aliorum quorumcunque dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque haeredibus et assignatis pertinebunt cum ipsis perpetuo remanenda eorumque propriis usibus convertenda cum omnibus proficuis et devoriis earundem Cum potestate dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque haeredibus et assignatis condendi extruendi et erigendi in et infra omnes bondas dictae regionis sicuti iis videbitur expediens civitates liberos burgos baroniae villas villulas sinus portus stationes navium et designandi nundinas et macella tam in villis quam extra et imponendi levandi et recipiendi omnes et quascunque tolontias custumas anchoragia aliasque devorias earundem civitatum burgorum baroniae villarum villularum nundinarum macellorum liberorum portuum sinuum navium stationum cum omnibus et singulis casualitatibus proficuis et devoriis quibuscunque easdem civitates et burgos adornandi tam infra burgos quam extra cum sufficientibus et habilibus magistratibus pacis iusticiariis praepositis ballivis senioribus constabulariis aliisque officariis civibus burgensibus liberis et manufactoribus artificibus omnium generum cum decanis ipsorum aliisque ad hoc requisitis Cum plenaria potestate privilegio et libertate iis eorumve liberis civibus et burgensibus vendendi vinum et ceram salmones haleces aliaque stapuli bona et mercimonia tam magna quam minuta et extruendi ecclesias capellas xenodochia *lie hospitallis and maisoun dieuis* cruces forales campanilia campanas aliaque omnia ornamenta ordinaria eisdem spectantia et plantandi et sufficienter providendi easdem ecclesias cum sufficientibus doctoribus praedicatoribus pastoribus et ministris Et similiter erigendi fundandi et extruendi scholas triviales collegia et universitates sufficienter provisae cum habilibus et sufficientibus magistris rectoribus regentibus professoribus omnium scientiarum literarum linguarum et sermonum et providendi pro sufficiente alimento stipendiis et victu pro eisdem ad hunc effectum ac etiam erigendi praelatos archiepiscopos episcopos rectores et vicarios parochiarum et ecclesiarum parochialium et distribuendi et dividendi omnes praedictas bondas dictae regionis in diversis et distinctis vicecomitatibus provinciis et parochiis pro meliori provisione ecclesiarum et ministerii divisione vicecomitatum et omni alia civili politica Et similiter fundandi erigendi et instituendi senatum iusticiae loca et iusticiae collegia consilii et sessionis senatores earundem membra pro iusticiae administratione infra dictam regionem aliaque iusticiae et iudicaturae loca praeterea erigendi et designandi tam secreta et privata consilia et sessiones pro publico bono et commodo dictae regionis et dandi et concedendi titulos honores et dignitates membris earundem et creandi clericos et earundem membra et designandi sigilla et registra cum ipsorum custodibus ac etiam erigendi et instituendi officarios status cancellarium thesaurarium computorum rotulorem collectorem secretarium advocatum vel actornatum generalem clericum vel clericos registri et rotulorum custodes iusticiariae clericeum directorem vel directores cancellariae



conservatorem vel conservatores privilegiorum dictae regionis advocatos procuratores causarumque patronos earundemque solicitatores et agentes aliaque membra necessaria Et similiter convocandi congregandi et constituendi conventiones et congregationes ecclesiasticorum praelatorum tam generales synodales vel provinciales conventiones quam alias pro politia et disciplina ecclesiastica et authorizandi ratificandi et confirmandi easdem conventiones consilia et congregationes cum actis statutis et decretis inibi conclusis pro eorundem meliori autoritate **PRAETEREA** fecimus constituimus et ordinavimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae facimus constituimus et ordinamus dictum Dominum Willielmum Alexander suosque haeredes et assignatos nostros nostrorumve haeredum et successorum locumtenentes generales ad repraesentandum nostram regalem personam tam per mare quam terram totius et integrae dictae regionis et domini Novae Scotiae tam durante spatio quo ibi remanebit quam in itinere ipsius vel eorum ad dictam regionem vel ab eadem et post ipsorum reditum continuo sine intervallo temporis aut loci Excludendo omnes alios vel per mare vel per terram ab usurpatione hujus contrarii vel ab acclamatione alicujus juris beneficii autoritatis et interesse infra dictas bondas et dominium Novae Scotiae vel alicujus judicaturae aut jurisdictionis eatenus virtute alicujus praecedentis aut subsequentis juris aut tituli cujuscunque Et cum speciali potestate dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque praedictis gubernandi regendi puniendi et condonandi omnes nostros subditos aliosque dictarum bondarum et regionis Novae Scotiae inhabitantes aut ibi proficiscentes pacis aut legum dictae regionis transgressores ac faciendi sancienti et stabiliendi ibidem leges tam civiles quam criminales cum legibus justiciariae admiralitatis senescallatus regalitatis et vicecomitatus pro eorum beneplacito modo eadem leges tam conformes sint legibus Scotiae quam convenienter fieri potest respectu habito circumstantiarum loci regionis personarum et qualitatum earundem Et similiter designandi gubernatores imperatores et duces omnium et singularum praedictarum civitatum burgorum portuum navium stationum et sinuum et capitaneos etiam castrorum fortalitiorum et propugnaculorum tam per mare et prope littus quam per terram bene et sufficienter munitas instructas et fortificatas militum turmis et copiis pro manutentione defensione et praeservatione earundem et repulsione omnium tam domesticarum quam extranearum invasionum earundem et convocandi congregandi et convenire faciendi omnes inhabitantes dictae regionis ad effectum praescriptum omnibus occasionibus necessariis ac pro repulsione et resistantia omnium aliarum virium et violentiarum quarumcunque Et pro meliori fortificatione dicti domini et regionis Novae Scotiae cum potestate dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque praedictis transportandi de dicto regno aliisve bondis convenientibus omnia genera munitionis magna et minuta tormenta majora media vulgo *cannonis demi-cannonis zellingis*

*falconis* aeris et ferri scopetos atque alia instrumenta et belli machinas cum scopetis minoribus vulgo *muskettis hagbuttis half-haggis* bombardis vulgo *pistolettis* pulvere globulis aliisque necessariis victualibus et armis tam offensivis quam defensivis et gerendi et utendi talibus armis tam infra dictam regionem Novæ Scotiæ quam in eorum transitu et cursu vel ad easdem terras vel ab eisdem cum eorum comitibus sociis et dependentibus Nos etiam cum avisamento prædicto fecimus constituimus et ordinavimus tenoreque præsentis cartæ nostræ facimus constituimus et ordinamus dictum Dominum Willielmum Alexander suosque hæredes et assignatos hæreditarie nostros justiciarios generales in omnibus causis criminalibus infra dictam regionem et dominium Novæ Scotiæ magnum admirallum et Dominum regalitatis et admiralitatis infra dictam regionem hæreditarios etiam senescallos ejusdem omniumque et singularum regalitatum hujusmodi Cum potestate sibi suisque hæredibus et assignatis utendi exereendi et gaudendi omnibus et singulis præfatis jurisdictionibus judicaturis et officiis cum omnibus et singulis privilegiis prærogativis immunitatibus et casualitatibus earundem similiter et adeo libere quam aliquis alius justiciarius vel justiciarii generales senescalli admiralii vicecomites aut domini regalitatis habuerunt vel habere possunt aut possidere et gaudere iisdem jurisdictionibus judicaturis officiis dignitatibus et prærogativis in aliquibus nostris regnis bondis et dominiis nostris quibuscunque Cum potestate dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque hæredibus et assignatis constituendi eligendi nominandi et creandi clericos officarios serjandos adjudicatores omniaque alia curiæ membra omnium et singularum præfatarum judicaturarum et jurisdictionum respective cum omnibus feodis devoriis et casualitatibus eisdem spectantibus prout iis videbitur expediens sine præjudicio omnimodo omnium aliorum infeofamentorum jurium vel dispositionum per nos nostrosve prædecessores cuicunque personæ vel quibuscunque personis qui participes sunt vel erunt dictæ plantationis Novæ Scotiæ procedentium supra resignationem dicti Domini Willielmi Alexander solummodo et non aliter de quibuscunque partibus aut portionibus dictæ regionis et domini Novæ Scotiæ cum privilegiis et immunitatibus in ipsorum infeofamentis mentionatis Et quum ratione longi intervalli et distantiae dictæ regionis et domini Novæ Scotiæ a dicto antiquo regno nostro Scotiæ et quod eadem regio neque facile neque commode nisi æstatis tempore peti potest quodque eadem regio publicis tabellionibus et notariis requisitis pro sasinis sumendis omnino est destituta adeo ut sasina commode super fundum dictæ regionis omnibus temporibus capi non potest atque etiam respectu habito magnorum et multifariorum incommodorum quæ cadere possunt in defectu tempestivæ sasinae sumendæ super hoc præsens diploma et super alias cartas et similia infeofamenta concessa et concedenda de prædictis terris et dominio Novæ Scotiæ vel aliqua earundem parte igitur ut



praesens haec nostra carta magis sit efficax et ut sasina desuper magis commode capi possit necessarium est ut sasina sumatur omnium et singularum praedictarum terrarum dictae regionis et domini Novae Scotiae infra dictum regnum nostrum Scotiae et super funda et terras ejusdem in magis eminente ejusdem loco quod nec convenienter nec legitime fieri potest sine expressa unione dictae regionis et domini Novae Scotiae dicto regno Scotiae Quocirea et pro facilitate commodo et convenientia antedictae sasinae nos enim avisamento praedicto annexavimus univimus et incorporavimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae univimus annexamus et incorporamus dicto regno nostro Scotiae totam et integram praedictam regionem et dominium Novae Scotiae cum decimis et decimis garbalibus earundem inclusis et omnibus et singulis partibus pertinentiis privilegiis jurisdictionibus et libertatibus earundem aliisque generaliter et specialiter supra mentionatis Et per praesentis cartae nostrae tenorem volumus declaramus decernimus et ordinamus quod unica sasina nunc capienda apud castellum nostrum de Edinburt tanquam maxime eminentem et principalem locum dicti regni nostri Scotiae de omnibus et singulis dictis terris regione et dominio Novae Scotiae vel aliqua earundem parte cum decimis et decimis garbalibus earundem respective inclusis est et erit sufficiens sasina pro totis et integris praedictis terris regione et dominio Novae Scotiae cum decimis et decimis garbalibus earundem inclusis vel aliqua earundem parte terrarum et regionis prescriptarum et omnibus privilegiis jurisdictionibus et libertatibus ejusdem respective aliisque specialiter et generaliter supramentionatis non obstante quod eadem terre regio et dominium Novae Scotiae longe distent et discontigue jaceant a dicto regno nostro Scotiae penes quod nos enim avisamento et consensu praedicto dispensavimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae dispensamus in perpetuum sine praedicio et derogatione omnimodo dicti privilegii et praerogativae praefato Domino Willicmo Alexander suisque haeredibus et assignatis concessi pro confectione et stabilimento legum actorum et constitutionum omnium et singularum praedictarum terrarum regionis et domini Novae Scotiae tam per mare quam per terram Et per praesentis cartae nostrae tenorem declaramus quod non obstante dicta unione (quae concedi solummodo declaratur pro commoditate et convenientia sasinae) eadem regio et dominium Novae Scotiae judicabitur regetur et gubernabitur per leges et constitutiones factas fiendas constituendas et stabiendas per dictum Dominum Willicmum Alexander suosque haeredes et assignatos spectantes ad dictam regionem et dominium Novae Scotiae similiter et adeo libere in eo respectu sicuti eadem unio nunquam fuisset facta nec catenus concessa Et praeterea non obstante praedicta unione licitum erit praedicto Domino Willicmo Alexander suisque haeredibus et assignatis dare concedere et disponere aliquas partes vel portiones dictarum terrarum regionis et domini Novae Scotiae iis haereditarie spectantes ad et in favorem quarumcunque personarum eorum haeredum et assigna-

torum hæreditarie eum decimis et decimis garbalibus earundem inclusis (modo nostri sint subditi) tenendas de dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander vel de nobis et nostris successoribus vel in alba firma feudifirma vel warda et relevio pro eorum beneplacito et intitulare et denominare easdem partes et portiones quibuscunque stilibus titulis et designationibus iis visum fuerit aut in libito et optione dicti Domini Willielmi suorumque prædictorum Quaequidem infeofamenta et dispositiones per nos nostrosve successores libere sine aliqua compositione propterea solvenda approbabuntur et confirmabuntur Insuper nos nostrique successores quascunque resignationes per dictum Dominum Willielmum Alexander suosque hæredes et assignatos fiendas de totis et integris præfatis terris et dominio Novae Scotiae vel alicujus earundem partis in manibus nostris nostrorumque successorum et commissionariorum prædictorum cum decimis et decimis garbalibus earundem inclusis aliisque generaliter et specialiter supra mentionatis recipiemus ad et in favorem cujuscunque personae aut quarumcunque personarum (modo nostri sint subditi et sub nostra obedientia vivant et desuper infeofamenta expedient) tenendis in libera alba firma de nobis hæreditibus et successoribus nostris modo supra mentionato libere sine ulla compositione QUASQUIDEM terras regionem et dominium Novae Scotiae cum decimis garbalibus earundem inclusis omnesque et singulas partes pendiculas et pertinentias privilegia jurisdictiones prærogativas et libertates earundem aliaque specialiter et generaliter supra mentionata unacum omni jure titulo interesse jurisclameo tam petitorio quam possessorio quae nos nostrive prædecessores aut successores habuimus habemus vel quovismodo habere clamare aut prætere de potuimus ad easdem vel aliquam earundem partem aut ad census firmas proficua et devorias earundem de quibuscunque annis aut terminis præteritis pro quacunque causa vel occasione nos eum avisamento prædicto pro rationibus supra mentionatis DE NOVO damus concedimus et disponimus prædicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque hæreditibus et assignatis hæreditarie imperpetuum Renunciando et exonerando iisdem simpliciter eum omni actione et instantia eatenus competenti ad et in favorem dicti Domini Willielmi Alexander suorumque hæredum et assignatorum tam pro non solutione devoriarum in ipsorum originalibus infeofamentis contentarum quam pro non præstatione debiti homagii eisdem conformiter aut pro non perimptione alicujus puncti dicti originalis infeofamenti aut pro commissione alicujus culpae aut facti omissionis vel commissionis iisdem præjudiciabili et unde idem originale infeofamentum legitime impugnari aut in questionem duci imposterum quovismodo possit Aequietando et remittendo iisdem simpliciter eum omni titulo actione instantia et interesse eatenus competenti aut quae nobis nostrisque hæreditibus et successoribus competere potest Renunciando iisdem simpliciter juri liti et causae eum pacto de non petendo ac eum supplemento omnium defectuum tam non nominatorum quam nomina-

torum quae nos tanquam pro expressis in hac praesenti carta nostra haberi volumus TENENDAS in libera alba firma ut dictum est et dispensando cum non-introitu quando-cunque contigerit modo praedicto INSUPER nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris cum avisamento praedicto damus concedimus et committimus potestatem dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque haeredibus et assignatis habendi et legitime stabiliendi et eudere causandi monetam currentem in dicta regione et dominio Novae Scotiae et inter inhabitantes ejusdem pro faciliori commercii et pactionum commodo talis metalli formae et modi sicuti ipsi designabunt aut constituent et ad hunc effectum damus concedimus et committimus iis eorumve haeredibus et assignatis dictae regionis locumtenentibus privilegia monetam eudendi cum instrumentis ferreis et officariis ad hunc effectum necessariis Praeterea nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris cum avisamento praedicto dedimus concessimus ratificavimus et confirmavimus ac per praesentis cartae nostrae tenorem damus concedimus ratificamus et confirmamus dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque haeredibus et assignatis omnia loca privilegia praerogativas praecipientias et praecedentias quaeunque data concessa et reservata vel danda concedenda et reservanda dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque haeredibus et assignatis ejusque successoribus locumtenentibus dictae regionis et domini Novae Scotiae per equites auratos baronetos reliquosque portionarios et consortes dictae plantationis adeo ut dictus Dominus Willielmus Alexander suiique haeredes masculi de corpore suo descendentes tanquam locumtenentes praedicti sument et sumere possunt locum praerogativum praecipientiam et praecedentiam tam ante omnes armigeros barones minores et generosos vulgo *squyris lairdis and gentilmen* dicti regni nostri Scotiae quam ante omnes praedictos equites auratos baronetos ejusdem regni nostri omnesque alios ante quos dicti equites aurati baronetti locum et praecedentiam virtute privilegii dignitatis iis concessi habere possunt pro ejus plantationis et coloniae Novae Scotiae adjumento et ejus praecipue respectu dicti equites aurati baronetti cum ipsorum statu et dignitate cum avisamento praedicto in dicto regno nostro Scotiae creati fuerant tanquam indicium speciale nostri favoris super tales generosos et honesto loco natos collati praedictae plantationis et coloniae particeps cum hac expressa provisione omnimodo quod numerus praefatorum baronettorum nunquam excedat centum et quinquaginta DENIQUE nos cum avisamento praedicto pro nobis haeredibus et successoribus nostris volumus decernimus et ordinamus quod hoc nostrum diploma et infeofamentum ratificari approbari et confirmari cum omnibus ejusdem contentis in proximo nostro parlamento regni nostri Scotiae et ut habeat vim robor et efficaciam acti statuti et decreti ejusdem supremae judicaturae penes quod nos pro nobis nostrisque successoribus declaramus et ordinamus praesentem hanc nostram cartam dominis articulorum dicti nostri parlamenti pro ratificatione et confirmatione ejusdem

modo praescripto sufficiens fore warrantum    INSUPER dilectis nostris  
et vestrum cuilibet conjunctim  
et divisim vicecomitibus nostris in hac parte specialiter constitutis salutem    Vobis  
praecipimus et mandamus quatenus praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander vel suo  
certo actornato latori praesentium statum et sasinam haereditariam pariter et pos-  
sessionem corporalem actuaalem et realem totarum et integrarum praedictarum  
terrarum regionis et domini Novae Seotiae cum omnibus et singulis partibus pen-  
diculis privilegiis commoditatibus immunitatibus aliisque tam generaliter quam  
particulariter superius expressatis apud dictum castrum nostrum de Edinburt  
tradatis et deliberetis sine dilatione et hoc nullo modo omittatis    Ad quod faciendum  
vobis et vestrum cuilibet conjunctim et divisim vicecomitibus nostris in hac parte  
antedictis nostram plenariam et irrevocabilem tenore praesentis cartae nostrae com-  
mittimus potestatem    Quamquidem sasinam nos cum avisamento praedicto pro nobis  
nostrisque successoribus tenore praesentis cartae nostrae volumus declaramus et  
ordinamus tam fore legitimam et sufficientem quam si praecepta sasinae separatim  
et ordinarie e nostra cancellaria ad eum effectum super dicta nostra carta fuissent  
directa penes quam nos cum avisamento praedicto pro nobis haeredibus et succe-  
ssoribus nostris dispensavimus ac per praesentis cartae nostrae tenorem dispensamus  
imperpetuum    IN CUJUS REI testimonium huic praesenti cartae nostrae magnum  
sigillum nostrum apponi praecepimus    Testibus predilectis nostris consanguineis et  
consiliariis Jacobo marchione de Hammiltoun comite Arranio et Cambridge domino  
Aven et Innerdaill &c. Georgio Mariscalli comite domino Keyth &c. regni nostri  
mariscallo predilecto nostro consiliario Domino Georgio Hay de Kynfawnis milite  
nostro cancellario predilecto nostro consanguineo et consiliario Thoma comite de  
Melros domino Byning &c. nostro secretario dilectis nostris familiaribus consiliariis  
Dominis Ricardo Cokburne de Clerkingtoun nostri secreti sigilli custode Joanne  
Hamiltoun de Magdalenis nostrorum rotulorum registri ac consilii clerico Georgio  
Elphingstoun de Blythiswod nostrae justiciariae clerico et Joanne Scott de Scot-  
tistarvett nostrae cancellariae directore militibus    Apud aulam nostram de Otlandis  
duodecimo die mensis Julii anno Domini millesimo sexcentesimo vigesimo quinto et  
regni nostri primo.

CARTA WILLELMI ALEXANDER DE MENSTRIE MILITIS  
DE DOMINIO CANADAE &c. 2 FEBRUarii 1628.

CAROLUS Dei Gratia Magne Britannie Francie et Hibernie Rex Fideique Defensor omnibus probis hominibus totius terre seu clericis et laicis salutem SCIATIS quia nos perfecte diligentes quo pacto fidelis ac praedilectus noster consiliarius Dominus Willielmus Alexander de Menstrie miles noster principalis secretarius pro regno nostro Scotiae ac haereditarius locumtenens regionis et domini nostri Novae Scotiae in America variis suis susceptis navium machinarum bellicarum tormentorum et munitionum provisione deductione coloniarum necnon in dicta regione perspicienda peragrande et possidenda magnos sumptus et impensas sustinuerit et quo melius ipse ceterique nostri subditi dictae regionis inhabitationem secum experturi corroborarentur pro ulteriore nostrorum in istis partibus dominiorum dilatatione Christianae religionis inibi propagatione viaeque seu transitus sperabili revelatione et detectione ad ista maria quae Americae ab occidente incumbunt vulgo *lie South Sea* nuncupata unde magni istius fluminis seu sinus Canadae vel alicujus in eundem defluentis fluvii caput seu scaturigo non procul distare existimatur Ac quoniam ex specimine per dictum Dominum Willielmum in dictae regionis Novae Scotiae ad praefatum sinum et fluvium Canadam terminantis perspectione et peragratione hactenus exhibito spectata plantationis in istis partibus mitia ad propagationem dictae religionis magnumque antiqui regni nostri Scotiae decus et emolumentum tantum tendentia sibi stabilienda proposuit ex quo fieri potest ut dictae coloniae per ipsum suosque successores plantandae hac ope praefatam viam seu transitum ad dicta maria multum huc usque praegravibus considerationibus desideratum totiesque per varias personas susceptum processu temporis detegant Igitur ac pro dicti Domini Willielmi haeredum suorum assignatorum suorumque participum et associatorum ad ulteriorem in tali tantoque suscepto progressum flagrantioribus accendendis animis nos cum specialibus avisamento et consensu prefidelis et praedilecti nostri consanguinei et consilarii Joannis Comitis Marriae Domini Erskene et Gareoch magni nostri thesaurarii nostrorum computorum rotulitoris collectoris et thesaurarii novarumque nostrarum augmentationum regni nostri Scotiae fidelis et praedilecti nostri consilarii Archibaldi Domini Naper de Merchingstoun nostri in dictis officiis deputati ac reliquorum dominorum nostri

secreti consilii nostrorum commissionariorum dicti regni nostri Scotiae dedimus concessimus et disposuimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae damus concedimus et disponimus praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander haeredibus suis et assignatis haereditarie imperpetuum Omnes et singulas insulas infra sinum Canadae jacentes inter Novam Scotiam et Terram Novam ad ostium et introitum praedicti magni fluminis Canadae ubi decidit et intrat in dictum sinum (includendo inibi magnam insulam *Anticosti*) Necnon dedimus concessimus et disposuimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae damus concedimus et disponimus praenominato Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque praedictis omnes et singulas insulas infra dictum fluvium Canadam jacentes a dicto ostio et introitu ad caput usque primum ortum et scaturiginem ejusdem ubicunque sit aut lacum unde fluit (qui putatur esse versus magnum sinum Californiae a quibusdam Mare Vermeio nuncupatum) aut infra quosvis alios fluvios in dictum fluvium Canadam defluentes vel in quibuscunque lacubus aquis sive fretis per quae vel dictus magnus fluvius Canada vel aliqui alii dictorum fluviorum decurrunt aut in quibus exeunt Ac praeterea dedimus et concessimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae damus et concedimus praefato Domino Willielmo suisque antedictis quinquaginta leucas bondarum ab utroque latere antedicti fluvii Canadae a dicto ostio et introitu ad dictum caput fontem et scaturiginem ejusdem necnon ab utroque latere dictorum aliorum fluviorum in eundem defluentium ac etiam ab utroque latere dictorum lacuum fretorum seu aquarum per quas quilibet dictorum fluviorum decurrunt aut in quibus exeunt Et similiter dedimus et concessimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae damus et concedimus praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque praedictis totas et integras bondas et transitus tam in aquis quam in terra a praedicto capite fonte et scaturigine Canadae ubicunque sit aut a quocunque lacu unde labitur ad praefatum sinum Californiae quantacunque compta fuerit esse distantia cum quinquaginta leucis omnimodo ab utroque latere ejusdem transitus inter dictum caput Canadae et sinum Californiae et similiter omnes et singulas insulas infra eundem sinum Californiae jacentes ac etiam totas et integras terras et bondas eidem sinui ab occidente et austro adjacentes sive reperiuntur pars continentis sive terrae firmae sive insula (ut putatur esse) quae Californiae nomine vulgo nuncupatur et indigitatur Insuper dedimus et concessimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae damus et concedimus ac pro nobis et successoribus nostris cum avasamento et consensu praedicto pro perpetuo confirmamus praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander haeredibus suis et assignatis quibuscunque haereditarie omnes et singulas alias terras bondas lacus fluvios freta silvas forrestas aliaque per ipsum suosve successores eorum participes associatos aut alios eorum nomine seu potestatem ab his habentes quocunque tempore futuro invenienda conquerenda seu detegenda super utroque latere integrarum bondarum et transitus



antedictarum ab ostio et introitu dicti fluvii Canadae ubi in dictum sinum Canadae se exonerat ad dictum sinum Californiae aut insulas in maribus eidem adjacentibus quae per alios nostros subditos aut subditos alterius alicujus Christiani principis seu ordinum nobiscum in foedere et amicitia constitutorum hactenus realiter et actualiter possessa non sunt Cum plena et absoluta potestate ipsi dicto Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque praedictis (nullisque aliis) eorum factoribus servis et aliis eorum nomine colonias stabiliendi ac utendi commercio in praenominatis locis seu bondis vel qualibet earundem parte particulariter designata omnesque alios ab iisdem arcendi seu prohibendi necnon proportionem terrarum earundem cuicunque personae seu quibuscunque personis prout sibi commodum videbitur elocandi ac super iisdem terminis conditionibus restrictionibus et observationibus infra omnes praenominatas bondas sicut in Nova Scotia per quascunque literas patentes seu diplomata ipsi per quondam nostrum charissimum patrem vel nosmetipos concessas facere potest cum talibus etiam et tantis privilegiis libertatibus et immunitatibus in omnibus praedictis locis seu bondis insulis aliisque suprascriptis tam in mari aqua dulci quam in terra quales quantasque dictus Dominus Willielmus Alexander habet in Nova Scotia per priores suas literas patentes seu diplomata de Nova Scotia de data apud

Quaecquidem privilegia in dictis prioribus literis patentibus contenta et unumquodque eorum adco sufficientia et valida fore ordinamus ac si singula hic particulariter et sigillatim concessa et expressa fuissent de verbo in verbum ejusdem omnimodo roboris fortitudinis et efficaciae fore volentes penes quorum particularem hic non insertionem nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris dispensavimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae dispensamus imperpetuum Declarando etiam sicut nos cum avisamento et consensu praedicto ordinamus et declaramus pro nobis et successoribus nostris quod hae praesentes nostrae literae patentes seu diploma nullatenus erit praepjudiciabile nec derogativum quibuscunque juribus cartis seu diplomatis praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander suisve antedictis de aut super Nova Scotia quocunque tempore datam praesentium praecedente concessis aut alicui capiti clausulae articulo seu conditioni in iisdem expressis ac etiam sine praepjudicio prioris alicujus literae patens per nos antehac quibuscunque baronettis infra Scotiam de regione Novae Scotiae concessae seu concedendae quovis tempore futuro Prohibendo et vetando prout nos tenore praesentis cartae nostrae specialiter prohibemus et vetamus omnes et singulos nostros subditos cujuscunque gradus seu conditionis in quolibet nostrorum regnorum seu dominiorum ne ullam faciant plantationem nec ullo utantur commercio in dictis locis seu bondis sinibus fluviis lacubus insulis et fretis suprascriptis aut in aliqua earundem parte absque specialibus avisamento licentia et consensu praefati Domini Willielmi Alexander suorumve praedictorum ac cum speciali potestate dicto Domino Willielmo



Alexander suisque praedictis attachiandi arrestandi et deprehendendi omnes et singulas personas quae negotiari et commercio uti in aliqua dictorum locorum seu bondarum parte contra hanc prohibitionem inventae fuerint eorumque naves et bona confiscandi ac desuper in suos proprios usus pro libito disponendi absque ullo computo seu ratione de eisdem vel aliqua earundem parte reddenda quomodolibet omniaque alia adeo libere et large in omnibus intentionibus propositis et instructionibus faciendi infra totas et integras praenominatas bondas seu spatia sicuti praefatus Dominus Willielmus Alexander suiue praedicti infra dictam regionem Novae Scotiae seu dictum regnum nostrum Scotiae fecisse potuit seu facere potest virtute cujuslibet dictarum literarum patentium priorum cartarum seu diplomatum TENENDAS et HABENDAS totas et integras praenominatas terras spatia seu bondas insulas aliaque generaliter et particulariter expressa cum singulis suis privilegiis immunitatibus et commoditatibus quibuscunque generaliter et particulariter supramentionatis praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque praedictis de nobis et successoribus nostris de corona et regno nostro Scotiae in libera alba firma imperpetuum per omnes rectas metas antiquas suas et divisas prout jacent in longitudine et latitudine in domibus aedificiis boscis planis moris marresiiis viis semitis aquis stagnis rivolis pratis pascuis et pasturis molendinis multuris et eorum sequelis acupationibus venationibus piscationibus petariis turbariis carbonibus carbonariis cuniculis cuniculariis columbis columbariis fabrilibus brasinis brueriis et genistis silvis nemoribus et virgultis lignis tignis lapicidiis lapide et calce cum curiis et earum exitibus herezeldis bludevitis et mulierum merchetis cum communi pastura liberoque introitu et exitu ac cum omnibus aliis et singulis suis libertatibus commoditatibus proficuis asiamentis ac justis suis pertinentiis quibuscunque tam non nominatis quam nominatis tam subtus terra quam supra terram procul et prope ad praedictas terras cum pertinentiis spectantibus seu juste spectare valentibus quomodolibet in futurum libere quiete plenarie integre honorifice bene et in pace cum furca fossa sok sak thole thame wert wraik wair weth vennyssoun infangtheif outfangtheif pit et gallous sine aliquo impedimento revocatione contradictione aut obstaculo aliquali REDDENDO inde annuatim dictus Dominus Willielmus suiue praedicti nobis et successoribus nostris unum denarium monetae Scotiae super solo dictarum terrarum aut alicujus partis earundem ad festum Nativitatis Domini nomine albae firmae si petatur tantum Quasquidem totas et integras praenominatas terras spatia seu bondas insulas aliaque generaliter et particulariter supra expressa ut dictum est nos cum specialibus avisamento et consensu praedicto pro nobis et successoribus nostris ereximus et univimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae erigimus et unimus in unum integrum et liberum [dominium] DOMINIUM DE CANADA nuncupandum ad memoratum Dominum Willielmum Alexander suosque praedictos haereditarie spectans et pertinens imperpetuum NOBIS etiam tenore praesenti cartae nostrae gratiose

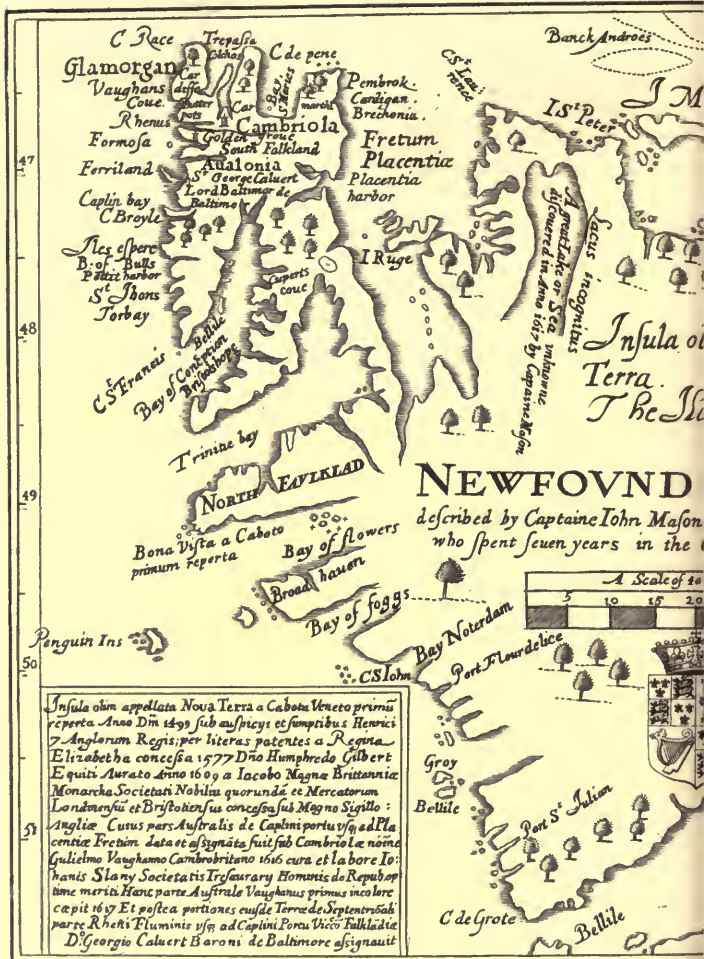
placet quod quodocunque dictus Dominus Willielmus Alexander suiue antedicti vel aliquis eorum hanc praesentem nostram cartam cum omnibus et singulis beneficialibus clausulis et conditionibus quae in dictis prioribus literis patentibus cartis seu diplomatibus de Nova Scotia renovari voluerit et desideraverit vel prout ipse sui antedicti vel eorum quilibet ex advocatorum consultatione aut speciali aliqua ulterioris seu certioris [citerioris ?] dictorum locorum seu bondarum fluviorum lacuum fretorum seu transituum aliorumque supra mentionatorum detectionis cognitione magis commodum et expediens videbitur tunc et in eo casu nos dictam cartam praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque antedictis in optima et amplissima quae comminisci poterit forma renovaturos et translaturum praemittimus in verbo principis Insuper nos tenore praesentis cartae nostrae cum avisamento et consensu praedicto decernimus declaramus et ordinamus quod sasina per dictum Dominum Willielmum Alexander suosve praedictos apud castrum nostrum de Edinburgh tanquam eminentissimum et principalem dicti regni nostri Scotiae locum aut super solo et fundo praefatarum terrarum bondarum et insularum vel cujuslibet earundem partis ad placitum et libitum ejusdem Domini Willielmi suorumque praedictorum capienda omni tempore futuro sufficiens erit pro totis et integris praenominatis terris bondis insulis aliisque supra specificatis aut aliqua parte seu portione earundem et quod haeredes praefati Domini Willielmi suorumque praedictorum in omnibus et singulis praenominatis terris bondis insulis aliisque praedictis vel per praecepta e cancellaria dicti regni nostri Scotiae aut cancellaria per dictum Dominum Willielmum suosque antedictos in praefata regione et dominio de Canada instituenda pro libito sasiantur aut etiam prout haeredes sui per dictas priores suas concessionem in Nova Scotia sasiri possunt penes quod nos cum avisamento et consensu praedicto pro nobis et successoribus nostris dispensavimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae dispensamus imperpetuum ac penes omnia et singula praenominata privilegia aliaque generaliter et particulariter supra mentionata Et praeterea fecimus et constituimus tenoreque praesentis cartae nostrae facimus et constituimus

et eorum quemlibet conjunctim et divisim ballivos nostros in hac parte dando et concedendo iis et eorum cuilibet nostram plenam potestatem et speciale warrantum statum et sasina haereditariam pariter et possessionem aetnalem realem et corporalem praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque antedictis vel suis certis actoribus hanc praesentem cartam nostram habentibus seu producentibus dandi concedendi et deliberandi de omnibus et singulis praenominatis terris bondis fluviis lacubus insulis fretis seu transitibus aliisque quibuscunque generaliter et particulariter supra expressis dictae regionis et domini de Canada apud dictum castrum nostrum de Edinburgh vel super solo et fundo cujuslibet partis praedictarum terrarum et bondarum seu locorum vel utroque modo ad placitum dicti Domini Willielmi Alexander suorumque praedictorum Mandando iisdem et eorum cuilibet quatenus visis

praesentibus indilate statum et sasinam haereditariam pariter et possessionem actualem realem et corporalem omnium et singularum praenominatarum terrarum locorum seu bondarum insularum fluviorum lacuum aliorumque praedictorum generaliter et particulariter supra expressorum praefato Domino Willielmo Alexander suisque praedictis vel suis certis actornatis hanc praesentem cartam nostram habentibus seu producentibus super qualibet parte fundi dictarum terrarum vel apud castrum nostrum de Edinburgh vel utroque modo prout ipsi suisque praedictis melius apparebit dent tradant et deliberent seu aliquis eorum det tradat et deliberet per terrae et lapidis deliberationem praefato Domino Willielmo suisque antedictis vel eorum actornatis hanc praesentem nostram cartam habentibus seu producentibus apud dictum castrum vel super solo et fundo dictarum terrarum aliorumque superscriptorum vel utroque modo pro libito dicti Domini Willielmi suorumque praedictorum Quamquidem sasinam ita per dictos nostros ballivos in hac parte praefato Domino Willielmo suisque antedictis vel eorum actornatis hanc praesentem cartam nostram habentibus seu producentibus tradendam nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris decernimus et ordinamus bonam legitimam validam et sufficientem fore in omni tempore futuro dispensando sicuti nos tenore praesentis cartae nostrae dispensamus penes omnia quae adversus eandem objici possunt sive in forma sive in effectu DENIQUE nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris cum avisamento et consensu praedicto volumus decernimus declaramus et ordinamus hanc praesentem cartam nostram cum omnibus et singulis privilegiis libertatibus clausulis articulis et conditionibus supradictis in proximo nostro parlamento regni nostri Scotiae seu quolibet alio ejusdem regni parlamento posthac tenendo ad libitum et placitum dicti Domini Willielmi Alexander suorumque praedictorum ratificandam approbandam et confirmandam roburque fortitudinem et efficaciam decreti ejusdem supremi fore habituram ad quod faciendum nos pro nobis et successoribus nostris volumus et declaramus eandem nostram cartam et clausulas inibi contentas sufficiens fore mandatum seu warrantum idem ita fieri et perfici promittentes in verbo regis IN CUJUS REI testimonium huic praesenti cartae nostrae magnum sigillum nostrum apponi praecepimus Testibus nostris consanguineis et consiliariis Jacobo marchione de Hammiltoun comite Aranie et Cantabrigie domino Aven et Innerdail Willielmo Mariscalli comite domino Keyth &c. regni nostri mariscallo Georgio vicecomite de Duplin domino Hay de Kinfauns nostro concellario Thoma comite de Hadingtoun domino Bynning et Byris &c. nostri secreti sigilli custode dilectis nostris familiaribus consiliariis Dominis Willielmo Alexander de Menstrie nostro secretario principali Jacobo Hammiltoun de Magdalenis nostrorum rotulorum registri ac consilii clerico Georgio Elphinstoun de Blythiswod nostrae justiciariae clerico et Joanne Scot de Scottistartvett militibus nostrae cancellariae direttore Apud regiam nostram de Quhythall secundo die mensis Februarii anno Domini millesimo sexcentesimo vigesimo octavo et regni nostri tertio.



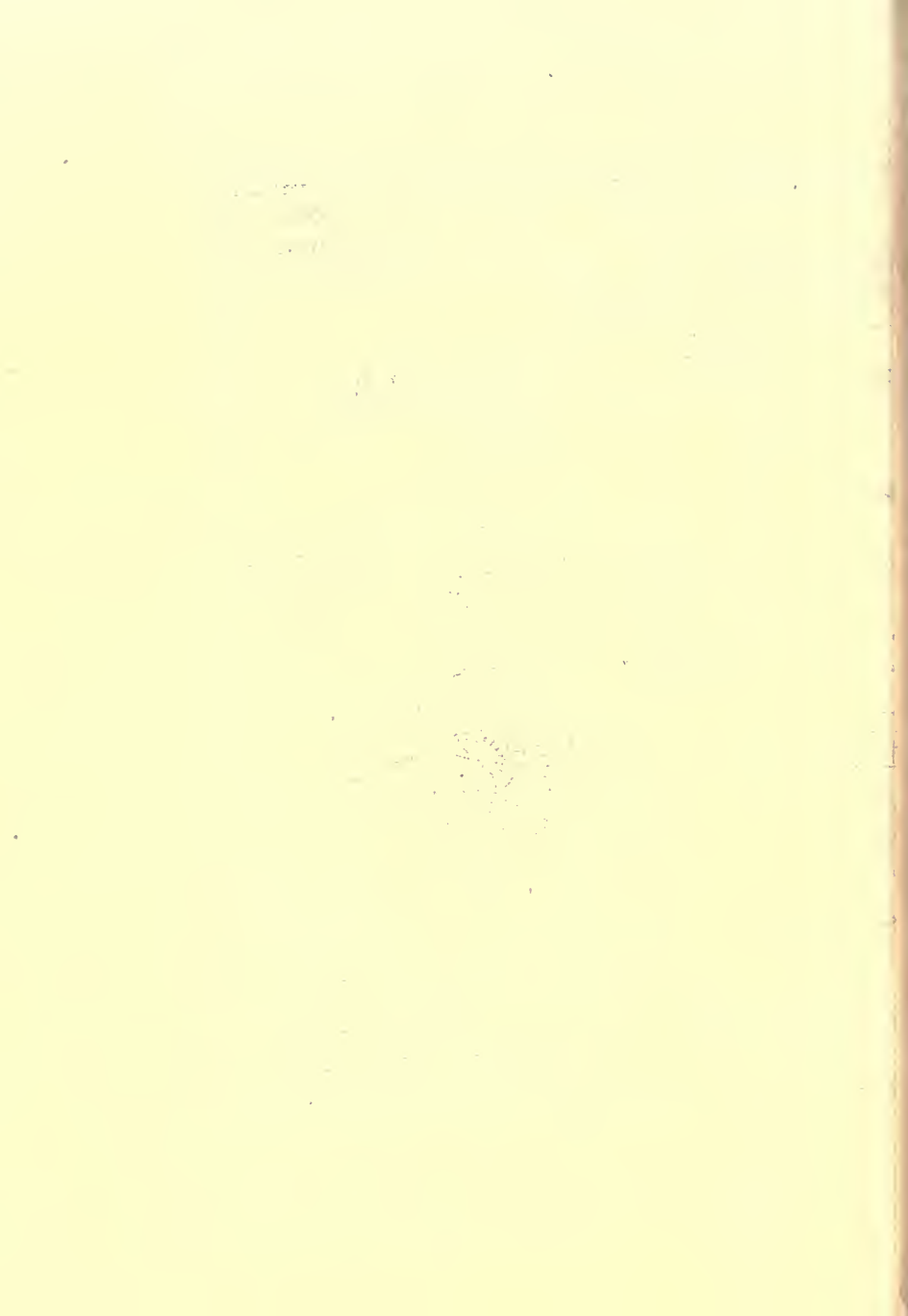














A

# BRIEFE DISCOVERSE of the Nevv-found-land,

*with the situation, temperature,  
and commodities thereof,  
inciting our Nation to goe  
forward in that hope-  
full plantation begunne.*

*Scire tuum nihil est, nisi te scire hoc sciat alter.*



EDINBURGH,  
Printed by *Andro Hart*. 1620.





TO THE RIGHT  
WORSHIPFVLL SIR  
IOHN SCOTT  
*of Scots-Tarvet,*  
KNIGHT, &c.



IR, you are like to haue none other accompt for the present than such as Marchant-Factors, after bad markets returne, that is, papers for paymēt, for liuers lines. The which though not so acceptable as more solide returns, yet giues some satisfactiō for the expenses of time questionable. I haue sent you a discourse of our Countrey penned at the request of friends, for the better satisfaction of our Nobilitie, vnpolished and rude, bearing the countreys badge where it was hatched, onely clothed with plainnesse and trueth. I intreat your fauourable acceptation thereof, as your wonted clemencie hath beene to the Author, if you thinke it may doe good by encouraging any of your Countrey to the interprise, I am willing you publish it, other wise let it bee buried in silence as you shall thinke meetest, and esteeme mee still one of whome you haue power to dispose.

IOHN MASON.



## To the Reader.



*OR as much as there bee sundrie relations of the New-found-land and the commodities thereof, Some too much extolling it, some too much debasing it, preferring the temperature of the aire thereof before ours, the hopes of commodities there without paines and mineralles, as if they were apparent (which as I deny to bee a veritie, yet I affirme not to bee impossible) with other narrations dissenting from the trueth, the which although done out of a good affection, yet had they better beene vndone. I haue therefore (gentle Reader) hoping of thy fauourable construction, set downe in few and plaine tearmes out of that experience I haue gained in three yeares and seucnth monthes residence there, the trueth, as thou shalt finde by prooffe thereof, to the which I recommend thee and vs all to his Grace, that is able and will plant those that feare him in a better Kingdome. Farewell.*

*Thine and his Countries in  
part, not whollie his owne.*

I O H N M A S O N.



## A BRIEF DISCOVERSE

of the Newfoundland, with the

*Situation, temperature, and commodities there-*

of, inciting our Nation to goe forward in

*that hopefull plantation begunne.*



THE Countrie commonly knowne and called by the name of Newfoundland, albeit it is so much frequented and resorted yearely to, by thousands of our Nation and others, which haue scarcely so much as a superfieall knowledge thereof (onely so much as concerneth their fishings excepted) is an Iland or Ilands as some plats

haue described it, situate on the front of *America*, betwixt 46. and 52. degrees of Northerly latitude, of the bignes of *Ireland*. the Eastermost side thereof bounded with the Ocean extendeth it selfe nearest North and South: the variation allowed 100. Leagues, the south face deuided from the Iles of *Cap. Breton* by the Gulfe of *Sainct Lawrence* a straighth of 27. Leagues ouer lyeth West. and by North northerly, and East and by South Southerly in length 77. Leagues, on the West part inbraced by the Grand-bay stretching it selfe Northeast and Southwest 75. Leagues. and on the North confined by the Norther arme of the Grand-bay which separateth it from the continent of

*Noua*



## A discourse of

*Nova Francia*, making a fret of 7. Leagues wide, & is described by the Rhombe of W. and by North and E. and by S. 25. Leag. Almost of a Triangular forme fauing that many bays & Inlets making ineroachment haue disfigured the face thereof with Scars, eating into the land into 40 leagues space on the South part where we haue seached 30 as good Harbours as the world affords. The longitude thereof reckoned from the westermost part of the *Insule fortunatæ* is 330 degrees, distant in the Line of West & by the South from our *Meridian* 45. degrees by cōmon account which in the middle parallel of the differēce the Latitude betwixt the lāds end of *England* & the bodie of Newfoundland at 39. one halfe miles answerable to each degree in the same maketh 1764. miles or 588 Leagues. The aire subtile & wholesome, the Summer season pleasant conforme to the like latitude in Europe, fauing that y<sup>e</sup> wooddie places in Iune & Iulie are somewhat pestered with small Flies bred of the rottenes of ruined woode & moysture like as in *Russia*. The Winter degenerating therfrom, being as cold & snowy as 60 degrees in Europe, & of the like temperature in December, Ian. Febr. March, as the northermost parts in *Scotland*. viz. The Hebrides and the Orcades wherein I haue twife wintered, or of the Coast betwixt *Hamburgh* & the mouth of the *Sound* or *Nose* of *Norway*: yet more comfortable for the length of the day in Winter, which exceedeth theirs three houres at the least. And albeit it be thus cold in the Winter season by accidentall meanes, contrarie to the naturall position thereof in the Spheare, yet is it tollerable, as by experience, so that there needs no Stoaues as in *Germanie*: Likewise fruitefull enough botli of Sommer and Winter corne, an example for our confirmation thereof we haue in *Poland* one of the greatest corne Countries of Europe & yet as cold and subject to freizing as Newfoundland, as also our owne experience both in Wheate, Rye, Barlie, Oates, and Pease, which haue growen and ripened there as well and als timely as in *Yorkshire* in *England*. And for growth of Garden herbes of diuers sorts as Hysope, Time, Parsely, Clarie, Nepe,  
french

the Newfoundland.

french Mallowes, Buglosse, Collombines, Wormewood, &c. There is at this present of 3. yeares old of my sowing, like-wile Rosemary, Fenell, Sweet marierim, Bassell, Purselyne, Lettise, and all other Herbes & Rootes: as tornepe, Paf-nepes, Carets, and Radishes we haue found to growe well there in the Sommer season. The common wild herbes of the Countrie are Angelica, Violets, Mints, Scabius, Yarrow, Ferne, Saraparilla, with diuers other sorts whereof I am ignorant; But suppose would for variety and rariety compose another Herball; of these kinds we haue only made vse of certain great green leaues plētifully growing in the woods, and a great Roote growing in fresh water ponds, both good against the Skiruye, and an other prettie Roote with a blew stalk and leaues of the nature of a Skirret growing in a dry Beachy ground, good meate boyled: The Countrie fruites wild, are cherries small, whole groaues of them, Filberds good, a small pleasant fruite, called a Peare, Damaske Roses single very sweet, excellēt Straberries, and Hartleberries with abundance of Rasberries, and Gooseberries somewhat better than ours in *England*, all which replanted would be much enlarged. There is also a kinde of wild Coranies, wild Pease or Feetches in many places which we haue both found good meat and medecine for the Skiruy; The Land of the North parts most mountanye & woodye very thick of Firre trees, Spruce, Pine, Lereckhout, Aspe, Haffill, a kinde of stinking wood, the three formeſt goodly Timber and most conueniēt for building. No Oakes, Ashe, Beech, or Ellmes, haue we seene or heard of; the greatest parts of the Plaines are marish and boggs, yet apt to be drawen dry by meanes of many fresh Lakes intermixt which paye tribute to the Sea; and on the brinks of these Lakes, through which the water drains away from the rootes of the Graſſe, it flourisheth, in the other parts of the Plaines where the water standeth and killeth the growth of the Graſſe with his coldnesse it is russhie and seggy; in some parts is barren, & mosie ground, but that that is firme and dry beareth good graſſe. The  
Springs

## A discourse of

Spring beginneth in the end of Aprill, & Haruest continueth while Nouember, I haue seene September and October much more pleasant than in *England*; The South part is not so mountainous nor so woodie, for being a little passed vp from the Sea coast the continent hath champion ground for 40. miles together in North and South extent of the like nature of the former, hauing pretty Groues and many fresh laks replenished with Eeles & Salmon-Troutes great, and in great plentie. The Beastes are Ellans, Follow-deare, Hares, Beares harmeles, Wolues, Foxes, Beavers, Catnaghenes excellent, Otteres, and a small beast like a Ferret whose excrement is Muske: And the Plantations haue prettie stoare of Swine and Goates. The Fowles are Eagles, Falcons, Taffills, Marlins, a great Owle much deformed, a lesser Owle, Buffards, Gripes, Osprays which diue for Fishes into the Water, Ravens, Crowes, wild Geese, Snipes, Teales, Twillockes, excellent wilde Duckes of diuers sorts and abundance, some whereof rare and not to be found in Europe, Their particulars too tedious to relate, all good meate, Partridges white in Winter, and gray in Summer, greater than ours, Butters, blacke Birds with redd breastes, Phillidas, Wrens, Swallowes, Iayes, with other small Birds, and 2. or 3. excellent kinds of Beach Birds very fat and sweet, & at the plantations English Pigeons. The sea fowles, are Gullies white and gray, Penguins, Sea Pigeons, Ice Birds, Bottle noses, with other sortes strange in shape, yet all bowntifull to vs with their Egges as good as our Turkie or Hens, where with the Ielands are well replenished. But of all, the most admirable is the Sea, so diuersified with seuerall sorts of Fishes abounding therein, the consideration whereof is readie to swallow vp and drowne my senses not being able to comprehend or expresse the riches therof. For could one acre thereof be inclosed with the Creatures therein in the moneths of Iune, Iulie, and August, it would exceed one thousand acres of the best Pasture with the stocke thereon which we haue in *England*. May hath Herings on equall to 2. of ours, Lants  
and

the New-foundland.

and Cods in good quantity. Iune hath Capline, a fish much resembling Smeltes in forme and eating, and such abundance dry on Shoare as to lade Carts, in some partes pretty store of Salmond, and Cods so thicke by the shoare that we heardlie haue beene able to row a Boate through them, I haue killed of them with a Pike; Of these, three men to Sea in a Boate with some on Shoare to dresse and dry them in 30. dayes will kill commonlie betwixt 25. and thirty thousand, worth with the Oyle arising from them 100 or 120. pound. And the fish and Traine in one Harbour called Saint Iohns is yearly in the Sommer worth 17, or 18. thousand pounds. Iulie, and so till Nouember, hath Macrill in abundance: one thereof as great as two of ours, August hath great large Cods but not in such abundance as the smaller, which continueth with some little decreasing till December; What should I speake of a kinde of Whales called Gibberts, Dogfish, Porpoises, Hering-Hogges, Squides a rare kinde of fish, at his mouth squirting mattere forth like Inke, Flownders, Crabbes, Cunners, Catfish, Millers, thunnies &c. Of al which there are innumerable in the Summer season; Likewise of Lobsters plentie, and this last yeare stoare of Smelts not hauing beene knowne there before. I haue also seene Tonnie fish in Newland; now of shell fish there is Scalupes, Muffeles, Vrfenas, Hens, Periwinkles &c. Here we see the chiefe fishing with his great commoditie expressed, which falleth so fitly in the Summer season betwixt seed-time and Haruest that it cannot be any hinderance to either. I haue heard some countries commended for their two fowld Haruest, which heare thou hast, although in a different kinde, yet both as profitable, I (dare say) as theirs so much extolled, if the right course be taken; & well fareth, that country say I, which in one month time with reasonable paines, wil pay both landlords rent, seruants wages, and all Household charges. But peraduenture some squeayse stomake will say, Fishing is a beastly trade & vnseeming a Gentleman, to whom I answere (*Bonus odor luti cū lucro*) & let them propound the Holanders

## A discourse of

to themselves for example whose Countrie is so much enriched, by it; others say the Countrie is barren, but they are deceived, for *Terra quæ tegit seipsam tegit Dominum*, and the great abundance of Woodes and wilde Fruits which exceedingly flourish there proue the contrary. And what thogh the fertility of the soyle and temperature of the Climate be inferiour to *Virginia*, yet for foure maine Reasons to be laid downe it is to be paralleled to it, if not preferred before it, the which we will heere propound.

1 The first reason is the nearenes to our owne home, which naturally we are so much addicted vnto, being but the halfe of the way to *Virginia*, hauing a conuenient passage for three seasonable monthes, March, Aprill, and May, which alwayes accomodate faire windes to passe thether, sometime in 14. or 20. dayes, feldome in thirtie dayes. Likewise the commodious returne in Iune, Iulie, August, September, October, and Nouember, sometimes in 12. 16. 20. and now and then in thirtie dayes.

2. The great intercourse of trade by our Nation these threecore years and vpwards, in no finall numbers frequenting the New-found land, and daylie increasing, with the likeliness thereof to continue, fish being a staple commodity with vs, and so sellable in other countries yearlie employing 3000. thousand Sea-men and breeding new daylie, also freighting three hundreth Ships in that voyage, and releuing of 20000. people mee here in *England* (for most of these fishers are married and haue a charge of Children, and liue by this meanes not being able to gaine halfe so much by another labour) furthermore the reuenew that groweth to the King by the customes of *French*, *Spanish* and Straights goods imported, from the proceede of this fish trade suppose at the least to the value of ten thousand pounds yearly.

3 The conueniency of transporting plantors thether at the old rate, ten shillings the man, and twentie shillings to find him victual thether, likewise other commodities by shippes  
that

### the New-foundland.

that goe sackes at ten shilling per tunne out, and thirtie shillings home, whereas *Virginia* and *Birmooda* freightes, are five pound the man and three pound the tunne.

4 Fourthly and lastly, Securitie from foraine and domesticke enemies, there being but few Salvages in the north, and none in the south parts of the Countrey; by whom the planters as yet neuer suffered damage, against whom (if they should seeke to trouble vs,) a small fortification will serue being but few in number, and those onely Bow men. Also if any Warres should happen betwixt vs and other Nations, wee neede not feare rooting out. For the Yce is a Bulwarke all Aprill commonlie and after that during the whole Summer wee haue a garison of 9. or 10. 1000 of our owne Nation with many good and warlike Shippes, who of necessity must defend the fishing season for their livings sake, as they alwayes formerlie haue done in the Warres with *Spaine*. And afterwards in the monthes of Haruest and Winter the winds are our friends and will hardlie suffer any to approach vs, the which if they should, the cold opposite to the nature of the Spainard will giue him but cold Intertainment; neither will the Plantours be altogether puffed vp with carelesse securitie, but fortifie in some measure knowing that *Non sunt securi qui dant sua Colla securi*.

Nowe hauing formerly layed downe the temperature of the Aire and disposition of the Weather in the Winter season to be cold and consequently different from other places of the same situation vnder the same Parallel in Europe, and by experience answerable to 59. or 60. degrees thereof. It will be expected that I should shew some reasons concerning the same which according to mine opinion (submitting my selfe to better Iudgements) I will set downe; It being a generall rule approued through *America* that any place vnder the same Parallel of another place in Europe is as cold as those places which are situate in 12. or 13. degrees to the North wards therof, and the same rule holdeth alike on  
either side

## A discourse of

either side of the Equinoctiall. For example, the straights of *Magelan* in 54. to the South of the Equinoctiall, are more cold, snowie and boysterous than any part of Europe in 65. Likewise on this side the Line, the Country about the River *Orcnoaque* and *Trinidad* in 9. or ten degrees is found as temperate as *Gualata* vnder 23. degrees of more northerlie latitude in *Africa*. So likewise *Sainct Augustine* in *Florida* vnder 31. degrees is anferable to *Valadulid* in 42. degrees in *Spaine*, also the plantations vnder 37. degrees in *Virginia* are correspondent in the Winter to the temperature of *Deuenshire* or *Cornewall* vnder 50. degrees heare in *England*, and although their Summer bee some what hotter in regard of the nearnes of the Sunne, being then in *Cancer* within 15. degrees of their Zenith, the Radius therof then striking neare at a right Angle, causing a strange reflection, yet would it be much hotter if the Sun in his passage ouer the great *Oceane* 3000. miles broad vnder that Paralel, betwixt Europe & *America*, by the exhalation of waterish vapours & much moisture thereout, into the middle region of the Aire, did not coole the same, which being made more grosse & thick with misty Clouds, his Beames cannot pearce through with their propre vigor and force, to heate the Earth; To this cooling of the Sunnes heate helpeth also all those great fresh ponds and lakes so abounding in *America*. Fresh waters being more naturally cold than salt, and both colder than the Earth, of like qualitie also are the marish and Boggie groundes, the Lands not manured and therefore more naturally cold, the Country slenderly peopled, voide of Townes and Cities, whereof Europe is full; the smoake whereof and heate of fires much qualifieth the coldnesse of the Aire. Lastly the chiefeft reason of the coldnesse in New-found-land in the Winter season is the Yce which beeing congealed into great firme Lands, euen from the North Pole, all alongst the Coast of *Gronland*, *Grenland*, The North-west passage *Terra de laborador* & so towards the Grand bay, all that tract hauing many Inlets and broken Lands apt as vnaturall wombes



### the New-foundland.

wombes to breede and bring forth such Monsters, which being nurfed in their ruder armes, till the VVinter feafon past, are turnde forth of doores in the Spring to thift for themfelues, and being weary of their imprifonments in thofe angrie Climes with one accord as if they had agreed with winde and ftream take Ferrie into New-foundland, which immuring vs in the months of Febru. & March, both which are fubject to northeaft winds & blowing from this Yce caufeth it very cold. The currant ftill fetting it fouthward as a Taylor to bring it before the Iudge, neuer leaueth it till with the helpe of the outlet of Sainēt *Lawrence* Gulfe it be prefented nearer the Sun to be broild by his feorching Beames and confumed. I cannot deny but in fome VVinters betwixt Chriftnas and March, Yce is bred in the Harbors and bayes of New-foundland, by reafon of the calmenefle of the winds there incident, And the want of ftreames not caufing motion in the Waters, and when it is fo frozen, it is none otherwife then the Texfell or Inner Seas in Holand of 15. or 18. Inches thickneffe, and breakes and confumes in the Spring; all freffh Lakes frozen opens in the end of March or the beginning of Aprill, which brings with it many flouwers to wafh away Snow, and bare the ground; and in the midle of the Month many Ships arriue of the *Engliſh*, fome *French*, and in the midft of May fome *Portingalls*. All which as fo many Reapers come to the Harueſt, gathering in abundance the wonderfull bleffings of the Lord.

I might heare further difcourſe of our difconeries, conference with the Saluages by Maſter *John Gye*, their maner of life: Likewiſe of the managing our buſineſſe in our Plantations, with the descriptions of their ſituations in 2. places 16. miles diſtant from other, on the northſide the bay of Concepcion; of the manner charge and benefite of our fiſhings with the feuerall ſtrange formes, and natures of Fiſhes, projects for making Yron, Salt, Pitch, Tarre, Tirpintine, Frank-Incenſe, Furrer, Hope of trade with Saluages and ſuch like, with many accidents and occurrences in the time of  
my

## A discourse of the New-foundland.

my gouernment there, but these may suffice as *Verbum sapienti*; being of sufficient trueth to remoue errors of conceiuing the Countrie more pleasant by reason of his naturall fight in the Spheare, then it is indeede, also to convince and take away malicious and scandelous speeches of malignant persons, who out of enuy to G O D and good Actions (instructed by their father the Deuill) haue fought to dispoile it of the dewe, and blamish the good name thereof.

And lastlie to induce thee, gentle Reader, to the true consideration thereof as a thing of great consequence to our Nation not only at present, but like to bee much more beneficiall when the plaintations there shall increafe, which God grant to his owne glorie and the good of our Common-Wealth.

FINIS.



# NOVA SCOTIA.

The Kings Patent to  
SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER KNIGHT,  
for the Plantation of New Scotland,  
in America, and his Proceedings  
therein.

From the Fourth Part of  
PURCHASE HIS PILGRIMES:  
London, 1625.





# NOVA SCOTIA.

THE KINGS PATENT TO SIR WILLIAM ALEXANDER *Knight*,  
*for the Plantation of New Scotland in America,*  
*and his Proceedings therein.*

**I**ACOBUS Dei gratia Magnæ Britannicæ, Franciæ, & Hiberniæ Rex fideique defensor : Omnibus probis hominibus totius terræ suæ Clericis & laicis salutem. Sciatis nos semper ad quamlibet quæ ad decus & emolumentum regni nostri Scotiæ spectaret occasionem amplectendum fuisse intentos, nullamque aut faciliorem aut magis innoxiam acquisitionem censere, quàm quæ inexteris & incultis regnis ubi vitæ & victui suppetunt commodo novis deducendis Colonijs facta sit ; præsertim si vel ipsa regna cultoribus prius vacua, vel ab infidelibus, quos ad Christianam conuerti fidem & Dei gloriam interest plurimum, inessæ fuerint. Sed cum & alia nonnulla regna, & hæc non ita pridem nostra Anglia laudabiliter sua nomina novis terris acquisitis sed in se subactis indiderunt, quam numerosa & frequens Diuino beneficio hæc gens, hac tempestate sit nobiscum reputantes, quamque honesto aliquo & vtili cultu eam studiosè exerceri ne in deteriora ex ignavia & otio prolabatur expediat plerisque in nouam deducendos regionem quam Colonijs compleant, operæpretium duximus qui & animi promptitudine & alacritate corporumque robore et viribus quibuscunque difficultatibus, si qui alij mortalium vspiam se audiant opponere, hunc conatum huic regno maxime idoneum inde arbitramur quod virorum tantummodo & mulierum iumentorum & frumenti, non etiam pecuniæ transuectionem

C

## The King's Charter for the Plantation

*suectionem postulat, neque incommodam ex ipsis regni mercibus retributionem hoc tempore cum negotiatio adeo imminuta sit, possit reponere. Hisce de causis sicuti & propter bonum fidele & gratum dilecti nostri consilarij Domini WILLELMI ALEXANDRI equitis seruitium nobis præstitum & præstandum, qui proprijs impensis ex nostratibus primus externam hanc coloniam ducendam conatus sit, diuersasque terras infra designatis limitibus circumscriptas incolendas expetuerit. NOS IGITUR ex Regali nostra ad Christianam religionem propagandam & ad opulentiam, prosperitatem, pacemque naturalium nostrorum subditorum dicti regni nostri Scotiæ acquirendam cura, sicuti alij Principes extranei in talibus casibus hactenus fecerunt, cum auisamento & consensu prædicti nostri consanguinei & consilarij Ioannis Comitis de Marr Domini Erskene & Garriochæ summi nostri Thesaurarij computorum rotulatoris collectoris ac Thesaurarij nouarumstrarum augmentationum huius Regni nostri Scotiæ, ac reliquorum dominorum nostrorum Commissionariorum eiusdem Regni nostri, Dedimus concessimus & disposuimus, tenoreque præsentis chartæ nostræ damus concedimus & disponimus præfato Domino Willemo Alexandro, hæredibus suis vel assignatis quibuscunque hæreditariè Omnes & singulas terras continentis ac insulas situatas & iacentes in America, intra caput seu promontorium comuniter Cap. de Sable appellatum iacens prope latitudinem quadraginta trium graduum aut ab eo circa, ab æquinoctiali linea versus septentrionem, à quo promontorio versus litus maris tendentis ad occidentem ad stationem Sanctæ Mariæ nauium (vulgo S. Maries Bay) & deinceps versus septentrionem per directam lineam introitum siue ostium magnæ illius stationis nauium trajicientem quæ excurrit in terræ orientalem plagam inter Regionis Suriquorum & Etechemmorum (vulgo Surriquois & Etechemines) ad fluuium vulgo nomine Sanctæ Crucis appellatum: Et ad scaturiginem remotissimam siue fontem ex occidentali parte eiusdem qui se primum prædicto fluuiio immiscet, vnde per imaginariam directam lineam quæ pergere per terram seu currere versus septentrionem concipietur ad proximam nauium stationem, fluuium vel scaturiginem in magno fluuiio de Cannada sese exonerantem. Et*  
ab

## of New Scotland in America.

*ab eo pergendo versus orientem per maris oras littorales eiusdem fluvij de Cannada ad fluvium stationem navium portum aut littus communiter nomine de Gachepe vel Gaspie notum & appellatum, Et deinceps versus Euronotum ad insulas Bacalaos vel Cap. Briton vocatas Relinquendo easdem Insulas à dextra & voraginem dicti magni fluvij de Cannada siue magne stationis navium & terras de Newfoundland, cum insulis ad easdem terras pertinentibus à sinistra. Et deinceps ad Caput siue promontorium de Cap. Briton prædictum iacens prope latitudinem quadraginta quinque graduum aut eo circa. Et à dicto promontorio de Cap. Briton versus meridiem & Occidentem ad prædictum Cap. Sable ubi incipit perambulatio includenda & comprehendenda intra dictas maris oras littorales ac earum circumferentias à mari ad [mare] omnes terras continentis cum fluminibus torrentibus, sinibus, littoribus, insulis aut maribus iacentibus prope infra sex leucas ad aliquam earundem partem ex occidentali boreali vel orientali partibus orarum littoralium & præinctuum earundem. Et ab Euronoto (ubi iacet Cap. Briton) & ex australi parte eiusdem (ubi est Cap. de Sable) omnia maria ac insulas versus meridiem intra quadraginta leucas dictarum orarum littoralium earundem magnam insulam vulgariter appellatam Ile de Sable vel Sablon includen. iacen. versus Carban vulgo South-South-east, circa triginta leucas à dicto Cap. Briton in mari & existen. in latitudine quadraginta quatuor graduum aut eo circa. Quæ quidem terræ prædictæ omni tempore affuturo nomine NOUÆ SCOTIÆ in America gaudebant. Quas etiam præfatus Dominus Willelmus in partes & portiones sicut ei visum fuerit diuidet iisdemque nomina pro beneplacito imponet. Vna cum omnibus fodinis tum regalibus auri & argenti quam alijs fodinis ferri, plumbi, cupri, stanni, æris, &c.*

*IN cuius rei testimonium huic præsentì Chartæ nostræ magnum Sigillum nostrum apponi præcepimus Testibus prædi[le]ctis nostris consanguineis & consiliarijs Iacobo Marchione de Hamilton Comite Arraniæ & Cambridge Domino Auen & Innerdail, Georgio Mariscalli Comite Domino Keith & alt. regni nostri Mariscallo, Alexandro Comite de Dunfermling Domino Fyvie & Vrqhant nostro Cancellario, Thoma Comite de Melros Domino Byres & Bynning nostro*  
*Secretario,*



## Proceedings in the Plantation

*Secretario, Dilectis nostris familiaribus consiliarijs Domino Richardo Kokburne iuniore de Clerkington nostri Secreti Sigilli custode, Georgio Hay de Kinfawnis nostrorum Rotulorum Registrorum ac Concilij Clerico, Ioanne Cockburne de Ormestoun nostræ Iusticiariæ Clerico, & Ioanne Scot de Scotistaruet nostræ Cancellariæ Directore, Militibus. Apud Castellum nostrum de Winsore decimo die mensis Septembris Anno Domini millesimo sexcentesimo vigesimo primo Regnorumque nostrorum annis quinquagesimo quinto & decimo nono [respective.]*

SIR *Ferdinando Gorge* being entrusted with the affayres of *New England*, after hee had aduised with some of the Company ; considering the largeness of the bounds intended to bee planted by his Maiesties subiects in *America*, and the slow progresse of Plantations in these parts, that the *Scottish* Nation may be perswaded to embarke themselves in their foraine enterprife, hee was content that Sir *William Alexander* Knight,<sup>1</sup> one of his Maiesties most Honorable Priuy Councel of that Kingdome, should procure a Patent of such a bounds as his Maiestie should appoint to bee called *New Scotland*, and to bee held of the Crowne of *Scotland*, and gouerned by the Lawes of that Kingdome, as his said Patent containing all the bounds, that doth lie to the East of Saint *Croix*, compassed with the great Riuer of *Canada* on the North, and the Maine Ocean on the South doth more particularly beare. Whereupon the said Sir *William* did set out a Shippe with a Colony of purpose to plant, which being too late in setting forth were forced to stay all the Winter (*Anno 1622*) at *New-found-Land*, and though they had a Shippe with new prouisions the next Spring from the  
sayde

---

<sup>1</sup> For the Description and Encouragements to this designe, and for better knowledge of *New Scotland*, besides a Book purposely published by the Honourable and learned Author (who at other weapons hath plaied his Muses prizes, and giuen the World ample testimony of his learning) you may read our Eighth Booke from the sixt Chapter forwards, the last two Chapters of the Ninth Booke, and that Description of the Country of *Mawcooshen*, which I haue added hereto.

## of New Scotland in America.

sayde Sir *William*, yet by reason of some vnexpected occasions, the chiefe of the Company resolued not to plant at the first, but onely to discouer and to take possession, which a number made choyce of for that purpose did happily performe.

The three and twentieth of Iune (*Anno* 1623), they loosed from Saint *Iohns* Harbour in *New-found-Land*, and sayled towards *New Scotland*, where for the space of fourteene dayes they were by Fogges and contrarie Windes kept backe from spying Land till the eight of Iuly: thereafter that they saw the West part of Cape *Breton*, and so till the thirteenth day, they sayled to and fro alongst the Coast till they came the length of *Port de Muton*, where they discouered three very pleasant Harbours, and went a shoare in one of them, which they called *Lukes Bay*, where they found a great way vp to a very pleasant Riuer being three fathoms deepe at low water; at the entry thereof, and on euery side of the same they did see very delicate Meadowes, hauing Roses white and red growing thereon, with a kind of wild Lilly, which had a very daintie smell.

The next day they resolued to coast alongst to discouer the next Harbour, which was but two leagues distant from the other, where they found a more pleasant Riuer, being foure fathom water at a low water, with Meadowes on both sides thereof, hauing Roses and Lillies growing thereon as the other had. They found within this Riuer a very fit place for a Plantation, both in regard that it was naturally apt to bee fortified, and that all the ground betweene the two Riuers was without Wood, and was good fat earth hauing feuerall sorts of Berries growing thereon, as Gooseberry, Strawberry, Hyndberry, Rasberry, and a kinde of Red-wineberry: As also some sorts of Graine, as Pease, some eares of Wheat, Barley, and Rye, growing there wild; the Pease grow euery where in abundance, very big and good to eate, but taste of the Fitch. This Riuer is called *Port Iolly*, from whence they coasted alongst to *Port Negro*, being 12. leagues distant, where all the way as they sailed alongst they found a very pleasant Countrey hauing growing euery where such things as they did see in the two Harbours where they had beene. They found likewise in euery Riuer  
abundance

## Proceedings in the Plantation

abundance of Lobsters, and Cockles, and other small fishes; and also they found not only in the Rivers, but all the Coast alongst, numbers of severall sorts of Wild-fowle, as Wild-goose, Black-Duck, Woodcock, Heron, Pigeon, and many other sorts of Fowle which they knew not. They found likewise, as they sailed alongst the Coast abundance of great Cod, with severall other sorts of great fishes. The Countrey is full of Woods, not very thick, and the most part Oake, the rest Fir-tree, Spruce, Birch, and many other sorts of wood which they had not seene before.

Having discovered this part of the Countrey in regard of the Voyage, their Ship was to make to the Straits with fishes, they resolved to coast alongst from *Lukes Bay* to *Port de Mutton*, being foure leagues to the East thereof, where they encountered with a *Frenchman*, that in a very short time had a great voyage, having furnished one Ship away with fishes, and had neere so many ready as to load his owne Ship and others. And having taken a view of this Port, which to their judgement they found no wayes inferior to the rest they had seene before, they resolved to retire backe to *New-found-land*, where their Ship was to receive her loading of fishes, the twentieth of Iuly they loosed from thence, and the seven and twentieth thereof they arrived at *Saint Johns Harbour* in *New-found-land*; and from thence sailed alongst the Bay of *Conception*, where they left the Ship, and dispatched themselves home in severall Ships that belonged to the West part of *England*, and doe intend this next Spring to set forth a Colony to plant there.

---

## AN EXTRACT FROM

“A BRIEFVE RELATION OF THE DISCOVERY AND PLANTATION OF NEW ENGLAND: &c. London, printed by John Haviland, and are to be sold by William Bladen. M.DC.XXII.” 4to. This Relation, published by the President and Councell of New-England, is  
dedicated

## of New Scotland in America.

dedicated "To the Prince [Charles] his Highnesse." An abbreviated copy of it is included in Purchase's *Pilgrimes*, the Fourth Part, Book x. chap. i. page 1827, &c.]



WHEN this designe [the Plantation of New England] was first attempted, some of the present Company were therein chiefly interested; who being carefull to haue the same accomplished, did send to the discovery of those Northerne parts a braue Gentleman, Captaine *Henry Challons*, with two of the Natiues of that Territory, the one called *Maneday*, the other *Assecomet*. But his misfortunes did expose him to the power of certaine Strangers, enemies to his proceedings, so that by them, his company were seized, the ships and goods confiscated, and that Voyage wholly ouerthrowne.

This losse, and vnfortunate beginning, did much abate the rising courage of the first Aduenturers; but immediately vpon his departure, it pleased the noble *Lord Chiefe Iustice*, Sir *Iohn Popham* knight, to send out another ship, wherein Captain *Thomas Haman* went Commander, and *Martine Prinne* of *Bristow* Master, with all necessarie supplies, for the seconding of Captaine *Challons* and his people; who arriuing at the place appointed, and not finding that Captaine there, after they had made some discovery, and found the Coasts, Hauens, and Harbors answerable to our desires, they returned. Vpon whose relation the *Lord Chiefe Iustice*, and wee all waxed so confident of the businesse, that the yeere following euerie man of any worth, formerly interested in it, was willing to ioyne in the charge for the sending ouer a competent number of people to lay the ground of a hopefull plantation.

Hereupon Captaine *Popham*, Captaine *Rawley Gilbert*, and others were sent away with two Ships, and an hundred Landmen, Ordnance, and other prouisions necessarie for their sustentation and defence; vntill other supply might bee sent. In the meane while, before they could returne, it pleased God to take from vs this worthy member, the *Lord Chiefe Iustice*, whose suddē death did so astonish the hearts of the most part of the Aduenturers, as some grew cold, and some did wholly abandon the businesse. Yet Sir *Francis Popham* his sonne, certaine of his priuate friends, and other of vs, omitted not the next yeare (holding on our first resolution) to ioyne in sending forth a new supply, which was accordingly performed.

But the Ships arriuing there, did not only bring vncomfortable newes of the death of the *Lord Chiefe Iustice*, together with the death of Sir *Iohn Gilbert*, the elder brother vnto Captaine *Rawley Gilbert*, who at that time

## Plantation of New Scotland, in America.

time was President of that *Councell*: But found that the old Captaine *Popham* was also dead; who was the onely man (indeed) that died there that Winter, wherein they indured the greater extremities; for that, in the depth thereof, their lodgings and stores were burnt, and they thereby wondrously distressed.

This calamitie and euill newes, together with the resolution that Captaine *Gilbert* was forced to take for his owne returne, (in that hee was to succeed his brother, in the inheritance of his lands in *England*) made the whole company to resolute vpon nothing but their returne with the Ships; and, for that present to leaue the Countrey againe, hauing in the time of their abode there (notwithstanding the coldnesse of the season, and the small helpe they had, built a prettie Barke of their owne, which serued them to good purpose, as easing them in their returning.

The arriual of these people heere in *England*, was a wonderfull discouragement to all the first Vndertakers, in so much as there was no more speech of settling any other plantation in those parts for a long time after: only Sir *Francis Popham* hauing the Ships and prouision, which remained of the company, and supplying what was necessary for his purpose, sent diuers times to the coasts for trade and fishing; of whose losse or gaines himselfe is best able to giue account.

Our people abandoning the Plantation in this sort as you haue heard; the *Frenchmen* immediately tooke the opportunitie to settle themselves within our limits; which being heard of by those of *Virginia*, that discreetly tooke to their consideration the inconueniences that might arise, by suffering them to harbour there, they dispatched Sir *Samuel Argall*, with commission to displace them, which hee performed with much discretion, iudgement, valour, and dexteritie. For hauing seized their Forts, which they had built at Mount *Mansell*, Saint *Croix*, and Port *Reall*, hee carried away their Ordnance; he also surprised their Ship, Cattle, and other prouisions, which hee transported to the Collonie in *Virginia*, to their great benefit. And hereby he hath made a way for the present hopeful Plantation to bee made in *Noua-Scotia*, which we heare his Maiestie hath lately granted to Sir *William Alexander* Knight, one of his Maiesties most honourable Councell of the Kingdome of *Scotland*, to bee held of the said Crowne, and that not without some of our priuities, as by approbation vnder writing may and doth appeare. Whereby it is manifest that wee are so farre from making a Monopoly of all those lands belonging to that coast (as hath bene scandalously by some obiected) *That we wish that many would vndertake the like.*



Α Χ  
Encouragement  
TO  
COLONIES.

By  
Sir WILLIAM ALEXANDER,  
KNIGHT.

*Alter erit tum Tiphis, & altera quæ vehat Argo  
delectos Heroas——*



LONDON  
Printed by William Stansby.  
1624.







TO THE MOST  
EXCELLENT  
PRINCE.



*Hough you have graced  
the Labours of some (as  
much admired for your  
courtesie as they for their  
indiscretion) who might  
haue beene condemned for  
presuming to importune  
you for their Patron; yet  
it would seem a prophanation of greatnesse  
to place your name vpon the Frontispice of  
euery vulgar Paper, but as no Worke hath  
more need of your countenance, then the En-  
couraging of Colonies; So it would appeare  
to me (I know not suspecting my own partiali-  
tie, whither seduced by Desire, or warranted by  
Reason) that there is no ground whereupon your  
coun-*

## THE EPISTLE

*countenance may shine with a more publike applause. This is the way (making the Gospell of Iesus Christ knowne in vnknowne parts) by supplying the necessities of many, with a lawfull increase of necessary commerce, to procure glorie vnto God, honour to your selfe, and benefit to the World; By this meanes, you that are borne to rule Nations, may bee the beginner of Nations, enlarging this Monarchie without bloud, and making a Conquest without wronging of others, whereof in regard of your youth any good beginning in this (like your vertue upon which it doth depend) boding a speedie Progresse Time in your own time, doth promise a great perfection. The glory of greatness (that it may haue a harmonie with goodnesse) consisting more in raysing then in ruining of others, it is a furre better course to purchase fame by the Plantation of a new World, nor as many Princes haue done by the desolation of this. And since your Royall Father during whose happie raigne, these seeds of Scepters haue beene first from hence sowne in America, by his gracious fauour furre aboue any merit of mine, hath emboldened mee the meaneest of many thousands of his subiects to attempt so great an Enterprize, as to lay the foundation of a Worke that may so much import the good of that ancient*  
*King-*

## DEDICATORIE.

*Kingdome, where so many of your Ancestors were buried, and where your selues were borne. I haue both by reading what doth rest vpon Record, and by conferring with sundry that haue beene imbarked in such a businesse, beene curious to remarke the managing thereof, that the experience of times past might with the lesse danger at the charges of others, improue them that are to practize at this present. And the fruits of my Labours I doe humbly offer heere vnto your Highnesse, hoping by the commendable endeouours, therein remembred (though it selfe be but a triuiall Treatise, not worthy your sight) to conciliate your good opinion towards them that are to aduenture in this kind. Amongst whom (if euer my fortunes haue any conformitie with my mind) I purpose to contribute as much as my weake abilities can be able to affoord for accomplishing this braue Designe, wherein my greatest Ambition shall be that both this Age and the Posteritie may know how much I desire by some obseruable effect to be remembred for being*

Your Highnesse most humble  
and affectionate Seruant,

W. A.



THE  
M A P P A N D  
DESCRIPTION OF  
NEW-ENGLAND;

*Together with*  
A Difcourfe of Plantation, and  
*COLLONIES:*

ALSO

A relation of the nature of the *Climate*,  
and how it agrees with our owne *Country*  
E N G L A N D.

How neere it lyes to *New-found-Land*, *Virginia*,  
*Noua Francia*, *Canada*, and other Parts of  
the WEST-INDIES.

---

*Written by*  
S<sup>r</sup>. WILLIAM ALEXANDER, *Knight*.

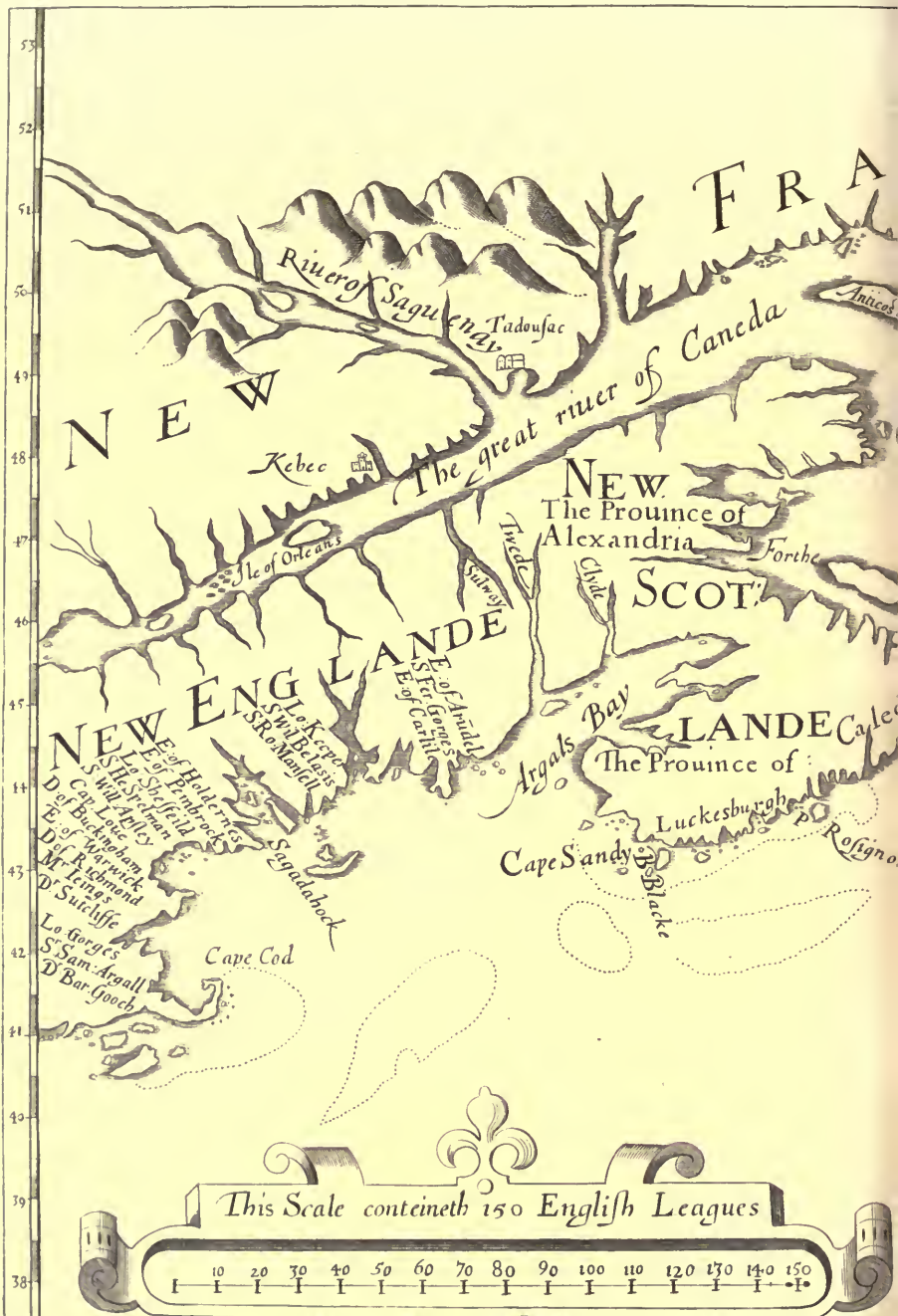
---

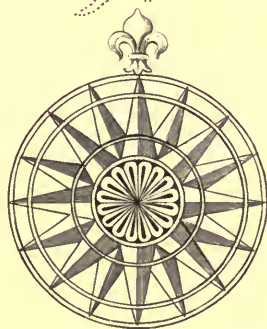
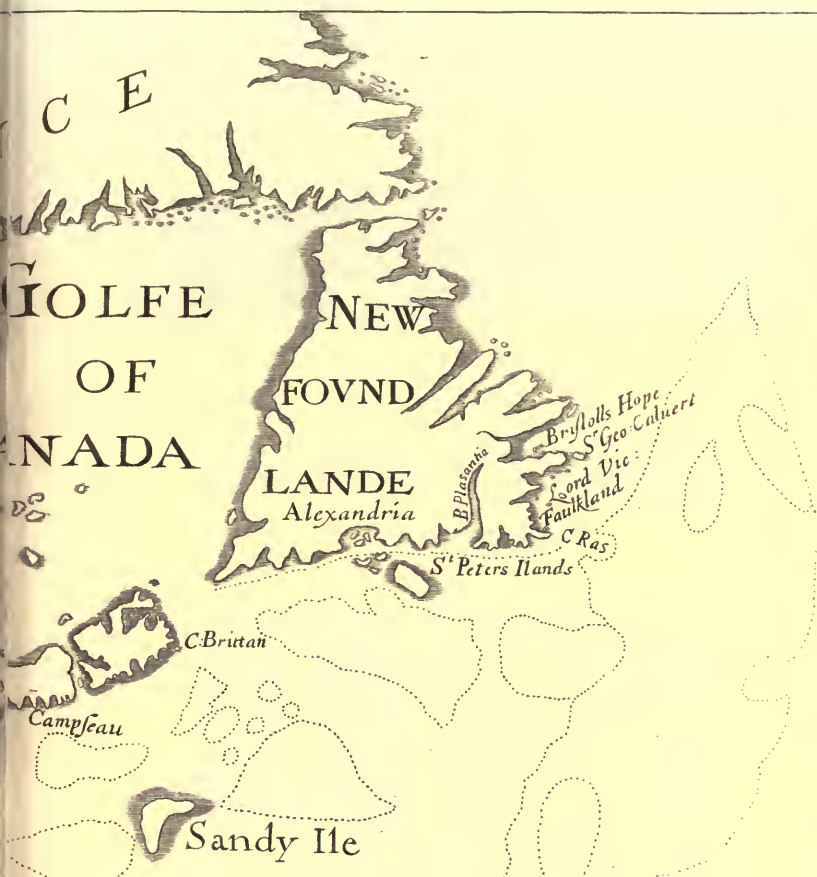
L O N D O N,  
Printed for NATHANIEL BVTTER.  
*An. Dom. 1630.*

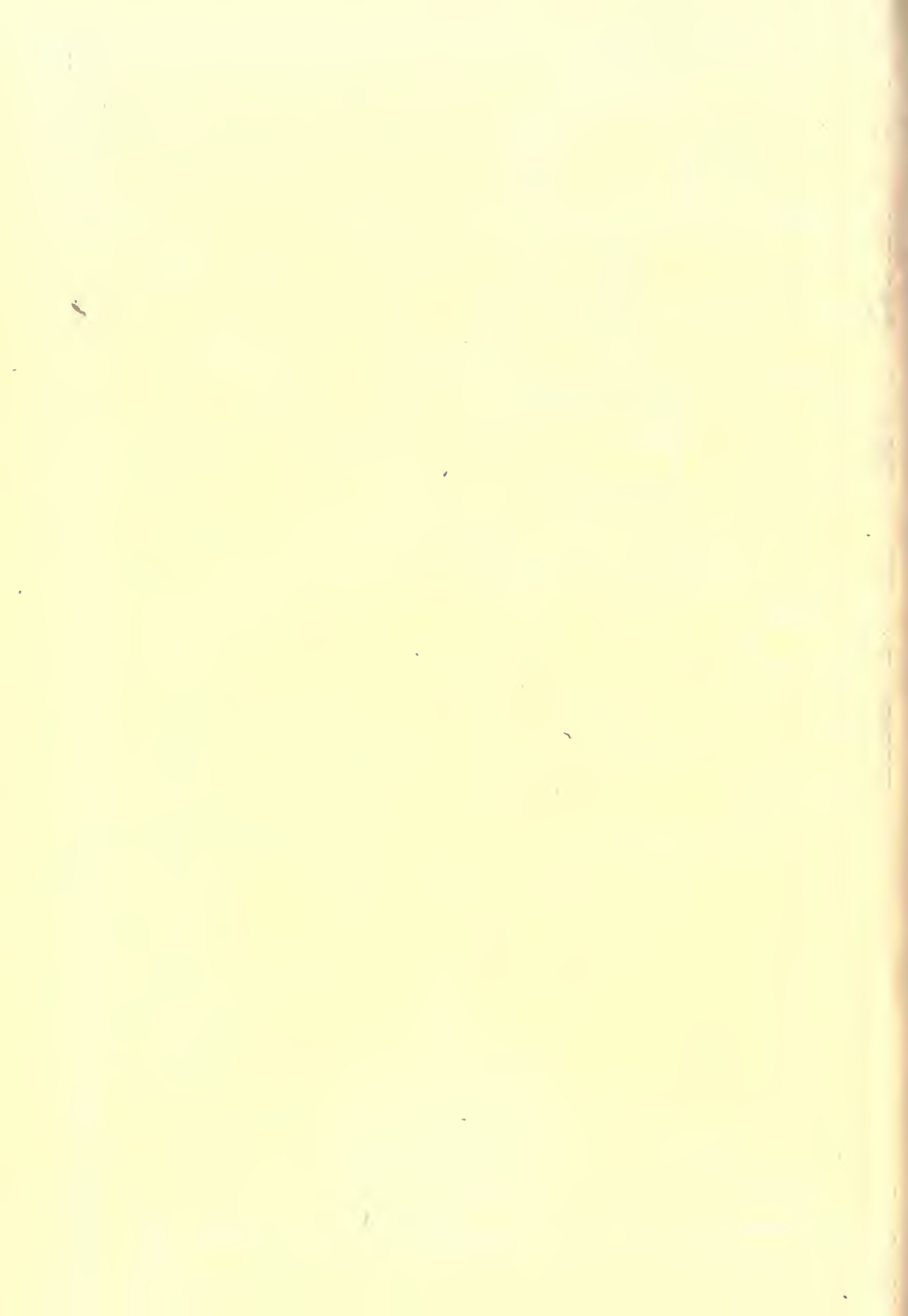














AN  
ENCOVRAGEMENT  
TO COLONIES.



He sending forth of Colonies (seeming a novelty) is esteemed now to bee a strange thing, as not onely being about the courage of common men, but altogether alienated from their knowledge, which is no wonder, since that course though both ancient, and vsuall, hath beene by the intermission of so

many ages discontinued, yea was impossible to be practised so long as there was no vast ground, howsoever men had beene willing, whereupon Plantations might haue beene made, yet there is none who will doubt but that the world in her infancy, and innocency, was first peopled after this manner.

The next generations succeeding *Shem* planted in *Asia*, *Chams* in *Africke*, and *Iaphets* in *Europe*: *Abraham* and *Lot* were Captaines of Colonies, the Land then being as free as the Seas are now, since they parted them in euery part where they passed, not taking notice of natives with-

B

out

out impediment. That memorable troope of *Iewes* which *Moses* led from *Ægypt* to *Canaan* was a kind of Colonie though miraculously conducted by God, who intended thereby to aduance his Church and to destroy the rejected *Ethnikes*. *Salmanezzer* King of *Ashur* was remarked for the first who did violate the naturall ingenuitie of this commendable kind of policy by too politike an intention; for hauing transported the ten Tribes of *I/rael*, to the end that transplanting and dispersing them, hee might either weaken their strength, or abolish their memorie by incorporating of them with his other Subjects; he to prevent the dangers incident amongst remote vassals did send a Colonie to inhabite *Samaria* of a purpose thereby to secure his late and questionable conquest.

Who can imagine by this industrious course of Plantations, what an vnexpected progresse from a despised beginning hath bene suddenly made to the height of greatness! The *Phœnicians* quickly founded *Sidon*, and *Tirus*, so much renowned both by sacred, and humane writers, and a few *Tirians* builded *Carthage*, which had first no more ground allowed her than could be compassed by the extended dimensions of a Bulls hide, which for acquiring of the more ground they diuided in as many sundrie parts as was possible, yet in end that Town became the Mistresse of *Afrike*, and the rivall of *Rome*: and *Rome* it selfe that great Ladie of the World, and terrour to all Nations, ambitiously clayming for her first founders a few scandalized fugitiues that fled from the ruines of *Troy*, did rise from small appearances to that exorbitancy of power, which at this day is remembred with admiration; Though the walls of it at that time were very lowe when the one brother did kill the other for jumping ouer them, either jealousy already prenyling aboue naturall affection, or else vnadvised anger constructing that which might haue been casually or carelessly done, in a finishtrous sence to the hateful behaviour of insolency or scorne; Their number then was not only very finall, but they wanted women, with-  
out

out which they could not encrease, nor subsist, till they ravished the daughters of the *Sabins*, by a violent match at first, portending their future rapins, and what a furious off-spring they were likely to engender. And when that haughty Citie beganne to suffer the miseries which she had so long beene accustomed to inflict vpon others, the venerable Citie of *Venice* (keeping for so many ages a spotlesse reputation) was first begunne by a few discouraged persons, who fleeing from the furie of the barbarous Nations that then encroached vpon *Italie*, were distracted with feare and (seeking for their safety) did stumble vpon a commodious dwelling.

The *Græcians* were the first, at least of all the Gentiles, (who joyning learning with armes) did both doe, and write that which was worthie to be remembred; and that finall parcel of ground whose greatnesse was then only valued by the vertue of the inhabitants, did plant *Trapizonde* in the East, and many other Cities in *Asia* the lesse, the protecting of whose liberties was the first cause of warre between them and the *Persian* Monarchs; then besides all the adjacent Iles they planted *Siracusa* in *Sicile*, most part of *Italie*, which made it to be called *Græcia maior*, and *Marseills* in *France*. O what a strange alteration! that this part, which did flourish thus, whilst it was possessed by vigorous spirits, who were capable of great enterprises, did so many braue things should now (the seate of base seruile people) become the most abject and contemptible part of all the Territories belonging to the barbarous *Ottomans*, whose insolent Ianiissaries (as the Pretorian Guards did with their Emperours, and Mamalukes of *Egypt* with their Soldans) presume at this time to dispose of the Regall power, vpbaying the miserable follie of Christians, who dangerously embarqued in intestine warres, though inuited by an encountring occasion, neglect so great, so glorious, and so easie a conquest.

The *Romanes* comming to command a well peopled World, had no vse of Colonies, but only thereby to re-



ward such old deseruing Souldiers as (age and merit pleading an immunitie from any further constrained trauell) had brauely exceeded the ordinary course of time appointed for military seruice, which custome was vsed in *Germanie, France, Spaine, and Brittain*, and likewise that the Townes erected in this sort might serue for Citadels imposed vpon euery conquered Prouince, whereof some doe flourish at this day, and of others nothing doth remaine but the very name onely, their ruines being so ruined, that wee can hardly condescend vpon what solitary part to bestowe the fame of their former being.

I am loth by disputable opinions to dig vp the Tombes of them that more extenuated then the dust are buried in obliuion & will leaue these disregarded reliëts of greatnesse to continue as they are, the scorn of pride, witnessing the power of time. Neither will I after the common custome of the world, ouerualuing things past disalue the present, but considering seriously of that which is lately done in *Ireland*, doe finde a Plantation there inferiour to none that hath beene heretofore. The *Babylonians* hauing conquered the *Israelites* did transplant them as exposed to ruine in a remote Countrey, sending others of their owne Nation (that they might be vtterly extirpated) to inhabite *Saria* in their places. And our King hath onely diuided the most seditious families of the *Irish* by dispersing them in sundry parts within the Countrey, not to extinguish, but to disipate their power, who now neither haue, nor giue cause of feare. The *Romanes* did build some Townes which they did plant with their owne people by all rigour to curbe the Natiues next adjacent thereunto, And our King hath incorporated some of his best *Brittaines* with the *Irish*, planted in sundry places without power to oppress, but onely to ciuileze them by their example. Thus *Ireland* which heretofore was scarcely discovered, and onely irritated by others, prouing to the *English* as the *Low-Countries* did to *Spaine*, a meanes whereby to waste their men, and their money, is now really conquered, becoming



ming a strength to the State, and a glorie to his Majesties gouernment, who hath in the settling thereof excelled all that was commended in any ancient Colonie.

As all first were encouraged to Plantations by the largesse of the conquests that were proposed vnto them, fearing onely want of people, and not of land, so in after ages when all knowne parts became peopled, they were quickly entangled with the other extremitie, grudging to be bounded within their prospect, and jarring with their neighbours for small parcels of ground, a strife for limits limiting the liues of many who entring first in controuersie vpon a point of profit though with the losse of ten times more, valuing their honour by the opinion of others behoued to proceed as engaged for the safety of their reputation. Then richesse being acquired by industrie, and glorie by employments, these two did beget auarice, and ambition, which lodging in some subtil heads vpon a politike consideration to vnite intestine diuisions did transferre their spleene to forraine parts, not seeking to rectifie the affections, but to busie them abroad where least harme was feared, and most benefit expected, so that where they had first in a peaceable sort fought for Lands onely wherewith to furnish their necessity, which conueniency, or sufficiency, did easily accommodate, now ayming at greatnesse the desires of men growne infinite, made them strangers to contentment, and enemies to rest.

Some Nations seeking to exchange for better seates, others to command their neighbours, there was for many ages no speach but of wrongs and reuenges, conquests and reuolts, razings and ruining of States, a continuall reuolution determining the periods of Time by the miseries of mankind, and in regard of the populousnesse of these ages during the Monarchies of the *Assirians*, *Persians*, *Græcians*, and *Romanes*, the world could not haue subsisted if it had not bene purged of turbulent humours by letting out the blood of many thousands, so that warre was the vniuersall Chirurgion of these distempered times: And thereafter

O what monstrous multitudes of people were flaine by huge deluges of barbarous armies that overflowed *Italie*, *France* and *Spaine*! and the Christians haue long benee subject to the like calamities wanting a commoditie how they might (not wronging others) in a Christian manner employ the people that were more chargeable then necessary at home, which was the cause of much mischief among themselves, till at that time when *Spaine* was striving with *France* how to part *Italie*, as *Italie* had formerly done with *Carthage* how to part *Spaine*. Then it pleased God having pitie of the Christians who for purposes of small importance did prodigally prostitute the liues of them whom hee had purchased with so pretious a ranfome, as it were for diuerting that violent kind of vanitie, to discouer a new world, which it would seeme in all reason should haue transported them with designs of more moment, whereby glory and profit with a guiltlesse labour was to bee attained with lesse danger whereunto they are as it were inuited, and prouoked with so many eminent aduantages palpably exposed to any cleare judgement that I thinke (this obuious facilitie vilifying that which a further difficulty might the more endear) the easinesse of the prey hath blunted the appetite.

When *Christopher Columbus* had in vaine propounded this enterprife to diuers Christian Princes, *Isabella* of *Castile* against the opinion of her husband (though so much renowned for wit, yet not reaching this myserie) did first furnish him for a Voyage, as if it were fatall that that Nation should owe the greatest part of their greatnesse to the female Sexe, And if the *Spaniards* would sincerely, and gratefully haue bestowed the benefits whereby God did allure them to possesse this Land for the planting of it with Christians enclined to ciuilitie, and religion, it had at this day considering the excellency of the soyle, for all the perfections that nature could afford; benee the most singularly accomplished place of the world, but it hath unfortunately fallen out farre otherwise, that the treasures that are drawne

drawne from thence (mynes to blow vp mindes and rockes to ruine faith) doe proue the feed of diffention, the finewes of the warre, and nurserie of all the troubles amongst Christians.

The *Spaniards* that were so happie as to chance first vp-on this new World, were of all others (hauing but a vast mountainous Countrey) in regard of their scarcity of people, most vnfit for planting thereof, and could not but soone haue abandoned the same, if they had not so quickly encountered with the rich Mynes of *Mexico*, *New Spaine* and *Peru*, which were once likely to haue beene lost for lacke of wood, till the way was inuented of refining Siluer by quicksiluer, which may bee easily done out of any ore that is free from Lead, and (all the *Spaniards* displaying worke as a seruile thing belowe their abilities) their greatest trouble is the want of workmen: for the Natives that are extant, furnishing many vexations, if they become ciuile out of an indulgency to libertie, and ease, whereunto all the *Americans* (liking better of a penurious life thus then to haue plenty with taking paines) are naturally enclined, that they may haue a secure ease warranted by an order, doe betake themselves to Cloisters, so that they haue no meanes to prosecute these workes but by drawing yearly a great number of *Negroes* from *Angola*, and other parts, which being but an vnnaturall merchandise, are bought at a deare rate, and maintayned with danger, for they once of late, as I haue heard from one that was there at that time designed to murder their Masters, by a plot which should haue beene put in execution vpon a Good-friday, when all being exercised at their deuotion were least apt to apprehend such a wicked course, and it is alwaies feared that to renege what of necessitie they must suffer, and to procure their libertie hating most what they feele for the present, and hoping for better by a change, they will joyne with any strong enemy that landing there dare attempt the conquest of that Countrey.

I will not here insist in setting downe the manner how  
the

the *Spaniards* made themselves Masters of so many rich and pleasant Countries, but doe leaue that to their owne Histories, though I confesse (like wisemen) they are very sparing to report the estate of these parts, and doe barre all strangers from hauing acceffe thereunto, wishing to enjoy that which they lone in priuate, and not inconsiderately vinting by the vanitie of praises to procure vnto themselves the vexation that they might suffer by the earnest pursuit of emulating riualls, but as they did brauely begin, and resolutely prosecute their Discoueries in *America*, so hath it iustly recompenced their courage, prouing the ground of all that greatnesse which at this time (not without cause) doth make them (as able, or willing, to conquer others if not both) so much suspected by euery jealous State. And *Henry* the Seuenth the *Salomon* of *England* had his iudgement onely condemned for neglecting that good occasion which was first offered vnto him by *Columbus*, yet did he presently seeke to repaire his error by sending forth *Sebastian Chabot* a *Venetian* who did discouer the Ile of *Newfoundland*, and this part of the Continent of *America* now intended to bee planted by his Majesties Subjects vnder the name of New *England*, and New *Scotland*, so that the fruits of his happie raigne still growing to a greater perfection and now ripe to bee gathered by this age, as he made way by the marriage of his eldest daughter for vniting these two Nations at home, so did hee the same likewise by this discouerie abroad, but the accomplishment of both was reserved for his Majestie now reigning, and no Prince in the world may more easily effectuate such a purpose since his Dominions afford abundance of braue men singularly valued for able bodies and active spirits whereof the *English* haue already giuen good proofe of their sufficiency in forraine Plantations; but before I proceed further in that which doth concerne them I must obserue what the *French* haue done in this kind.

All such aduentrous designs out of ignorance, or enuie (either contemned, or doubtfully censured) are neuer approved,

ued, nor imitated, til they be justified by the successe & then many who had first been too distrustfull falling in the other extremitie of an implicite confidence, to redeeme their former neglects, do precipitate themselves in needlesse dangers. After that the *Spaniards* were knowne to prosper, and that it was conceiued by the Voyage of *Chabot* what a large vastnesse this new Continent was likely to proue, *Francis* the first did furnish forth *Iohn Verrizon* a *Florentine*, who did discover that part of *America* which was first (and most justly) called *New France*, and now *Terra Florida*. And vpon his returne he affirming it to be (as it is indeed for all the excellencies of nature) one of the most pleasant parts of the world, This was the cause that after a long delay (during the space of two Princes whole raignes) some new Discoueries reuiuing the memory of this, in the yeere of God 1562. *Charles* the ninth (hauing a haughty mind, and being so rauished with a desire of glorie, that he was sometimes tempted by sinistrous suggestions in seeking after it to goe vpon wrong grounds) was quickly enamoured with the eminency of such a singular designe, wherein hee did employ *Iohn Ribaut*, who comming to *Florida*, was kindly receiued by the Natiues there, and hauing made choice of a place where to build a Fort, after hee had stayed a time giuing direction for such things as were necessarie to be done, he left forty men therein when hee came away with one Captaine *Albert* to command them, who after that hee had with difficulty beene freed from the danger of famine, and of fire (vnseasonably affecting the disused austeritie of the Ancients) did for a small offence hang one of his companie with his owne hands, so losing both the dignitie of his place, and the hearts of his people at one time, which hee should haue beene extremely studious to preferue, esteeming them as fellowes of his sufferings, and coheires of his hopes, at least the qualitie of the offence and necessitie of his death should haue beene made so cleare, that as importing a common good, all (if not vrging it) should at

least haue condiscended thereunto, but this errour of his was acquitted in as rude a manner: for his companie putting him to death did make choice of another Capitaine, and despairing of a new supplie though wanting skilfull workmen for such a purpose (necessitie sharpening their wits) they builded a little Barque which they calfatted and made fit for the Seas with the Gummes of trees which they found there in stead of Pitch, and in place of Sayles they furnished her with such linnens as they had vpon their beds, and being thus set forth (courageously ouercomming a number of admirable difficulties) did return to *France* after a desperate manner.

The dangerlesse returne, and plausible hopes of *Ribaut*, assisted by the serious perswasions of the Admirall, (the receiued opinion of whose not questioned wisdome was enough to warrant any thing that had his approbation) did moue the *French King* to send out a great number of men with a competent prouision of all things requisite vnder the charge of Monsieur *Laudonier*, who had a prosperous Voyage, and a congratulated arriuall at the *French Fort* by the Sauages in *Florida*, but immediately thereafter hee was extremely perplexed with the vnexpected mutinies and factious offers of some whom he had carried with him, who had not gone thither intending what they pretended, out of a cleare resolution to inhabite that bounds, but did onely flee from some inconueniencies that had vexed them at home, such men as hating labour they could not industriously serue by their endeauours in a mechanike trade, so were they not capable of generous inspirations that prouoke magnanimitie, but habitually bred to vice were naturally enemies to vertue, which made thirtie of them taking away a Barke that belonged to the Plantation betake themselves to the Seas in hope (continuing as they had bene accustomed in naughty courses) to seize vpon a prize whereby they might incontinent bee made rich; and their designe in some measure had the projected issue, but in place of raising their fortunes (the Lord neuer blessing them

them that abandon such a worthe worke, much lesse with a minde to doe mischief) it proued in end a way to worke their confusion, And *Laudoniere* being happy to haue his companie purged of such pestiferous fellows did carrie himselfe brauely as became a commander, aduisedly enquiring concerning the *Sauages*, what their force was, what relation they had one to another, where they were friends or foes, how their pleasures were placed, and by what accounts they reckoned their gaires or losses, so that hee was alwaies ready as might stand best with the good of his affaires to assist, or oppose, to diuide, or agree any partie, thus by shewing power purchasing authoritie, til he drew the ballance of all businesse to bee swayed where hee would as being Master of the Countrey. Hereupon (the vmbragious aspersions of enuie so darkening reason that it could not discerne merite at least out of a depraued opinion with a derogatory censure cancelling all naturall ingenuitie, could not or would not acknowledge what was due thereunto) a report was spread in *France* by some that *Laudoniere* liued like a Prince displaying the condition of a Subject, and the *French* out of a preposterous policie fearing what they should haue wished that one of their owne Nation could be too great abroad, they sent backe *Ribaut* with a new commision to succeed him in his charge, (shaking thereby the first foundation of a growing greatnesse) who seeking to steale priuately vpon him to preuent aduertisements that hee might take him at vnawares did hardly escape to haue bene funke at his first entrie.

Immediately after that *Ribaut* was admitted *Gouernour* (*Laudoniere* hauing shewed himselfe as dutifull to obey as he had bene skilfull in commanding) intelligence was giuen them that fixe *Spanish* Ships were riding at an anchor not farre from thence, and he ambitiously aspiring to grace his beginning with some great matter, against the aduice of all the rest, with an obstinate resolution would needs goe and pursue them taking the best of the companie with him, and so left the Fort weakley guarded, which made it



to proue an easie prey for the *Spaniards* of whom the most part leaning their Ships (a minde transported with hope not thinking of paine) did march thorow the woods whence no perill was expected, and in a maruellous stormy night, as if the very Heauens (accessarily culpable) had conspired with the malice of men for the working of mischief. When the *Frenchmen* (too much affecting their owne ease) had neglected their watch, surprizing their Fort did put them all to the sword; which extreme crueltie of theirs was brauely reuenged by one Capitaine *Gorgues* a Gentleman of *Burdeaux*, who out of a generous disposition being sensible of this publike injurie whereby all his Nation was interested, as if it had only in particular imported the ruine of his owne fortunes, went of purpose to this part, and secretly before his coming was knowne contracting a great friendship with the *Sauages* who did hate the austere countenance, and rigorous gouernment of the *Spaniards*, when it came to be compared with the insinuating formes of the *French*, he found the meanes by a stratagem that he vsed to entrap the *Spaniards*, by the death of them all expiating that which they had made his Countreyemen formerly to suffer, yet after the manner of many being more apt to acquire then to preferue (acting greater things when earried with the impetuositie of a present fury then hee could confirme with the constant progresse of a well settled resolution) he made no more vse of his victorie, but returned back to *France*, flattering himself with the hope of a triumphall welcome, in place whereof by some meanes made [at] Court he was proclaimed a Rebell, as a sacrifice appointed to appease *Spaine*. This was the last thing that the *French* did in *Florida*.

The next forraine aduenture was likewise procured by the Admirall, a worthie man, who would gladly haue diuerted the vindiētīue dispositions of his Countrymen from the bloody ciuile warres wherewith they were then entangled, to prosecute some braue enterprise abroad whereby they might not be made guilty, and yet haue glory. The  
man

man that did offer himfelfe for Conduktor of the Voyage was one *Villegagnon* a Knight of *Malta* who then pretended to be of the reformed religion (as all doe who affect to appeare what they are not indeed) making fhew of extraordinary remorse, and zeale, and that hee had a desire to retire himfelfe from the vanitie, corruption, and vexation of their parts to some remote place in *America*, where professing himfelfe such as he was, he might (free from all kind of impediments) begin a new life, and where he hoped to found such a Colony as should serue for a retreat to all those of the reformed Religion who (weary of the persecutiōs at home) would goe where they might liue with safety, and enjoy the libertie of their conscience, by this meanes hee got a great number to accompany him, amongst whom was *Iohn de Lerie* their Minister, a learned man who wrote a discourse of all that passed in this Voyage, and there were sundry others that came from the Towne of *Geneua*, so that hauing a reasonable number and well provided, hee embarked and sayled towards *Brafile*, making choice of a place fit for a Plantation, where they found (the soile excellent, the Natives well inclined towards them, and a supplie comming in due time) all things so concurring for their contentment that they might haue begunne a greate worke happie and hopefull for their posteritie, if *Villegagnon* had bene the man that he made them beleue he was, but he apparantly neuer louing them of the Religion in his heart had counterfeited to doe so for a time, onely (angling their affections) by this meanes to draw a supply from them; for as soone as hee was settled in his gouernment, that hee found himfelfe strong enough by Catholikes, and others of his friends, that he had with him to doe (as hee thought) what he would, straight remouing the maske that hypocrisie had put vpon him, he discharged all exercise of the reformed religion which no man with more seruency had professed then himfelfe, commanding all to conformance themselves to the orders that he had set downe, but (in place of feare which he purposed to giue, receiuing but contempt)

this base kind of carriage did quite ouerthrowe his authoritie, and they making a partie amongst themselves did remoue with their Minister *Iohn de Lerie*, which diuision of their Colonie in two was the cause that neither could subsist, so that *Villagagnon* abandoning that Countrey, all after many seuerall designs returned vnto *France*, hauing found no impediment to so good a purpose but the peruerseness of such mindes as they had carried with them.

Monsieur *De Larauerdier* a very worthie Gentleman did of late enterprise the like course in the same bounds, and was crossed in the same manner by the difference of Religion (disputations quickning them to contrauert who will not be conuerted) that distracted his companie with seuerall opinions, yet at this time a long continuance making that lesse strange amongst the *French* then it was wont to be, the Gentleman did command with such judgement, and discretion, that what euer priuate dislike was, it neuer burst forth in any open insurrection. And for the space of foure or fife yeeres being befriended by the Natiues, though continually opposed both by the *Spaniards*, and by the *Portugals*, yet he alwaies preuayled, liuing (as himselfe told me) with more contentment then euer he had done in his time either before or since; hee could neuer discern any Winter there by the effects, seeing no stormy weather at all, and finding a continuall greenesse to beautifie the fields, which did afford such abundance, and variety of all things necessary for the maintaynance, that they were neuer in any danger of famine, but in end finding no more people coming from *France*, and fearing that time should weare away them that were with him; then being flattered with the loue of his native soyle, longing to see his friends, and tempted by the hope of a present gaine, which as he imagined might the better enable him for some such purpose in another part, he capitulated with the *Spaniards* to surrender the place hauing assurāce giuen him for a great summe of money which should haue beene deliuered in  
*Spaine,*

*Spaine*, but comming to receiue the same (it being more easie to pay debt by reuenging a pretended injurie then with money which some would rather keepe then their Faith) he was cast in prison, where hee remayned long, till at last he was deliuered by the mediation of our Kings Ambassadour, and came here where I spake with him of purpose to giue his Majestie thanks. I heare that for the present he is now at *Rochell* (with a hope to repaire his error) ready to embarque for some such like enterprife. This is all that the *Frenchmen* haue done in the South parts of *America*, and now I will make mention of their proceedings in these parts that are next vnto vs.

*Francis* the first of *France*, a braue Prince, and naturally giuen to great things, after the Voyage made by *Iohn Verrizan* (*Chabot* hauing discovered the Continent for *Henry* the feuenth) did send forth *James Quartier* one of *Saint Malo*, who by two feuerall Voyages did discover the Riuer of *Cannada*, and by his relation doth commend it exceedingly as being fertile in variety of Fishes, and bordered with many pleasant meadowes, and stately woods, hauing in fundry parts abundance of Vines growing wilde, chiefly in one Ile which he hath called by the name of the Ile of *Orleans*. This man neuer made any Plantation at all, but onely discovered and traffiqued with the Sauages, neither was there any further done by *Roberwall*, who did liue one Winter at Cape *Breton*.

The Marquesse *De la Roche* by a Commission from *Henry* the fourth, intending a Voyage for *Cannada*, happened by the way vpon the Ile of *Sablon* (which is now comprehended with the Patent of *New Scotland*) and there (trusting to the strength of the place where there are no Sauages at all) landed some of his men till hee should haue found a conuenient place within the maine Land fit for habitation, promising then to returne for them; but it was his fortune by reason of contrary winds neuer to finde the maine Land, being blowne backe to *France* without seeing of them, where he was in the time of the ciuile warres

warres (such is the vncertainty of worldly things producing vnexpected effects) taken prisoner by the Duke of *Merceaur*, and shortly after died, so that his people whom hee had left at *Sablon* furnished but for a short time had quickly spent their provisions, and tooke for their maintenance onely such things as the place it selfe did without labour freely afford, which hath a race of *Kowes* (as is thought) first transported thither by the *Portugals* that haue long continued there, and sundry roots fit to be eaten, with abundance of Fishes, Fowle and Venison. And (hauiing no meanes to liue but by sport) as for their apparell they clothed themselues with the skinnes of such creatures as they could kill by Land, or Sea, so that liuing there for the space of twelue yeeres when they were presented to *Henry* the fourth who had hired a Fisherman to bring them home, as I haue heard from them that did see them at first before the King, they were in very good health, and looked as well, as if they had liued all that time in *France*: But hauiing beene abused by the Fisherman who (cunningly concealing that he had beene directed by the King) did bargain with them to haue all their skinnes for transporting them home, which were of great value, some of them being of black Foxes, which were sold at fiftie pounds sterling a piece, and aboue, for the recouerie thereof they intended a proesse against him before the Court of Parliament at *Paris*, wherein by the equitie of their cause, or by the compasion of the Iudges, they preuailed, gayning by that meanes a stocke wherewith to trafique in these parts againe.

*Monfieur De Montes* procuring a Patent from *Henry* the fourth of *Cannada* from the 40. degree Eastward comprehending all the bounds that is now both within *New England* and *New Scotland* (after that Queene *Elizabeth* had formerly giuen one thereof as belonging to this Crowne by *Chabots* Discouerie) did set forth with a hundred persons fitted for a Plantation, carried in two ships of small burthen, which parting from *France* on seuerall dayes did  
appoint

appoint their meeting at the Port of *Campseau*, but the ship wherein Monsieur *De Montes* had placed himselfe going first, and fearing the huge Mountaines of Ice that dissolving from the farre Northerne parts come alongst the coast of *Newfound-land* during the Spring time, did take her course more to the South, and arrived at Port *De Muton* a Bay now in the fore-land of *New Scotland*, from whence one of the Natives of the Countrey (either out of courtesie, or to gayne a reward) leaving his Wife and Children (as a pledge, or else to be nourished with them) went to *Campseau*, and within a weeke brought them newes from their other Ship that had arrived there, which comming to them, and Monsieur *Champlein* who had gone in a shallop to discover the coast being returned, they sayled together Westwards to Cape *Sable*, and from thence Northwards to Bay Saint *Maries*, where towards the South side thereof they found good meadows and arable ground fit to be planted vpon, and towards the North a mountainous and minerall bounds, having discovered one veine of metall that did hold Siluer, and two of Iron stone: After this, having seene Port *Royall*, they went to the River called by them *Sante Croix*, but more fit now to bee called *Tweed*, because it doth diuide *New England* and *New Scotland*, bounding the one of them vpon the East, and the other vpon the West side thereof, here they made choice of an Ile that is within the middle of the same where to winter, building houses sufficient to lodge their number; There, besides other sorts of wood, they had store of Cedar trees, and found the ground very fertile as it did proue afterwards, bringing forth that which they did sow with an extraordinary encrease, yet during the Winter time when they could not conueniently goe to the maine Land, they found it a very incommodious dwelling, specially for want of fresh Springs; And the soyle being of it selfe humid, and obnoxious to waters, they had not bene so industrious as to cast a ditch wherewith to drie the ground whereupon their houses stood, and in end finding that a little Ile was

D

but

but a kind of large prifon, they refolved to returne vnto Port *Royall*, whereof I will giue a particular Defcription, becaufe it was the place of their refidence, as I intend it to be for the chiefe Colonie of the *Scottish* Nation, grounding that which I am to deliuer vpon fuch Difcourfes as the *Frenchmen* haue written, and vpon that which I haue heard reported by fundry others who haue feene the fame.

The entry in Port *Royall* is from the South fide of a great Bay, which doth make the South part of *New Scotland* almoft an Ile, and hath the paffage at firft fo narrow, with a current fo violent, that Ships can hardly enter if they take not the Tide right, and may eafily be commanded by any Ordnance that is planted on either fide, where there are parts fit for that purpofe; As foon as they are within the Bay, it doth enlarge it felfe to the bredth of feuen or eight miles, and doth continue fo as if it were fquare for the like bounds in length; There are within the fame two Iles euery one of them extending it felfe about three miles in circuit, and both are well garnifhed with trees, and graffe; Diuers Riuers and Brookes doe fall within this large bofome on euery fide, of which the chiefe is one that doth come from the South, being difcouered to be about fortie miles portatiue, and it hath all alongft on euery fide for the bounds of a mile, or halfe a mile at leaft, very faire meadowes which are fubieft to bee ouerflowed at high tides, and there is Land fit to be laboured lying betweene them and the woods, which doe compaffe all about with very faire trees of fundry forts, as Oakes, Afh, Playnes, Maple, Beech, Birch, Cyprefle, Pine and Firre; The great Riuier doth abound exceedingly in Salmon and Smelts during their feafon, and euery little Brooke in Trouts. One Lake within this Bay hath yeerely a great quantitie of Herrings, which by reafon of a ftri&t way which they paffe are eafie to be taken, and all the yeere ouer they neuer want fhell-fifh, fuch as Lobfters, Crabs, Cockles and Muffels. The chiefe beafts that inhabite the Woods there, are Ellans, Hart, Hind, and fallow Deere, with ftore of other wilde beafts,



beasts, such as Wolues, Beares, Foxes, and Otters, but the most usefull of all is the Beaver, both for his flesh that is esteemed to be very delicate for eating, and for the skinne that is of good value; as for wild foule, there is great varietie and store, of Partridges, Plouers, Woodcockes, Larkes, Wild Geese, Wild Duckes, Heron and Crane, with many other sorts peculiar to that part of the World, and not knowne here.

Vpon the East side of this Port the *French* did entrench themselves, building such houses as might serue to accomodate their number, and a little from thence *Monseigneur Champlain* did cut a walke through the Woods, where they delighted to repaire in Summer to shroud themselves from the heate, and the rather that they had a sweet Melodie which was made by the varietie of voyces, of singing Birds which without any affectation did afford them naturall Musicke.

Some fixe miles further vp that side of the Riuer, they built a Barne, and laboured ground for Wheat, ouer against which they made a Water-mill vpon a Riuer, that doth fall in on the West side, the Damme of it beeing there where the Herrings haunt most, and they did likewise try some ground neere by for Wheate, whereas their owne Writers make mention, they reaped aboue fortie for one, but what they did was rather trying the nature of the soile to satisfie their curiositie then to haue a quantitie fit for their maintenance, which they trusted to bee sent vnto them by two Merchants from the *Rochell*, and were that way well furnished so long as they kepted their skinnes to giue them in exchange (but the Merchants either by some priuate conueyances) or by the comming in of some *Flemmings* to traffique, being disappointed by the Planters as soone as they missed their present Commoditie did likewise frustrate them of the prouisions that they expected. Whereupon *Monseigneur de Montes* betaking himselfe to trade for Furres, *Monseigneur Poutrincourt* resolved to prosecute the Plantation at that place, and sent for his Son

*Biencourt* to *France*, to bargain with some that would send them a supply, such as was requisite for establishing of that Colony.

The first that embraced his Propositions were the Iesuites who as they haue ordinarily good wits which made them the rather capable of so aduantageous a proiect, so they were the more animated thereunto (by vpbrayding the laziness of our Clergie) to shew with what seruencie they trauell to propagate the Gospell in doing whereof (whither it be ambition or deuotion that prouokes them sparing no paines) they haue travelled both to the East and West *Indies*, and to that admired Kingdome of *China*; their Societie in *France* preuayling with all that had any inclination either to religion, or to vertue did easily gather a voluntary contribution for the furthering of so commendable a purpose, thereafter they sent away two Fathers of their company with a new supply of all things necessarie to the Plantation at Port *Royall*, but shortly after their arriuall (their predominant disposition hardly yeelding to any Superiour, specially if it be a Secular power) they beganne to contradict *Poutrincourt*, in the execution of these Decrees which had beene giuen forth by him as Ciuil Magistrate of that place. Whereupon the Gentleman extreemely discontented, and wearie of contesting with them, hauing said that it was his part to rule them vpon earth, and theirs onely to guide him the way to Heauen, he returned back to *France*, leaving his Sonne *Biencourt* in his place, who being a youth at that time of more courage then circumspectnesse, displaying to be controlled by them whom he had invited thither, and scorning their insupportable presumption, and imperious kinde of carriage, vsing Spirituall Armes for Temporall ends, whose spleene had excommunicated and branded him with a Spirituall censure, hee threatned them by his Temporall power with a more palpable punishment, so that after much controuersie, resolving to separate themselves, the two Iesuites taking a part of the company with them, went from thence  
to

to a place in *New England*, called by them *Mount Desert*, where they feated themselves, and hauing a supply from the Queene Mother, did plant fundry fruit trees of the most delicate kinds in *France*, such as Apricookes, and Peaches neuer intending to remoue from thence.

At this time Sir *Samuell Argall*, who hath beene Gouernour of *Virginia*, coasting alongst *New England*, to trafique, discover, or to acquire things necessary for the Southerne Colonie in these parts, where the Lands are reputed to be more fertile, and the Seas more frequented, did conceive by a description made vnto him by the Sauages, that there were some come from this part of the World to inhabit there, and being ialous of any thing that might derogate from the honour, or prooue preiudiciall to the benefit of his Nation, whereof their interest in this was easie to be apprehended, hee went whereas hee was informed that they were, and his vnexpected arriuall, as it would seeme, not onely amazing the mindes of the *French*, but likewise preuenting their preparation, and resolution, he approached so neere to a ship that lay before their Fort, that hee beate them all that were within, with Musket shot, from making any vse of their Ordnance, and killed one of the two Iesuites, who was giuing fire to a Peece; hauing taken the ship he landed and went before the Fort, summoning them that were within to yeeld themselves, who at the first made some difficultie, asking a time to aduise, but that being refused, they priuately abandoned the Fort, stealing out by some back way into the Woods, where they stayed one night, and the next day comming backe rendred themselves, giuing vp the Patent they had from the *French* King to bee cancelled, hee vsed them courteously, as their owne Writers doe make mention, suffering such as had a minde to goe for *France*, to seeke out fishers ships wherein they might bee transported, the rest that were willing to goe for *Virginia*, went thither alongst with him, no man hauing lost his life, but onely that one Iesuite who was killed whilest they made resistance during the time of the

conflict, thereafter Father *Biard* the other of the Iesuities comming backe from *Virginia*, with Sir *Samuell Argall*, out of the indigestable malice that he had conceiued against *Biencourt*, did informe him where he had planted himselfe offering (as hee did) to conduct him thither. As soone as they were entred within the Port, neere the vppermost of the Ilands, Sir *Samuell* directing the Ship to ride at a reasonable distance to attend occasions before the Fort, did land himselfe with fortie of the best of his men vpon a Medow, where immediatly they heard a Peece of Ordnance from the Fort, and he conceiuing since it was shot whilst it could do no harme that it was done either but to giue terrour to them, or to warne some that might happen to bee abroad, Did make the greater haste towards the Fort, where hee presently entred, finding it abandoned without any men at all, left for the defence thereof, hee went vp the Riuer side five or sixe miles, where hee saw their Barnes and the ground where a great quantitie of Wheate had growne, which he carried with him to serue for Seed in *Virginia*, he saw likewise their Corn Mill very conueniently placed, which together with the Barnes hee left standing vntouched. As for the Fort it selfe he destroyed it downe to the ground, razing the *French* Armes, and leauing no monument remayning, that might witnesse their being there.

After this *Biencourt* who had beene some where abroad trauellling through the Countrey, comming home desired to conferre with Sir *Samuell Argall*, who did meete with him apart from the Company vpon a Medow, and after they had expostulated a space for what had past controverting concerning the *French* and *English* Title to these bounds, at last *Biencourt* offered (if hee might haue a protection) to depend vpon our King, and to draw the whole Furres of that Countrey to one Port, where he would diuide them with him, As likewise he would shew him good Metalls, whereof hee gaue him pieces, but the other refused to ioyne in any societie with him, protesting that his Commission was onely to displant him, and that if hee  
found

found him there, after that time hee would vse him as an enemy, *Biencourt* labouring earnestly to haue had the Iesuit (as he confessed) with a purpose to hang him. Whilst they were discoursing together, one of the *Sauages* came suddenly forth from the Woods, and licentiated to come neere, did after this manner earnestly mediate a peace, wondring why they that seemed to bee of one Countrey should vse others with such hostilitie, and that with such a forme of habit and gesture as made them both to laugh.

After this *Biencourt* remoouing from thence to some other part, *Monsieur Champlain* who had liued long here, did carrie a company with him from *France*, of some fortie persons or thereabouts vp the Riuer of *Canada*, whom hee planted on the North side thereof, with a purpose to serue for a *Factorie*, drawing all the Trade of that farre running Riuer (which a Plantation would haue disperfed in many parts) within the hands of a few whom he doth command otherwise if his desires had beene bended that way, hee might haue planted many people there ere now, the place is called *Kebeck*, where the *French* doe prosper well, hauing Corne by their owne labour, which may furnish themselues for food, and likewise for a stocke to traffique with the *Sauages*, with fundry Fruits, Roots, Vine, Grapes and Turkie Wheate. *Champlain* hath discovered the Riuer of *Canada*, from the Gulf vpwards aboue twelue hundred miles, finding in it sometimes such falles, as to scape the same, he must carrie his Boate a little way by Land, and then hee did many times come to great Lakes at the end whereof hee did alwayes find a Riuer againe, and the last Lake where hee came was a very huge one, iudged to bee three hundred miles in length, by the report of some *Sauages*, who did affirme vnto him, that at the further end thereof they did find Salt-water, and that they had seene great Vessels which made *Champlain* beleeeue that a passage might be there to the Bay of *California*, or to some part of the South Sea, which would prooue an inestimable benefit for the Inhabitants of those parts, opening a neere way to  
China,

*China*, which hath bene so many fundry wayes with so great charges so long fought for, howsoever in regard of the season, and for want of necessary provisions, *Champlein* did returne backe at that time with a purpose to goe againe another yeere, which if he hath done is not yet knowne, but this is most certaine, that the Riuer of *Canada* hath a long course and through many goodly Countreyes, some of these great Lakes by sending forth, or by receiuing great Riuers, do afford meanes of commerce as farre as to some parts of *Terra Florida*, as may bee gathered by *Champleins* Discouerie. And now having giuen a breuiarie of all that is done by the *French* in *America*, I will next report of that which hath bene done by some others.

I will not here make mention of the many and braue Voyages that at the Sea haue happily bene performed by the *English*, which fame by eternall records hath recommended to be applauded by the best judgements of euery age, but I will only shortly touch that which they haue attempted by way of Plantation, beginning with the *New-found Land* which was first discovered, and doth lie neereft to this Countrey. Sir *Humphrey Gilbert* hauing a commission from Queene *Elizabeth* did take possession of it in her name at *Saint Iohns* Harbour, and thereafter purposed to haue seene *Canada*, but encountering with some vnexpected crosses as hee was returning from thence, seeking to condemne an opinion (malice or enuie ordinarily taxing all aspiring spirits whose vertue by way of reflection doth vpbraide the basenesse of others) that had bene conceiued of him as wanting courage, he precipitated himselfe vpon an other extremitie, not to seeme fearefull, prouing desperate; for in the time of a storme, out of a needlesse brauerie, to shew a contempt of danger, being in a little small Pinnace, and refusing to come to his best Shippe that was of a large burden, hee was suddenly swallowed vp by the waues neere to the Ile of *Sablon*, and his death did ouerthrowe great hopes of a Plantation that by the generousnesse of his minde might iustly haue bene expected from him;

him ; but long before his time and euer since the *English* had vfed to fith vpon the Banke, and within the Bayes of *Newfound Land*, and the sweetneffe of the benefit arrifing from thence, did perfwade a companie composed of *Londoners* and *West-country* men to joyne together for fending fome to inhabite there, where before howfoeuer the Summer was large as hote as here, the Winter was thought vnfufterable.

The first houfes for a habitation were built in *Cupids* Coue within the Bay of *Conception*, where people did dwell for fundry yeeres together, and fome well fatisfied both for pleafure, and profit, are dwelling there fill, finding finall difference betweene the feafons of the yeere in that Climate, and here. There is another Plantation begunne at Harbour à *Grace* within the fame Bay by the Citie of *Brifcoll*, called *Bristols Hope*, whereas by the fowing and reaping of fome Cornes of fundry forts doth appeare what further may poffibly be expected ; And within thefe three yeeres Mafter Secretary *Caluert* hath planted a companie at *Ferriland*, who both for building and making triall of the ground haue done more than euer was performed before by any in fo fhort a time, hauing already there a brood of Horfes, Kowes, and other beaftial, and by the induftry of his people he is beginning to draw back yeerly fome benefit from thence already: which courfe howfoeuer at first it proue good, or bad for his particular, is by example beneficiall for the publike.

Laft, I heare that my Lord Vicount *Falkland* now Lord Deputie of *Ireland*, hath this laft yeere sent a companie to inhabite at *Renouze* a place lying South-weft from *Ferriland*, where the foyle is eftemed to be the beft whereupon any hath fetled there as yet, and hee hath the fhorteft way, and beft opportunitie of any within his Majefties Dominions for tranfporting of people and cattell to that part from *Ireland*, which if his courfe bee rightly directed, as all haue reafon to wifh, may promife him a good fucceffe.

The first Patentees for *Newfound-land* haue giuen mee



a grant of that part thereof which doth lie North-west from the Bay of *Placentia* to the great Gulfe of *Canada* ouer-against *New Scotland*, where I had made a Plantation ere now, if I had not beene diuerted by my designes for *New Scotland*, but I purpose to doe it as soone as conueniently I may. The most part of the bounds whereupon any hath planted as yet in *Newfound Land* is found to be rockie and not fit to be manured: it may be these that made choice thereof (neglecting the Land) had onely a regard to dwell commodiously for making vse of the Sea, the present profits whereof doth recompence the losse of that which might be expected by the other, but there can be no hope of any constant dwelling where the people that inhabite doe not take a course to maintaine themselves by their owne Cornes, and pasture, as all there might doe, if they would respect their posteritie more then the present time.

Before I come to the Continent I must remember the Iles of the *Bermudas*, whose Discouerie and Plantation was procured by so strange a meanes, for a Ship happening to perish vpon their Coast, her passengers seeking the next Land for a refuge, they were compelled to doe that out of necessitie whereunto in good reason, both for honour and profit, they might more warrantably haue beene inuited; Thus doth benefit flowe from losse, safety from ruine, and the Plantation of a Land from the desolation of a Shippe: they found at the first store of Hogs, which in all appearance had their beginning from some such an accident as theirs was, and the Fowles were there in abundance so easie to be taken that they could scarcely be frighted away, these first people by repairing of their Ship which was cast away vpon the Land, or by building some other Vessel out of her ruines, coming backe to *England*, and reporting what was past, some joyned together in a companie after they had taken a Patent thereof from the King, and did send people of purpose to inhabite there, who trusting too much to the goodnesse of the soyle, and neglecting their owne industrie, or not gouerning that well which was carried

ried with them, were reduced to a great distresse for want of victuals, so that, if they had not beene confined within an Iland (more sensible of a present suffering then capable of future hopes) they would willingly haue retired from thence, but a great quantitie of Ambergreece hauing been found by one by chance, and sent backe in a Ship that was going for *London*, their Merchants finding it to bee of a great value, were so encouraged by such a substantiall argument, that they presently dispatched away a new supply of persons and all provisions necessary, who arriuing there, and hauing considered what a gulfe of famine was likely to haue swallowed their fellowes, they improving their judgement by the others experience, by betaking themselves to labour in time did preuent the like inconuenience; there is no land where man can liue without labour, nor none so barren whence industrie cannot draw some benefit. All *Adams* posteritie were appointed to worke for their food, and none must dreame of an absolute ease, which can no where subsist positiuely, but onely comparatively, according to the occasions more or lesse.

This Plantation of the *Bermudas*, a place not knowne when the King came to *England*, hath prospered so in a short time, that at this present, besides their ordinary (and too extraordinarily valued) commoditie of Tobacco, they haue growing there Oranges, Figs, and all kind of fruits that they please to plant, and doe now intend to haue a Sugar worke. These Iles being about twentie miles in bredth can onely be entred but by one passage, which is fortified and easily commanded by Ordnance, so that, hauing no Sauages within, and fearing no forces without, it is esteemed to be impregnable; and the number of the Inhabitants there, being neere three thousand persons, are sufficient for the ground that they possesse. This part may proue exceedingly steadable to this State, if euer it happen to haue (as it hath heretofore had) any designs for seruice in these Seas.

The first Plantation that euer the *English* intended a-  
E 2
broad

broad was in *Virginia*, which was first discovered and named so by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who in the time of Queene *Elizabeth* did place some persons to inhabite there, who not being supplied in time, or out of ignorance, or laziness, not using the ordinary means (the usual fault of all beginners) were brought by famine to a great extremity. And Sir *Francis Drakes* coming by chance that way did transport them backe with him to *England*, whilest at the same time there was another companie furnished forth by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who missing them whom they expected to have found there, did remaine still themselves; but what did become of them, if they did remove to some other part, perill, disperse, or incorporate with the *Sauages* (no monument of them remayning) is altogether unknowne. This noble worke hauing so hard a beginning after a long discontinuance was renewed againe in the Kings time by a companie composed of Noblemen, Gentlemen, and Merchants, who (joyning priuate purses with publike supplies) did send thither a sufficient Colonie, well furnished with all things necessary, who after their first coming had a continuall warre with the *Natiues*, till it was reconciled by a Marriage of their Kings sister with one of the Colonie, who hauing come to *England*, as shee was returning backe, died, and was buried at *Grauesend*. This euen amongst these *Sauages* (libertie being valued aboue life) as they were induced to contest in time, before that power which they suspected, could come to such a height, that it might haue a possibilitie of depressing them, so was their malice with their feares, quickly calmed by the meanes of a marriage; Lawfull allyances thus by admitting equalitie remove contempt, and giue a promiscuous off-spring extinguishing the distinction of persons, which if that People become Christians, were in some sort tolerable, for it is the onely course that uniting minds, free from jealousies, can first make strangers confide in a new friendship, which by communicating their blood with mutuall assurance is left hereditary to their posteritie.

This

This longed for peace, though it bred a great contentment for the time, was attended by wrapping them that apprehended no further danger (too common an inconvenience) vp in the lazie remiffeneffe of improuident securitie. For a number leauing the feate of the mayne Colonie, did difperfe themfelues to liue apart, as if they had bin into a well inhabited Countrey, which (as perchance) it had emboldened the Sauages to imbrace the first ocaſion of a quarrell, ſo did it giue them an eaſie way for executing the miſchiefe that they intended, by killing two or three hundred perſons before they could aduertize one another, farre leſſe, ioyne to oppoſe them in a company together, which courſe might not onely then haue made them able to reſiſt, but preuenting the others reſolution had kept them from being purſued : yet I heare of late, that they haue reuenged this iniury (though (as ſome report) not after a commendable manner) by killing their King, with a great number of the chiefe of them whom they ſuſpected moſt.

This plantation of *Virginia*, if it had not beene croſſed by the Incurſion of the Sauages abroad, and by the diuiſion of their Owners at home, had attayned to a great perfection ere now, hauing had Inhabitants from hence to the number of neere three thouſand perſons, and if ſome of them who are there, being Lords of reaſonable proportions of ground, and hauing people of their owne, owing nothing but due obedience to a Superiour Power, and the leading of a life conforme to the Lawes, had no care but (making their Lands to maintayne themſelues) how to build, plant, and plenish in ſuch fort as might beſt eſtabliſh a fortune for their Poſteritie, they might quickly make vp a new Nation, but it is a great diſcouragement vnto them who dwell there, that they muſt labour like the Seruants of a Family purchaſing their food and rayment from *England*, in exchange of Tobacco, as they are directed by their Maſters, many whereof are ſtrangers to the eſtate of that bounds, and intending to ſettle none of their Race there,

haue no care but how the best benefit may presently bee drawne backe from thence, the number of voyces at their assemblies preuayling more then the foundnesse of iudgement, otherwise that Countrey before this time for Wine, Oyle, Wheate, and other things necessary for the life of man might haue equalled for the like quantitie any bounds within *Europe*, to which the soile of it selfe lacking nothing but the like industry is no way inferiour. And it is to be exceedingly wished by all his Maiesties subiects that the Plantation of *Virginia* may prosper well, which lying neerest to the part from whence danger might come, may proue a Bulwarke for the safetie of all the rest.

That which is now called *New England* was first comprehended within the Patent of *Virginia*, being the North-east part thereof, it was vndertaken in a Patent by a company of Gentlemen in the West of *England*, one of whom was Sir *John Popham* then Lord Chiefe Iustice, who sent the first company that went of purpose to inhabite there neer to *Segadahock*, but those that went thither, being preferred to that enterprize, as endangered by the Law, or by their owne necessities (no enforced thing prouing pleasant, discontented persons suffering, while as they act can seldom haue good successe, and neuer satisfaction) they after a Winter stay dreaming to themselves of new hopes at home returned backe with the first occasion, and to iustifie the suddenesse of their returne, they did coyne many excuses, burdening the bounds where they had bene with all the aspersions that possibly they could deuise, seeking by that meanes to discourage all others, whose prouident forwardnes importuning a good successe, might make their base sluggishnesse for abandoning the beginning of a good worke, to be the more condemned.

About a foure yeeres since, a shippe going for *Virginia*, comming by chance to harbour in the South-west part of *New England*, neere Cape *Cod*, the company whom shee carried for Plantation, being weary of the Sea, and enamored with the beautie of the bounds that first offered it selfe vnto them gorgeously garnished with all wherewith  
preg-

pregnant nature rauishing the sight with variety) can grace a fertile field, did resolue to stay, and seated themselves in that place which is now called *New Plimmouth*, where they haue builded good houses, and by their owne industry haue provided themselves in such sort as they are likely to subsist, keeping a good correspondencie with the Captaines of the Sauages, who haue done nothing hitherto that might offend them (and after this) though they would dare attempt nothing to their prejudice, who are now about two hundred persons, and doe increase their number yeerely. They find both the Land and the Seas there abounding in all things needfull for the vse of man, and doe gouerne themselves after a very ciuill and prouident manner.

Sir *Ferdinando Gorge* hath beene a chiefe man for the furtherance of all things that might tend to the aduancement of *New England*, hauing beene at great charges these many yeeres past for the Discouerie thereof, in doing which (a good intention bent for other ends, casually bringing forth this effect) the fishing there (not sought for) was found, which doth prooue now so profitable, as fortie or fiftie Sayle are employed there from *England* yeerely, and all that haue gone thither, haue made aduantagious Voyages.

This last yeere, he sent his Sonne Captaine *Robert Gorge* with a Colonie to be planted in *Messasuats* bonds, and as I heare out of a generous desire by his example to encourage others for the aduancement of so braue an Enterprize he is resolved shortly to goe himsele in person, and to carrie with him a great number well fitted for such a purpose, and many Noblemen in *England*, (whose names and proportions as they were marshalled by lot, may appeare vpon the Map) hauing interessed themselves in that bounds, are to send seuerall Colonies, who may quickly make this to exceed all the other Plantations.

Hauing fundry times exactly weighed that which I haue already deliuered, and beeing so exceedingly enflamed to doe some good in that kinde, that I would rather bewray  
the

the weaknesse of my power, then conceale the greatnesse of my desire, being much encouraged hereunto by Sir *Ferdinando Gorge*, and some vthers of the vndertakers for *New England*, I shew them that my Countrimen would neuer aduenture in such an Enterprize, vnlesse it were as there was a *New France*, a *New Spaine*, and a *New England*, that they might likewise haue a *New Scotland*, and that for that effect they might haue bounds with a correspondencie in proportion (as others had) with the Countrey whereof it should beare the name, which they might hold of their owne Crowne, and where they might bee gouerned by their owne Lawes; they wisely considering that either *Virginia*, or *New England*, hath more bounds then all his Maiesties subiects are able to plant, and that this purpose of mine by breeding a vertuous emulation amongst vs, would tend much to the aduancement of so braue a worke, did yeeld to my desire, designing the bounds for mee in that part, which hath bene questioned by the *French*, and leauing the limits thereof to bee appointed by his Maiesties pleasure, which are exprest in the Patēt granted vnto me, vnder his great Seale of his Kingdome of *Scotland*, marching vpon the West towards the Riuēr of *Saint Croix* now *Tweed* (where the *Frenchmen* did designe their first Habitation) with *New England*, and on all other parts it is compassed by the great Ocean, and the great Riuēr of *Canada*, so that though fundry other preceeding Patentēs are imaginarily limited by the degrees of the Heauen, I thinke that mine be the first National Patent that euer was cleerly bounded within *America* by particular limits vpon the Earth.

As soon as my Patent was passed, resolving to take possession of the Lands, that were granted vnto me, I prouided my selfe of a ship at *London*, in the moneth of March, in *Anno* 1622, but that the businesse might beginne from that Kingdome, which it doth concerne, whereby some of my Countrimen might be perswaded to goe, and others by conceiuing a good opinion thereof, to depend by expectation



tion vpon the reports of ſuch of their acquaintance, as were to aduenture in that Voyage, I directed her to go about by S. *Georges* Channell, to *Kircubright*, where ſhe arriued in the end of May; Some Gentlemen of that country, vpon whoſe friendship I repoſed moſt, happening at that time to bee out of the Kingdome, I encountred with ſundry vnexpected difficulties: the prizes of victuals beeing within the ſpace of three monethes, ſince I had parted before from *Scotland*, ſuddenly tripled, and yet ſo ſcarce as I could hardly in haſte bee well furniſhed, yet ſince I was ſo far aduanced, left I ſhould looſe that which was done, if I did not the reſt, I vſed the beſt diligence I could to provide the ſhippe with all things neceſſary. Then the very people ſpecially Artizens, of whom I ſtood in need, were at firſt loth to imbarke for ſo remote a part, as they imagined this to bee, ſome ſcarce beleeuing that there could be any ſuch bounds at all, and no wonder, ſince neuer any in that part had euer trauelled thither, and all nouelties beeing diſtrufled, or diſualued, few of good fort would goe, and ordinarie perſons were not capeable of ſuch a purpoſe.

At laſt, in the end of Iune, they parted from thence to the Ile of *Man*, and after ſome ſtay there, in the beginning of Auguſt, leauing the ſight of his Maieſties Dominions, did betake themſelues to the Sea. Though by reaſon of the lateneſſe of their ſetting forth, they had the windes very contrary about the middeſt of September, they diſcovered Saint *Peters* Ilands, and were neere to Cape *Bretton*, but yet were beaten backe againe by a great ſtorme to *New-found-land*. And as they paſſed by the Bay of *Placentia*, neglecting the occaſion to place themſelues in ſome part of my bounds, there as they might haue done, they went into Saint *Iohns* Harbour, where they concluded to ſtay that Winter, and ſent the ſhip home for a new ſupply of ſuch things as were needfull.

Though it might haue diſcouraged mee much, that they had retired to *New-found-land*, foreſeeing that what they had with them might be waſted, and that it would bee as

chargeable and difficult to furnish them forth from thence, as if they were to goe of new from *Scotland*, yet rather then they should bee in danger for want of prouision, making me any way guiltie of their losse, that had aduentured their liues, trusting to my care, I fraughted a shippe of purpose furnished with such things as were required in a Note, which they sent home with their Messenger. This shippe was dispatched by mee from *London* in the end of March 1623, but shee happened to stay so long at *Plimmouth*, first, vpon some necessary occasions, and last by contrary winds, it being the eight and twentieth of April, before shee parted from thence, hauing no good windes at all, that they arrived not at Saint *Iohns* Harbour, till the fift of Iune. At their comming they found the company not fit for a Plantation which had first by an vnexpected cause been deuided in two during the Winter, and in May some doubting of a supply, had engaged themselues to serue Fishermen, by which meanes they gained their maintenance, and some meanes beside, so that they could hardly be gathered together againe, and their Minister and Smith (both for Spirituall and Temporall respects, the two most necessary members) were both dead, so that seeing no hope to plant themselues in any good fashion that yeere, ten of the principall persons concluded to go alongst with the ship to *New Scotland*, to discover the Countrey, and to make choice of a fit place for a Habitation against the next yeere, considering very well, that they could not doe so much good by staying there with so few a number, as they might doe at their returne, by reporting the truth to their friends, of that which they had seene, whereby a new Colonie might be encouraged to set forth well furnished, and instructed according to that which might bee learned by their experience.

The three and twentieth of Iune, they loosed from Saint *Iohns* Harbour, and sayled towards *New Scotland*, where for the space of fourteene dayes, they were by fogges and contrary winds kept backe from spying Land till the eight of Iuly, that they saw the West part of Cape *Bretton*, and  
till

till the thirteenth day, they sayled alongft the Coaft, till they ranne the length of Port *de Mutton*, where they difcovered three very pleafant Harbours, and went alhore in one of them, which after the fhippes name, they called *Lukes Bay*, where they found a great way vp a very pleafant Riuer, being three fathom deep at a low water at the entry thereof, & on euery fide of the fame they did fee very delicate Medowes, hauing Rofes white and red, growing thereon with a kind of wilde Lilly, which had a daintie fmel, the next day they refolued (coafting alongft the land) to difcouer the next Harbour, which was but two leagues diftant from the other, where they found a more pleafant Riuer then the firft, being foure fathome deepe at a low water with Medowes on both fides thereof, hauing Rofes and Lillies growing thereon as the other had, they found within this Riuer, a very fit place for a Plantation, both in regard that it was naturally apt to be fortified, and that all the ground betweene the two Riuers, was without wood, and very good fat Earth, hauing feuerall forts of berries growing thereon, as Goose-berries, Straw-berries, Hind-berries, Rasberries, and a kind of red Wine berie, as alfo fome forts of graine, as Peafe, fome Eares of Wheate, Barly and Rie growing there wilde; the Peafe grow in abundance alongft the Coaft, very bigge and good to eate, but did taste of the fitch: this Riuer is called Port *Iolly*, from whence they coafted alongft to Port *Negro*, being twelue leagues diftant, where all the way as they sayled alongft, they fpied a very pleafant Countrey, hauing growing euery where fuch things as were obferued in the two Harbours where they had bene before. They found likewife in euery Riuer abundance of Lobfters, Cockles, and other fhel-fifhes, and alfo not onely in the Riuers, but all the Coaft alongft, numbers of feuerall forts of Wild-foule, as Wild-goose, blacke Ducke, Woodcocke, Crane, Heron, Pidgeon, and many other forts of Fowle which they knew not. They did kill as they sayled alongft the Coaft great ftore of Cod, with feuerall other forts of great fifhes.

The Countrie is full of Woods not very thicke, and the most part Oake, the rest are Firre, Spruce, Birch, with some Sicamores, and Athes, and many other sorts of Wood which they had not seene before. Having discovered this part of the Countrie, in regard of the Voyage their ship was to make to the Straits with fishes, they resolved to coast alongst from *Lukes Bay* to *Port de Mutton*, being foure leagues to the East thereof, where they encountered with a *Frenchman*, that in a very short time had made a great Voyage, for though he had furnished one ship away with a great number of fishes, there were neere so many readie as to load himselfe & others. After they had taken a view of this Port, which to their iudgement they found no waies inferiour to the rest they had seene before, they resolved to retire backe to *New-found-land*, where their ship was to receive her loading of fishes. The 20 of Iuly they loosed from thence, and the seven and twentieth thereof they arrived at *Saint Johns Harbour*, and from thence sailed alongst to the Bay of *Conception*, where they left the ship, and dispatched themselves home in severall ships that belonged to the West part of *England*.

This is no wonder, that the *French* being so slightly planted, did take no deeper roote in *America*, for they as onely desirous to know the nature and qualitie of the soile, and of things that were likely to grow there, did never seeke to have them in such quantitie as was requisite for their maintenance, affecting more by making a needlesse ostentation, that the World should know they had bene there, then that they did continue still to inhabit there, like them, that were more in loue with glorie then with vertue: then being alwaies subiect to diuisions amongst themselves, it was impossible that they could subsist, which proceeded sometime from emulation or enuie, and at other times from the lazinesse of the disposition of some, who (lothing labor) could bee commanded by none, who would impose more vpon them then was agreeable with the indifferencie of their affections and superficiall endeouours.

The

The *English* were free from these mutinies, and wanted not industry enough, but either out of a custome they have to traueell more for the benefit that doth flow from graffe, then by manuring of the ground for Corne, or otherwise if they were forced so to doe by their Owners at *London*, who enforcing a speedie returne by their labour, would needs be trusted with furnishing of them victuals, they applying themselves to Tobacco, and such things as might import a present commoditie, neglecting the time that might haue beene employed for building, planting and husbandrie, did liue but like hired Seruants, labouring for their Masters, and not like Fathers providing for their Family and Posteritie, which can neuer be auoided till the ground be inhabited by them, that being Owners thereof, will trust it with their maintenance, and doe content themselves with the delight of that which may giue glorie to them, and profit to their heires.

The Plantations in *America* doe approach neereſt to the puritie of these that (by an industrious diligence) in the infancie of the first age did extend the multiplying generations of Mankind, to people the then Defert Earth, for here they may possesse themselves without dispossessing of others, the Land either wanting Inhabitants, or hauing none that doe appropriate to themselves any peculiar ground, but (in a straggling company) runne like beasts after beasts, seeking no soile, but onely after their prey. And where of old the *Danes, Gaules, Gotkes, Hunnes, Vandals, Longobards*, and thereafter *Sarazens, Turkes* and *Tartarians*, did (with an inundation of people) encroach vpon these places of *Europe*, which were most ciuill, and where the Gospel was best planted, out of an ambitious enuie to draw vnto themselves the glory that any Nation had formerly gained, or out of an exorbitant auarice to swallow vp their substance, and to vsurpe (if they had power challenging right) any Lands that were better then their own, as the most part did in *Greece, Hungary, Spaine, Italy*, and *France*. We here goe to cause preach the Gospel where it was neuer heard,

and not to subdue but to ciuillize the Sauages, for their ruine could giue to vs neither glory nor benefit, since in place of fame it would breed infamie, and would defraud vs of many able bodies, that hereafter (besides the Christi-an dutie in sauing their soules) by themselves or by their Posteritie may serue to many good vses, when by our meanes they shall learne lawfull Trades, and industries, the Authors whereof (though preuenting the like Superstition) may acquire no lesse reuerence from them, nor in like case of old *Saturne*, *Bacchus*, *Ceres*, and *Pallas*, by teaching to plant Corne, Wine, and Oyle, did get from the credulous ignorance of them with whom they communicated their knowledge.

When I doe consider with my selfe what things are necessarie for a Plantation, I cannot but be confident that my owne Countrey men are as fit for such a purpose as any men in the world, hauing daring mindes that vpon any probable appearances doe despise danger, and bodies able to indure as much as the height of their minds can vndertake, naturally louing to make vse of their owne ground, and not trusting to traffique. Then *Scotland* by reason of her populoufnesse being constrained to disburden her selfe (like the painfull Bees) did euery yeere send forth swarmes whereof great numbers did haunt *Pole* with the most extreme kinde of drudgerie (if not dying vnder the burden) scraping a few crummes together, till now of late that they were compelled, abandoning their ordinary calling, to betake themselves to the warres against the *Russians*, *Turks*, or *Swedens*, as the *Polonians* were pleased to employ thē, others of the better sort being bred in *France*, in regard of the ancient league, did finde the meanes to force out some small fortunes there, till of late that the *French* though not altogether violating, yet not valuing (as heretofore) that friendship which was so religiously obserued by their predecessours, and with so much danger and losse deferred by ours, haue altered the estate of the Guards, and doe derogate frō our former liberties, which this King now reigning, we hope,

hope, will restore to the first integritie. The necessities of *Ireland* are neere supplied, and that great current which did transport so many of our people is worne drie. The *Lowe Countries* haue spent many of our men, but haue enriched few, and (though raising their flight with such borrowed feathers, till they were checked by a present danger) did too much vilipend these fauourable Springs by which their weaknesse was chiefly refreshed: But howsoever some particular men might prosper vnder a forraine Prince, all that aduenture so, doe either perill by the way, or if they attaine vnto any fortune, doe lose the same by some colour that strict lawes vrged against a stranger can easily afford, or else naturalizing themselues where they are, they must disclaime their King and Countrey, to which by time (the object of their affections altered) being bound to haue a care of that part where there posteritie must liue, they turne euery way strangers, which necessitie imposed vpon them to take this course, and inconueniences following thereupon may be preuented by this new Plantation. And where the *Scottish* Merchants before had no trade but by transporting Commodities that might haue beene employed at home, and oftentimes monie, to bring backe Wine from *France*, and Pitch, Tarre, and Timber from the Easter Seas. Now only by exporting of men, Corne, and Cattle, they may within a little time be able to furnish back in exchange these things before named. As likewise a great benefit of fishes, Furres, Timber, and Metals, drawing forth our people to forreine Traffique, wherewith they neuer haue bin accustomed before, and that to the great increafe of the Customes, helping hereby to enrich that ancient Kingdome, which of all the rest hath onely lost by his Maiesties greatnesse, being hereby not onely defrauded of his owne presence, and of the comfort that his countenance did continually afford, but likewise of many Commodities arising to any Countrey where a Court is Resident, as the vniuersall pouertie thereof (hauing few rich vnlesse it bee some  
Judges



Iudges and their Clerkes) by a common complaint doth too sensibly testifie.

I haue neuer remembred any thing with more admiration then *America*, considering how it hath pleased the Lord to locke it vp so long amidst the depths, concealing it from the curiositie of the Ancients, that it might be discovered in a fit time for their posteritie, they were so farre of old from apprehending it by any reach of reason, that the most learned men (as they thought) by infallible grounds, in regard of the degrees of the Heauen, did hold that these Zones could not be inhabited, which now are knowne to include the most pleasant parts in the World. This neuer came to the knowledge of any Hebrew, Greeke, or Roman, who had the most able mindes to haue found out such a mystery: and howsoever some would glofe vpon that Fable of *Platoes* Atlantick Iland, I haue neuer obserued any thing amongst the Ancient Writers tending to such a purpose, if it be not these lines of *Seneca* the Tragedian, whereby hee might (if not with a prophetick, yet with a poetick rapture) deliuer that which he had a mind to make the posteritie expect, and was in possibilitie to happen.

*Venient annis*  
*Secula feris, quibus Oceanus*  
*Vincula rerum laxet, & ingens*  
*Pateat tellus, Tiphisque nouos*  
*Detegat orbes; nec sit terris*  
*Vltima Thule.*

And it is a thing not yet comprehended by the course of naturall reason, how these parts of the World came first to be peopled: We must grant (according to the grounds of Diuinitie) their people to be descended from *Noah*, and it is not long since that (the Load stone being found out) the best Saylers (seorning as in former times to be only coasters) haue brought the Art of Nauigation to that perfection, that they durst resolutely aduenture to search the most remote  
 parts

parts in the Ocean, and if any had gone thither of purpose to inhabite, they would haue carried with them the most vfefull kindes of tame Cattle, such as Horfes, Cowes, and Sheepe, whereof neuer any was found in these parts, till they were transported thither of late yeeres; but onely such wild beasts as of themselves might haue wandred any where through vast Forrests, and Deserts: so that I doe thinke there must bee some narrow passage vpon the East, towards *Terra Australis Incognita*, not yet discovered, from whence people by time might haue come (crossing the Straits of *Magelane*) to inhabite *Brafile*, *Chile*, and *Peru*, or rather I should thinke that there were some Continent, or Narrow Sea towards the North, about the Straits of *Anien*, from whence the first Inhabitants in *America* might haue come; because the wild beasts that are there are creatures most peculiar to the North, such as Elkes, Bears, and Beauers, which are knowne to bee ordinary with the *Russians*, and *Tartarians*; and I am the more confirmed in this opinion, when I remember of the Mountains of Ice that come floating euery Spring alongst the Coast of *New-found-Land*, which (as it is likely) may dissolue from some Sea that hath benee frozen during the Winter time, ouer which people, and wild beasts might haue commoditie to passe; but this is a matter that can hardly bee determined by demonstration or reason, therefore (all men forming that which they know not, according to the square of their owne conceits:) Wee must leaue this to the vnlimited libertie of the imagination of man.

But the thing most wonderfull of all is this, though now it bee cleerely discovered, that so few are willing to make vse thereof; This doth chiefly proceed from want of knowledge, few being willing to aduenture vpon that where-with they are not acquainted by their owne experience, and yet those who haue not made triall themselves, if they will trust others, may bee abundantly satisfied by the reports of a number, who to Plant and Traffique doe yeerely

haunt these parts. If the true estate of that which might bee done at this time by the ioyning of some reasonable company together were rightly vnderstood, then so many would not liue at home as they do, losing their time, where they can make no benefit, and burdenable to them to whom they are not vsfull, rather admitted, then welcomed, the one thinking that their seruice should deserue a reward, and the other that their maintenance is an vnecessary charge, neither gaining, and both discontented: then would not so many aduenture their liues for the defence of strangers, whereby they scarce can acquire that which doth defray their owne charges, and howsoeuer the hope of Honour may flatter a generous spirit, there is no great appearance by this meanes to provide for a Family, or for a Posteritie. And if we rightly consider the benefit that may arise by this enterprize abroad, it is not onely able to afford a sufficient meanes for their maintenance, who cannot conueniently liue at home, by disburdening the Countrey of them, but it is able to enable them to deserue of their Countrey, by bringing vnto it both Honour and Profit.

Where was euer Ambition baited with greater hopes then here, or where euer had Vertue so large a field to reape the fruites of Glory, since any man, who doth goe thither of good qualitie, able at first to transport a hundred persons with him furnished with things necessary, shall haue as much Bounds as may serue for a great Man, where-vpon hee may build a Towne of his owne, giuing it what forme or name hee will, and being the first Founder of a new estate, which a pleasing industry may quickly bring to a perfection, may leaue a faire inheritance to his posteritie, who shall claime vnto him as the Author of their Nobilitie there, rather then to any of his Ancestours that had preceeded him, though neuer so nobly borne elsewhere, and if the vastnesse of their hopes cannot bee bounded within their first limits, as soone as they haue strengthened them-

themselues for such a designe, either by Sea or by Land, (in regard of the large Countries next adiacent hereunto) there doth alwaies rest a faire possibilitie of a further encrease, either for them, or for their succeffours; and so euery one of inferiour sort may expect proportionably according to his aduenture: The Merchants that are giuen to trade, where can they haue a fairer ground for gaine then here; and that besides that which may bee expected from so fertile a Land by industry or husbandry hereafter, in present commodities, such as Cod fishes and Herring in the Seas, Salmonds in the Riuers, Furres, Pype-staues, Pot-ashe, and all that may arise from the plentie of good Wood, Mineralls, and other things though not knowne to strangers that onely coast alongst the Lands, that may bee discouered hereafter by them that are to inhabite the Bounds.

Here those that are so disposed, without making a Monastickall retreat (free from a multitude of troubles) may inioy the pleasures of contemplation, being solitary when they will, and yet accompanied when they please, and that not with such company as (pressed by importunitie) they must discontentedly admit, but onely by them of whom they haue made choice, and whom they haue carried with them, with whom (as partners of their trauels) by mutuall discourses they may remember their former dangers, and communicate their present ioyes: heere are all sorts of obiects to satisfie the varietie of desires. I might speake of the sport that may bee had by Hunting, Hawking, Fishing, and Fowling, where all these creatures haue had so long a time for increase, without being destroyed or frighted, as likewise of the great contentment that must come by daily discoueries of new Fieldes and Riuers, with the diuersitie of things not seene before that may happen to bee found in them: but I would rather haue all at first to thinke of the paines they must indure, in bringing of so notable a Worke to perfection, since no good thing can be had with ease; and all the sonnes of men are borne to labour.

bour. But leauing these wordly respects, the greatest encouragement of all for any true Christian is this, that heere is a large way for aduancing the Gospel of Iesus Christ, to whom Churches may bee builded in places where his Name was neuer knowne; and if the Saints of Heauen reioyce at the conuersion of a Sinner, what exceeding ioy would it bee to them to see many thousands of Sauage people (who doe now liue like brute beasts) conuerted vnto God, and I wish leauing these dreames of Honour and Profit, which doe intoxicate the braines, and impoyson the minde with transitory pleasures) that this might bee our chiefe end to begin a new life, seruing God more sincerely then before, to whom we may draw more neere, by retyring our selues further from hence.

As I would haue no man that hath a mind for this course, to abuse his iudgement, by trusting too much to the fertilitye of the bounds where he is to goe, and too little to his owne prouidence, and industrie, whereby he may be made to neglect the preparing himselfe for this Voyage after such a manner as is requisite, So I altogether dislike them that possessed with the preposterous apprehensions of feare (like the lazie man of whome *Salomon* speaketh, that pretending difficulties to preuent trauell, would say there was a Lion in the way) will needs imagine the worst that is in possibilitie to happen: for such a man (too ingeniously subtil in coniecturing danger) doth both by preiudicated opinions disable himselfe, and discourage them, who not being duely informed, are confirmed by the confidence of other vndertakers, that professe to haue knowledge, there is no man at home where he was borne, so free from the accidents of fortune who may not quickly by a publike, or by a priuate calamitie be brought in some measure to suffer, and much rather should wee arme our selues with a high resolution against all inconueniences that can occurre in such a forraigne enterprise (being circumspectly  
pro-

proudient, but not cōfounded with a deiecting fear) where the greatnesse of so well grounded hopes for vs and for our Posteritie should make vs (hoping for pleasure) to digest any present paine, with a courage greater then can bee braued by any apprehended trouble. And because the Lord in such eminent Exploits doth commonly glorifie himselfe by a few number, I wish that all such whose hearts doe mis-giue them portending any disafter (like them of *Gideons* troupes that bowed downe like beasts to the water) should retire in time, ere the contagiousnesse of their infirmitie come to infect them that are more soundly disposed. There is no iust cause for a reasonable man to feare any worldly thing, but onely disgrace and want of necessary mayntenance: A man can hardly fall in the first here, since an honourable intencion what euer the succeffe prooue must acquire prayse, and the other by ordinary meanes, is easie to be auoyded, but I am so farre from painting out a supposed facilitie to snare weake minds, that I would haue none (with whom it is not fit to communicate more then they be capeable) to imbarke in this busines, but onely such as do resolute against the worst, for I possesse as *Cato* did, when he was to enter the Deserts of *Arabia*.

———*Neque enim mihi fallere quenquam  
Est animus, tectoque metu perducere vulgus.  
Hi mihi sint comites, quos ipsa pericula ducent,  
Qui me teste, pati, vel quæ tristissima, pulchrum,  
Romanumque putant; at qui sponse salutis  
Miles eget, capiturque animæ dulcedine, vadat  
Ad Dominum meliore via.*———

And last should not these memorable Exploits of late performed in the East and West *Indies* by the *Flemmings*, enflame vs with a generous ardour to equall, or rather to exceede them, whose penuritie of people (euen at home) must bee supplied by the superfluitie of ours: They haue

not

not onely in the East *Indies* by feuerall Habitations appropriated large Territories to themfelues, but likewise to the great preiudice of their Neighbours, improouing their owne profit, haue engroffed the generall Commerce by consequence depending thereupon. And if they feate themfelues (as it is likely they will doe) in *Brasill*, prouidently profecuting the good beginning that they haue gotten by fparing people of their owne, or by interefling Strangers whom they dare trust for founding of a fufficient Colonie, that being ftrong enough to defend and command the Inhabitants. (Securely exacting a due obedience) may enable them for greater matters; then confining with the very Springs whence the ftreames flow that entertayne the power of their enemies (exhaufing their fubftance both by Sea and Land) they haue a maruellous faire occafion offered to aduance them felues by deprefling of the opposed partie whose prosperous and defired fucceffe (whileft the adding to one doth derogate from another) if not emulated in time, will be enuied hereafter.

I know that many of my Nation if they had beene as willing as they are able had beene more fit then I am for this purpofe, but yet it hath oftentimes pleased God to doe the greateft matters by the meaneft Inftruments. And as no one man could accomplifh fuch a Worke by his owne priuate fortunes, fo if it fhall pleafe his Maieftie (as he hath euer beene difpofed for the furthering of all good Works more for the benefit of his Subiects, then for his owne particular) to giue his helpe accuftomed for matters of leffe moment hereunto, making it appeare to be a Worke of his own, that others of his fubiects may be induced to concurre in fuch a common caufe, no man could haue had my charge that with more affection and finceritie fhould haue vfed his endeuours for difcharging of the fame, but I muft trust to be fupplied by fome publike helps, fuch as hath beene had in other parts, for the like caufe whereunto, as I doubt not, but  
many



many will be willing out of the noblenesse of their disposition, for the aduancing of so worthy a Worke, So I hope will some others, the rather out of their priuate respect to me, who shall continue as I haue heretofore done, both to doe and write in so farre, so meane an abilitie as mine may reach, what (I conceiue) may proue for the credit or benefit of my Nation, to whom I with all happiness.

---

F I N I S.

---

---



# ENCOVRAGEMENTS,

For such as shall have intention

to bee Vnder-takers in the new plantation  
of *CAPE BRITON*, now *New Galloway*  
in AMERICA,

BY MEE

## LOCHINVAR.

*Non nobis nati sumus; aliquid parentes, aliquid  
Patria, aliquid cognati postulant.*



EDINBURGH,

Printed by Iohn Wreittoun. Anno Dom. 1625.





TO THE RIGHT  
VVORSHIPFVLL  
SIR WILLIAM  
ALEXANDER

of Menstrie Knight,

Master of Requestes for *Scotland*,  
*and Lievetenant Generall to his*  
Majestie in the Kingdome  
of *NEW SCOTLAND*.

AND

TO THE REMNANT THE NOBLE-  
MEN, AND KNIGHTS BARO-

nets in *Scotland*, Vnder-takers  
*in the plantations of New Scot-*  
land in *AMERICA*.







# TO THE ADVENTURERS, FAVOURERS,

and well-willers of  
the enterprize for the inhabiting,  
and planting in Cape Briton, now  
New Galloway in America.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*

**G**Entle Reader,  
*It hath benee the policie vniverfall, from the creation of the World vnto this time, of all civile States, the replenishing of the World with Colonies of their owne subjects. Adam and Eva did first beginne this pleasant worke to plant the Earth to succeeding posteritie. Noah, and his familie began againe the second plantation. And the confusion of tongues at Babel, made division of States, scattering as manie Colonies of ver the face of the Earth after the Flood, as there was diversitie of Languages: and their seede as it still increased, hath still planted new Countries, one after another; and so the Worlde to that estate whereinto it is.*

*That the planting of Countries, and civilizing barbarous and inhumane Nations, hath ever benee the worke of the greatest Princes of the Earth, their ever-living actions hath testified; wherewith are filled both the records of divine Trueth, and the monuments of humane state; and whose heroicke actions (wee*

*B*

*must*



## The Epistle.

*must not thinke) hath beene vndertaken vpon triviall motives, when as by that, they did aswell enlarge the limites of their Dominions, and enriche the revenues of their estates ; as bridle sedition at home, and settle securitie against their enemies abroad.*

*These preceeding praise-worthie Fathers, and their memorable offspring were diligent to plant, that yet vnplanted to their after-livers ; wherein shined those worthie Founders of the great Monarchies and their virtues: the Hebrues, the Lacedemonians, Gothes, Græcians, Romanes, and the rest from time to time in their severall ages.*

*But to leaue these remote times, let vs take a view within these 60. yeeres of the discoveries, and plantations in America, by the English, the French, the Spainard, the Portugale ; by whose industrious paines are made knowne vnto vs alreadie their, so hudge tracts, kingdomes, and territories, peopled and vnpeopled, as vpon the hither side for the space of 5000. leagues at the least, and for 3000. more on the backe side in the South Sea.*

*Manie discourses of the discoveries which hath beene there effected within these few yeeres are made of worthie Personages: such as Columbus, Cortez, Pitzora, Soto, Magellanes, and manie others, who to the wonder of all ages hath successivelie seconded one another in those partes.*

*Whole Decads are filled with discoveries there, and volumes with their actions of plantation : There wee see the renowned Drake, and memorable Candish twise about the round circumference of the whole Earth. Virginia to perpetrat the memorie of her honourable Knight S<sup>r</sup> Walter Raleigh, Amadas, Arthur, Whyte, Grenuile, and Lane her first discoverers, and worthie Governours in her plantations. S<sup>r</sup> Iohn Haukins in his Guinea. Iohn de Verrazano a Florentine, Iohn Rinault, Rene Landoniere, Dominique Gorgues in their Florida. The noble Cortez, and the other Spainards, and Portugalls in their golden Mynes of the 15. Provinces of new Mexico, Nueua Gallicia, Nueua Hispanna, Nueua Biscaya, Cibola, Quivivra, and to the Gulfe of California on the back side of America. The famous*

## The Epistle.

*mous Cabot, Frobisher, Davis, whose memories shall never die in the North-west parts: and many innumerable moe Worthies, whom all after-ages shall eternize for their vertues, whose actions I leave to bee searched as they are registred in the monuments of their praiseworthy proceedings.*

*The shining brightnesse of these (Gentle Reader) and such others, hath so beamed a path way to all posteritie for imitation; as that the basist minde that is, may bee induced to follow their foot-steppe. And for my selfe, having from the source of that ever and over-flowing fountaine, that was still a running to all, from our late Sovereigne of never-dying memorie King IAMES obtained a Patent of Cape Briton, which now, by his Royall direction is intituled New Galloway in America: I haue resolved to follow the troden way of these others, whose happie successse are so plainlie seene in such honorable designs.*

*And since I doe propone to my selfe the same ends, which are first for the glorie of my great and mightie GOD; next the service of his M. my dread Sovereigne, and my native Countrie; and last the particular weale, and vtilitie of my selfe, and such as shall be generoustie disposed adventurers with mee: Why shall it bee lawfull for others, and not for mee: and not as possible and as commodious for mee, as vnto others of my qualitie?*

*The chiefe (then) and the farthest poynt that my intention shall seeke to arrive at; shall bee to remove that vnbeliefe, which is so grounded in the mindes of men, to discredite most noble and profitable endevoures with distrust: and, first, to shake off their colourable pretences of ignorance, and then, if they will not be perswaded to make their selfe-willes inexcusable; I shall make manifest the worthinesse of the cause to the mindes of such as are desirous to bee settled in a certaintie. As for my selfe, I doe giue trust to the relations of such, whose wisdomes (I know) are not so shallow, as easilie bee deceiued of others; nor consciences so wretched, as by pretences to deceive others; and having the personall tryall of so honourable and sufficient reporters, our owne Countrie-men, this naked contemplation, and idle knowledge can*

## The Epistle.

*not content mee: but knowing that the chiefe commendation of vertue consisteth in action, I have resolved a practise, and to trace the footsteppes of those heroicke fore-runners, whose honourable actions shall ever live vpon Earth; whiles their Soules live in glorie in the Heavens, and shall increase heere, and multiplie; as their bodies in the grave shall putrifie.*

*The inducements which hath encouraged mee to this enterprise, and to spend my time, and best abilities in these adventures, I shall heere sette brieflie downe without any enlargment of made wordes, but in single speech, as best becomming a simple meaning; Intreating thee (Courteous Reader) that thou would with an affectioned mind consider these my subsequent motives, wherewith I have beene induced my selfe: ponder aright my endes: and then but weigh my willing and free Offers, which I doe make for the weale and furtherance of so worthie a Worke. Wee are not borne to our selves: but to help each others, and our abilities and meanes are not much vnlke at the first houre of our birth, and the last minute of our death: and it is our deedes good or bad that all of vs haue to carrie vs to Heaven or Hell after this life.*

*While wee are therefore heere, let vs imitate the vertues, and glories of our Predecessours, that heereafter worthilie wee may be remembered as their Successours,*

FARE-WELL.





# THE MOTIVES,

which hath induced mee,  
and may happilie encourage such as  
*haue intention to bee Vnder-ta-*  
*kers with Mee in the plantation*  
*of New GALLOWAY in*  
A M E R I C A .

## MOTIVE I.



S the chiefe and primarie end of mans crea- *The first*  
tion is the Worshippe of GOD; so shall *motive.*  
the first, and speciall motive of my proce-  
ding be the advancement of his Glorie, and  
that by the propagation of the Gospell of  
*IESVS CHRIST* amongst an Heathen

people, where Christianitie hath not beene knowne, nor  
the worshippe of the true GOD. Where can bee se-  
lected a more excellent subject, than to cast downe the Al-  
tars of Devills, and to raise vp the Altar of *CHRIST*: to  
forbidde the Sacrifice of men, that they may offer vp  
the Sacrifices of contrite Spirites.

Is it not a determined Trneth, that the Gospell of *Ie-*  
*sus Christ* should bee preached to all the Worlde (*Heaven*  
*and Earth shall passe away, but GODS Worde shall not passe*  
*away.*) And is it not as certaine a Conclusion amongst all  
the Divines, that these are the latter Dayes, wherein we  
live, well knowne by the signes that were to come before,  
fette downe by God himselfe in his sacred Worde, and  
for the most part alreadie manifested? And hath not Gods

## ENCOURAGEMENTS FOR

all-seeing Providence begunne as first by discoverie, and next by plantation of so hudge and so waste a tract, more commonlie, than properlie called the New Worlde; vn-knowne but within this 60. yeeres, except by a glimpse, to make appeare the progresse of his divine Providence, how hee will haue the feede of his worke to be fowne amongst them; Then doth it not belonge vnto vs to prosecute his worke; and as by merchandizing and trade wee buy at them the pearles of the Earth; wee ought to communicate vnto them the pearles of Heaven.

The time hath never beene so apparent as now, vnder our most gracious and Sovereigne Lord, King *CHARLES*, whose generous and gracious goodwill by encouragement to the same, hath manifested the same since hee receaved the Crowne, to bee the selected instrument to atchieue it.

Then should not that Heroicke, and illustrious disposition in Him, whom wee see so prompt to bee still in action, both incite, and invite to so noble designes all such as would shunne the imputation of idlenesse to imitate His foot-steppes.

Is it vnlawfull for vs to come to them? No; it is the duetie of Christianitie in vs, to behold the imprinted foot-steppes of GODS glorie in euerie Region vnder Heaven; and to them, against the Law of Nations, to violate a peaceable Stranger, or to deny vs harbour.

Is it vnlawfull for vs to trade with them? No, vnlesse *Salomon* should bee condemned of sending for Golde to *Ophir*; *Abraham* for making a league with *Abimelech*; and all Christendome for having commerce with *Turkes*, and misereants.

Nor neither is it vnlawfull that wee possesse part of their Lands, and dwell with them, and defend our selves from them, because there is no other moderate, and mixt course, to bring them to conversion, but by daylie conversation, where wee may see the Life, and learne the Languages

## NEW GALLOWAY.

guages each of others: and becaufe there is rowme fufficient in the Land, (as *Sichem* faid) for them, and vs; the extent of an 100. myles beeing fcarce peopled with 500 inhabitants: and chieflie becaufe (as *Pharaoh* gaue *Goshen*, to *Israel*, ere *Ephron* fold his caue to *Abraham*) they have folde to our people their Lands for copper (which they more efteeme of, than money) to inherite and inhabite: as *Pafpehay* and *Powhatan*, two [of] there greateft Kinges to thefe our Colonies in *Virginia*; and chieflie (as it is written by Captaine *Iohn Smith*, a worthie aétour in the bufineffe) when Captaine *Newport* was defired by *Powhatan* at *Worowacomaco*, to come from *Iames* towne in *Virginia*, where hee was, as a place vnwholefome, and to take poffeffion of another whole Kingdome, which hee gaue vnto him.

If any ferupulous confcience will impute, that yet wee can poffeffe no further limites, than was allotted by compofition, and that fortitude without iuftice, is but the firebrand of iniquitie. Let him know that *Plato* defineth it to bee no iniuftice, to take a fword out of the hand of a madde man. And Saint *Auguftine* hath allowed, for a lawfull offenfue warre that reuenge the injuries, and wherein the whole Diuines in *Europe*, although contraverting farre in other things, yet in this they all agree, that it is lawfull. That the Church of *Rome* allowe it. The *Spaniard*, and *Portugalles* large and ample territories and kingdomes in the 15. Provinces of *Mexico*, *Nueua Hispanna*, *Nueua Gallicia*, &c. beare witneffe. And for the Church of *England*, their *Bermudos*, *Virginian* and *New England* conqueffe and colonies affirme it. And the Church of *Geneva* in the yeere 1555. determined in a Synode (where *Calvin* was prefident) to fend *Peter Rochier*, and *William Quadrigarius*, vnder a French Captaine to *Brafilia*, althogh they were fupplanted by the Cardinall of *Lorraine*, and the treacherie of their falfe Captaine.

When

## ENCOURAGEMENTS FOR

When therefore it is so sweete a finelling Sacrifice to propagate the name of *Iesus Christ*: if wee haue any graine of faith or zeale in Religion, let vs seeke to convert these poore Savages to knowe *Christ*, and humanitie. Let Religion bee the first aime of our hopes, and other thinges shall bee cast vnto vs. Our Names shall bee registred to posteritie with a glorious Title; These are the men whom GOD hath raised to augment the state of their Countreie, and to propagate the Gospell of *Iesus Christ*.

The same GOD that hath ordained three Kingdomes vnder the Scepter of our gracious King *CHARLES*, will not bee wanting to adde a fourth, if wee would dissolve that frostie yeiceneffe which chilleth our zeale, and maketh vs cold in the action.



## MOTIVE II.

*The second  
motive.*

AND next to the Worshipp of my GOD, is the service of my Prince, and native Countreie: which is the second end that I haue propounded vnto my selfe, by enlarging these Dominions whereof I am a Subject: a duetie moste proper to all the true and loyall Lieges, whensoever by so lawfull and easie meanes it may bee achieved.

What is so truelie futable with honour and honestie, as to gaine to our native Mother-Countreie a Kingdome to attend her? Wherein can the taste of true vertue, and magnanimitie bee more sweete and pleasant than in planting, and building a foundation for thy posteritie; gotte from the rude earth by Gods blessing, and thine owne industry, without prejudice to any? What more condu-  
cing



## NEW GALLOWAY.

cing to that myſticall bodie politicke, whereof thou art a member, than for to finde employement for thoſe that are idle, becauſe they knowe not what to doe? Poſteritie ſhall remember thee for it, and remembring, ever honour that remembrance with praiſe.

Conſider what was the beginninges, and endinges of the Monarchies of the *Chaldeans*, the *Persians*, the *Gracians* and the *Romans*, but this one rule: what was it they would not doe for the Common-wealth or there mother Citie? for example: *Rome*, what made her ſuch a Monarcheſſe, but on-ly the adventures of her youthe, not in ryots at home, but in dangers abroad? and their juſtice, and judgment, out of their own experience when they grewe aged. What was their ruine and hurt, but this: their exceſſe of idleneſſe, want of experience, hypocriticall ſeeming goodneſſe, & growing onlie formall Temporists; ſo that what their Predeceſſours gotte in many yeeres, they loſt in few dayes: theſe by their paines and laboures became Lordes of the Worlde, they by their eaſe and vyces became flaves to their ſervants.

Then, who would live at home idle (or think in him ſelfe any worth to live) onlie to eate, drinke, and ſleepe, and ſo to die? or by conſuming that careleſſie, which their predeceſſours hath got worthilie? or by vſing that miſerable, that maintained vertue honeſtly? or, for becoming deſcended noble, pyne with the vaine vaunt of Kinred in penurie? or (to maintaine a ſillie ſhow of braverie) toyle out the heart, foule, and time baſely, by ſhiftes, trickes, cardes, or dyce? or by relating newes of others actions, ſharke heere or there for a Dinner or Supper? deceiving his friends by faire promiſes and diſſimulation, in borrowing where hee never intendeth to pay? offending the Lawes, ſurfeting with exceſſe, burthening his Countrie, abuſing himſelfe, deſpairing in want, and then couſening his kinred? although it is ſeene what honours

## ENCOVRAGEMENTS FOR

the World hath yet, and what affluence of all things; for such as will seeke, and wortheilie deserue them. Heere were courtes for Gentle-men, (and such as would bee so reputed) more futing their qualities, than begging from their Princes generous disposition the labours of his other subiects.

It woulde bee a Historie of a large volume to recite the adventures of the *Spaniards* and *Portugalles*, their constant resolutions, with such incomparable honour, so farre beyond beliefe in their discoveries, and plantations, as may well condemne vs of too much imbecillitie, sloth, and negligence. And yet the authours of these new inventions were helde as ridiculous at that time: as now are others that doe but seeke to imitate their vnparalleled vertues.

And though wee see daylie their mountaines of wealth (sprung from the plants of their generous indeoures) yet is our incredulitie, and vntowardnesse such, and so great, that either ignorantlie wee beleeeve nothing; or so curiously contest, to prevent wee know not what future events; that so wee either neglect, or oppresse, or discourage both our selues, and others, that might both as easilie and would as willinglie attempt and embrace the like.

Who seeth not, what is the greatest good of the *Spaniard*, but these newe conclusions, in searching these vnknowne partes of this vnknowne Worlde: by which meanes hee diueth even into the verie secreetes of all his Neighboures, and the most part of the Worlde.

And when the *Portugalles* and *Spaniards* had found the East and West *Indies*, how manie did condemne themselves that did not accept of that honest offer of noble *Columbus*, who vpon the neglect of *England*, to whom it was first offered; brought them to it: perfwading themselves the Worlde had no such places, as they had found: and yet ever since wee finde, they still haue found newe

Lands

## NEW GALLOWAY.

Lands, newe Nations, new trades, and still daylie doe finde, both in *Asia*, *Africa*, *Terra incognita*, and *America*: so that their is neither Souldiour, nor Mechanicke from the Lord, to the begger, but these parts affoord them all employment, and discharge their native Soyle of so manie thousands of all forts, that else by their sloath, pryde and imperfections, woulde longe ere this haue troubled their neighbours, or haue eaten the pryde of *Spaine* it selfe.

And seeing further, for all they have, they cease not still to search for that, which yet they neither haue, nor knowe not: it is strange that wee shoulde bee so dull, as not maintaine that which wee haue, and pursue that which wee knowe.

I am sure that manie would take it in an evill part to be abridged of the titles and honours of their predeceffours: when if but truelie they would judge themselves: looke howe inferiour they are to their noble vertues, so much they are vnworthie of their honours, and livings: which never were ordained for showes and shadowes, to maintaine idleneffe and sloath, but to make them more able to abound in honour by heroicall deedes of action, judgement, pietie and vertue.

What was it they would not doe both in purse and person for the good of the Common-weale? and may not this bee a motive for vs to set out such as may bee spared of our kindred in such generous designes. Religion aboue all things should move (especiallie the Cleargie) if wee were religious, to shewe our faith by our workes, in converting these poore savages to the knowledge of GOD. Honour might move the Gentry, valiant and industrious; the hope and assurance of wealth, all: if wee were such, as wee would seeme, and desire to bee accompted.

Or bee wee so farre inferiour to other Nations, or our Spirites so farre dejected from our ancient Predeceffours

## ENCOVRAGEMENTS FOR

or our minds so vpon spoyle, pyracie, or other villanie, as to serue the *Portugale, Spaniard, Dutch, French, or Turk*, (as to the great hurte of *Europe* too manie doe) rather than our GOD, our King, our Countrie, and our selues? excusing our idlenesse, and our base complaints by want of imployment? when heere is such choyce of all fortes, and for all degrees in this plantation.

So let these answere such questionlesse questions, that keepe vs backe from imitating the worthinesse of their brave spirits, that advanced themselves from poore Souldiers, to great Captaines, their posteritie to great Lords, their King to bee one of the greatest Potentates on Earth, and the fruits of their labours, his greatest glorie, power, riches and renowne.



### MOTIVE III.

*The third  
motive.*

AND as I haue spoken of two principall causes that hath induced me; The third of my ends may happilie bee no lesse forcible to encourage all such, whose education, spirits and judgments, wants but onlie the purse to prosecute the same with mee, and that is the private and particulare gaine, that may bee got by so lawfull and easie meanes: whereof it is more than admirable, that such should either bee so wilfullie ignorant, or so negligently carelesse as not to be moved to imbrace, and speciallie, such imployment as may search out commodities, to live happilie, plentifulle, and at ease.

Ought not everie man to regard, aswell to enlarge his patrimonie, as that hee bee not chargeable to others, so farre

## NEW GALLOWAY.

farre as hee may by his vertue and industrie, in a lawfull and honest manner attaine vnto. Is not a lawfull search for such commodities, to bee preferred to an idle sloathfulnessse? and an honorable policie in a lawfull plantation abroad, before vnlawfull monopolies, and wrangling suites of Law, by neighbour against neighbour at home, impoverishing thy selfe, and thy native Countrie, whereof thou oughtest to bee a more profitable member?

May not the fortunate succeſſe of the plantation of *Ireland*, so fresh and recent to all, whence so great commodities are brought both to *England* and *Scotland*, and whereby the Countrie it selfe is enriched, and wee so benefited, bee inticements to induce vs to the like. The venturous, and generous Spirites of resolute Gentlemen, vnder-takers of this plantation, haue raised their fortunes worthie of honour; and by his Majesties favour, their vertues rewarded with the titles of Earles, Vice-Countes Lords, Barronets, and Knights, according to their qualities, and his Majesties pleasure. The meaner sort, such as artificers, labourers of the ground, the greater part whereof, were knowne to haue scarce a competent meanes to defraye the charges of their passage thither, now promoted to bee Gentlemen, and of great meanes. And why may not time produce as great effects to vertue, in others who shall follow her pathes with resolution: where as good occasions are offered, in a climate more temperate, a Soyle more fertile, and farre exceeding in greater commodities?

And last, to shake off the difficulties, and impediments that may bee objected: as the dangerousnesse of Sea, the barrennesse of the Soyle, and the vnwholesomenesse of the climate; all which discouragements might astonishe some with feare, and to thinke our expensses, and paines vnprofitable; when as our endes shall bee vn-

## ENCOURAGEMENTS FOR

possible. I haue therefore heere taken a view that you may generallie knowe and learne, what the Countrie is, and her commodities : the temperature of the climate : nature of the natives : and the easinesse of the passage ; all which I shall briefly runne over ; only to remove from before your feete the stumbling blocks of impossibilitie that may affright vs.

The Countrie it is called by the name of Cape Briton, now *New Galloway* : new, not in respect of the discoverie thereof, which to the judgment of men of knowledge and vnderstanding is not new, but old ; for the much hath been written thereof, yet new, not olde, because of our new vndertaking of that plantation. It is situated betwixt the degrees of 45. and 57. an Yland within the Sea, but vpon the maine, severed by the distance of foure leagues in some parts, of two or three at other parts : and at others, lesse.

The Yland is in length some 120. myles, and in breadth 80. myles or thereby : standing South-east, and North-west to *New Scotland* ; vvhether the great river *Canada* ingorgeth her selfe in the maine Ocean. Harbours there bee exceeding good on all sides, in most part vvhich are aneorage for shippes of all burthen. Yles there be about over-grovn vvith good timber of diuerse sorts of vvood ; all as yet not discovered except the Yle *Sablon*, vvvhich is full of vvoodes and vvilde beastes, but vvithout any people. The Land is vvatered by foure maine rivers, full of Salmond, and diuerse other sortes of fishes. It hath plentie of springes of fvyete vvaters. Towwards the North-east, *Mountainous* : and toward the South-west *Caimpainge* : promising as rich entalles as anie other Kingdome to whom the Sunne is no nearer neighbour. The ground in it self so fertile and good as may equalize any of the Kingdomes that lyeth in the hight of 45. 46. 47. Onlie this advantage I find in nature, that they haue above this : they are bewtified by the long labour & diligence of industrious people & airt : & this is only as God made it, when he created the world, vncultured, planted & manured by men of industry, judgment & experience.

## NEW GALLOWAY.

The commodities which we shal reape from thence shall be great, for the Sea shall sweeten our labours with her benefites, as the Land, and the Land aswell as the Sea. The Sea shall reach vs vp her Whale, her turbot, her sturgeon, cod, haddocke, small ling, makkerell, herring, mullet, pearch, Eele, crab, lobster, muskle, wilk, oyfter, and infinite others. Fish is the maine Staple, from whence is to be extracted, a present commoditie to produce the rest: which howsoever it may seeme meane and base, yet it is the Myne, and the Sea is the source of these silvered streames of all these vertues, which hath made the *Hollanders*, the miracle of industrie, & patterne of perfection for these affaires: and the benefite of fishing, is that *Primum mobile* that turneth all their Spheare to this hight of plentie, strength, honour, and admiration.

The ground it will yeeld vs an admired varietie; some wee shall haue that are merchantable, which, by the seruing for ordinary necessaries of the planters & inhabitantes, may yeeld a superplus sufficient, by way of traffick and exchange with other nations, to enriche our selves the provyders; such as flaxe, hempe, which the Soyle doth yeeld of it self not planted. For pitch, tarre, rozen and turpentine, there bee these kind of trees there, which yeeld them aboundantie. Saffras, called by the natives, winauk, a kind of wood of sweet smell, and of rare vertues in Physick. The Vine, it groweth there wild. Oyle there may be there of two fortes: one of walnuts; and another of berries, like the ackornes which the natives vse. Furrer of manie and diuerse kinds; such as the marterne, the otter, the black foxe, the luzernes, Deere skins, bevers, wildcat, and manie others. Sweet gummess of diuerse kinds, and many other Apothecarie drugges. Dyes of diuerse fortes: such as shoemake, for blacke: the seede of an hearbe called vasebur, and a litle small roote called chapacor, for red: & for blew, the herbe woad, a thing of great vent and vse at home for Dyers, and many other commodities merchantable, which by planting may be raised.

Other



## ENCOVRAGEMENTS FOR

Other commodities there are, which the ground doth yeeld vs for victuall and sustenance of mans life, and vfuallie fedde vpon by the naturall inhabitants: for it is knowne to bee so fertile, as without question capable of producing of any graine, fruite, or roote, or seede you will sowe, or plant, growing in any other region of the same hight. The graines are maize, which we call Guinie wheat, according to the countrie from whence the like hath bene brought, and this graine is much about the bignesse of our ordinarie pease. There is also beanes, called of the natives Oknigier: and pease called by them, Wickonzour. They haue pompions, millions, and gourds, and an herbe called melden, growing foure, or five foote high, of the seede they make a thicke broth, and potage of a good taste, and of the stalke, by burning it in ashes they make a kinde of salt earth, wherewith they season their brothes, other salt they know not. They haue the hearbe Tobacco, called by the natives Vppowoc, in great plentie. Fruites they haue of fundrie sorts: as cheef-nuts, walnutes, grapes, medlars, mulberries, goose-berries, raspberries, straw-berries, plummies, currans, or a fruite like currans. Rootes they haue of diuerse kindes; Openauk, a kinde of roote, of a round forme and bignesse of walnuts, which being boyled or sodden, are verie goode meate: Okeepauke, another roote found in drye ground, which they eate with fishe or flesh: Tfinaw, a roote like the china-roote, growing together in clusters, of this roote they make bread. Of beasts; they haue Deere red, and fallow, conies, blacke foxes, and others, bevers, beares, wilde-cats, otters, marternes, luzernes, allanes, wolves, fquirells, and a beast called Moos, bigger than a Stagge. For fowle they haue the turkie, the goose, the ducke, the skeldrake, the cran, the teale, Eagles, Falcons, marlin-hawkes.

And finally are those other commodities, as are behoufull for those, which shall plant and inhabite to know of:

fuch

## NEW GALLOWAY.

fuch as oakes, afhe, elme, firre, the pine, and aſcopo: which is a kinde of tree like the Laurell, the barke whereof, is hotte in taſte, and ſpycie: hazell, plumetree, walnut-tree, cheſnut-tree, and manie others, which I omitt to rehearſe. For to make mention of the ſeverall beaſtes, birdes, fiſhes, fruites, flowres, gummes, rootes, ſweete woodes, trees, hearbs, and others commodities, wherewith the ground is ſo naturallie, and ſo plentifulle enriched, and ſtored withall; I ſhould fill vp Decads: but referring theſe to the relations of ſuch as hath fullie collected the varieties of them, I come to the temperature of the climat.

The nature of the Climate wee maye eaſilie conclude from the light whereinto it is ſituated; beeing in the 45. 46. and 47. which is as temperate, and as fruitfull as anie other paralell in the World; and anſwerable to theſe fruitfull partes in *France*, which are accounted the garden of *Europe*; *Poictou*, and *Anjou*: and where is that famous river of *Loyre*, adorned with ſo manie faire, ſo ancient, and populous Cities: and manie other notable, and famous Kingdomes: as you maye looke in the vni-verſall Mapped, becauſe I meane not to bee tedious: and ſo having there ſuch excellent temperature of the aire at all ſeaſons, much warmer than heere, and never ſo vehementlie hotte as it is vnder, and betwixt the Tropicks, or neere them, wee neede not thinke of vnwholeſome-neſſe.

And now for the Paſſage: Is not the navigation knowne to bee ſhort, as ſufficientlie experimented to have bene performed with an ordinarie winde in eighteene dayes, and in as much backe againe? how manie *Dutch*, *English* and *French* goe yeerelie there for fiſhing on the coaſte, and backe againe to their great commodities and profite: and by the waye wee neither ſhall haue lee ſhoare, enemies, coaſt, rocke, nor ſands, all which in other voyages

## ENCOVRAGEMENTS FOR

and in our coastings at home wee are subiect vnto.

And now last, it resteth I speake a worde of the nature of the People, in so farre as you maye knowe, how litle they are to bee feared, in respect of troubling our inhabiting and planting.

They are a people so fewe, so poore, so base, so incivile, and so savage, as wanting both multitude, power, or airtē to harme vs. They are cloathed with loose mantles, made of Deere skinnēs, casten rounde about their middles, the rest of their bodie all naked, of such stature onelie as wee are heere, having no edge tooles, nor weapons of yron, nor steele to offende vs, neither knowe they how to make anie, nor howe to vse them.

These weapons which they have, are onelie Bowes made of Hazell, and arrowes of reedes: flat edged truncheons also of vwood, about a yarde long: neither hane they anie thing to defende themselves, but targes made of barks, and some armour made of stickes vvickered together vvith threed. In number they are verie fewe, in twentie myles, scarce threecore people. Townes in the countrie are verie rare, and small: containing fewe inhabitants: and hee is a Viroan, or great Lord, that hath the government of one towne. There houses are litle, made of small poles, and fast at the toppes in round forme, in moste parte covered with barks. If there shoulde fall out anie Warres betwixt vs and them, what fight coulde there bee, wee having advantages against them, so manie manner of wayes: it maye bee easilie imagined, by our discipline, our strange weapons, especiallye, our Ordinance great, and small. And by the experience that others hath had of them there, in places more populous than this of ours: where the taking of them-selves to their heeles, was their best defence against them.

*NEW GALLOWAY.*

So seeing you maye perceive, what the Countrie is, and how situated: the aire how temperate, and wholesome? the Soyle how fertile, and what affluence it doeth yeelde of commoditie? the natives how both so fewe, and so harmeleffe? and the passage, howe so easie, and so frequentlie experimented? I hope there remaineth no cause whereby the action should bee misliked.

Thus referring my relation to your favourable constructions: the successe of the action to Him, who is to bee acknowledged the Author and Governour, not onlie of this, but of all things else: and these my subsequent

Offers, which I have freebie, and willinglie  
granted, as helpes, and furtherances for  
your encouragement to so good a  
Worke; yee maye peruse, and  
onely imbrace as you shall  
thinke your selves  
disposed.

\* \*  
\*







# THE OFFERS

to bee granted to the

Adventurers in the new plantation of

*CAPE BRITON*, now called

by the name of *New Galloway*

in AMERICA,

BY

## LOCHINVAR.

### ARTICLE I.

For Minifters.

**T**H A T the bleffing of GOD may accompanie vs in our indevoures; without whose gracious, and mercifull affiftance, wee can not have happie, nor prosperous fucceffe in our affaires. For the Minifters of the Worde of God; fuch as fhall bee the fa-  
cours of *CHRIST* for the gaine of Soules: and to propagate his Trueth: and enlighten thofe that are captivate in Ethnicke darkneffe: and for the vfe, and exercife of true Religion amongft our felves; I doe willinglie, and freele graunt and offer as followeth,

1. Their paffage from *Scotland* vnto the faid Land of *New Galloway* fhall be free vnto them, without payment of any fraught, either for themfelves,

D 3

their

## ENCOVRAGEMENTS FOR

their wiues, and children, if they anie haue, and their neceffare household stuffe: which all shall bee transported thither vnto them, into mine owne Shippes, and vpon mine owne charges.

2. They shall haue their entertainment of mee, their wiues, and children as faide is, in their whole paffage on the waye thither.
3. For their maintenance, and their forefaids beeing there: I shall giue them entertainment for the space of the first three yeeres, induring the infancie of our Church there: and howe soone it shall please GOD that our number bee increased, that our Companies maye bee divided in Paroches, that then a competent meanes shall be allotted vnto each Minister in his feuerall charge, as shall bee found expedient for their places.
4. For their assistance in such things as belongeth vnto them in their callings: I shall haue a speciall care to see, that such reverence, and respect be had vnto them, as appertaineth vnto their place and calling: and shall see such goode order, as by them shall bee sette downe for reformation of life, and manners, duellie obeyed and performed, by causing the transgressours, and contemners of the same bee severelie punished.

---

## ARTICLE II.

**T**HAT everie one of such as shall be vndertakers, shall giue his oath of alledgeance: and shall all conforme themselves in Religion, according to his Majesties



## NEW GALLOWAY.

jesties Lawes, and manner professed within the Kingdome of *Scotland*.

---

### ARTICLE III.

For Gentlemen, and others vndertakers: what I  
*shall bee obliged to performe vnto them.*

**I**TEM, for the helpes, and furtherances of fo generous, and well-disposed vndertakers as shall willingly vnder-goe the hazard, and imbrace the enterpryse: I shall performe the particulars in everie point vnto them, as followeth,

1. For their passages: everie vnder-taker shall bee transported, himselfe, his wife, children, & servants, his whole household stufte, and their provision of victualles for their intertainment, such as meale, malt, beefe, &c. and such as they shall please to provide to sustaine them for a whole yeere: Together with as much cornes, as they shall bee able to fowe vpon their Lands, the first yeere: and that all, and together passage free, into mine Shippes, from *Scotland* vnto the said countrie of *New Galloway*.
2. Beeing thither by GODS mercifull assistance, and providence transported, to bee established and placed in the Land: each man according to his qualitie, as followeth: The landed Gentleman vndertaker, shall haue his Landes granted vnto him in fee, and heritage to himselfe, and his succeffours for ever, to bee holden of mee, my heires, and succeffoures in *New Galloway*, in  
manner

## ENCOURAGEMENTS FOR

manner as they holde their Lands in *Scotland* of our Sovereigne Lord, the King his Majestie, either by feaw, wairde, or blansh, and shall grant the same vnto them in quantitie, according to everie one of their qualities and meanes. And for tennants, and farmorers, their landes shall bee granted vnto them in Lase, everie one of them to have three Life-rents, and a nyneteene yeere Take thereafter, conforme to their power, and meanes, and performance of the conditions of the rent after mentioned.

3. And further more that their helpes, and furtherances maye haue a competent time to establishe them-selves in their estates, and that their meanes may the better increase: each vndertaker of the plantation of *New Galloway* shall bee free from the payment of any duetie for his Landes, for all and whole the space of the first three yeeres.
4. For their assurance of a securitie, and peaceable quietnesse in the possession of their Landes in *New Galloway*, whereof they bee vndertakers: I shall finde sufficient caution, and furetie vnto each one of them within the Shyre where hee dwelleth in *Scotland*, that whatsoever his goods or geare thither transported, and placed vpon the ground of the saids Landes, shall bee taken from him by violence, of the natives, or forraine Nations, that the double thereof shall bee payed and refounded againe vnto him in *Scotland*, or to his heires, executours, or assignayes.

5. And

## NEW GALLOWAY.

5. And for artifanes and craftes-men, such as Taylors, Shoe-makers, Smyths, Wrights, Websters, Wakers, Millers, &c. their passages shall bee made free vnto them without the payment of anie fraught; and likewise the rents of their lands shall bee free vnto them, induring their owne lifetimes: and for their successeurs, they shall bee kept in the case, and estate of tenants and farmers, and shall haue their Laces of their Lands granted vnto them, as is set downe in the Article for Tennants.
- 

### ARTICLE IIII.

What the Vnder-takers shall performe vnto mee.

**F**OR the whole duetie of my Landes, charges, and expensses to [be] bestowed by mee in my shipping and other provision: I shall bee contented to receive from everie one of the said vndertakers, the thirteenth parte of that increafe, and commoditie, which their Lands shall bee made worthie vnto them in the said plantation: And that I shall not require to bee payed vnto mee in moneyes, but only in such commodities, as the Soyle shall afford: such as cornes, fishes, fures, &c.

**A**ND last, I desire that all such, as shall imbrace the foresaids offers, may come vnto mee before the first day of December next, and giue vp their names, and a note of such things as they desire to bee carried with them, whereby I may provide for them, conforme to my preceeding offers, and they received everie one, and placed according to the order as they first come: so that all things may bee duelie provyded, and had in readinesse against the due time and season of setting out.

E

And



## CONCLVSION.

**A**ND thus (*Right Noble, and worthie Countrey-men*) have I vnfolded the reasons of my resolution to vndertake this enterpryse, which if I hadde not thought to be both Christian, honorable, honest, easie, and profitable; I should never have attempted. And I have further for the encouragement of all such as are well-willers vnto the Worke, made offer of such helps, and furtherances as may testifie my willingnesse to prosecute the same. Desiring yet againe all noble and generouslie well-disposed Gentlemen, to consider with mee, onelic our estates in these dayes, and how wee stand in our families, from the greatest, to the smallest: and compare them with our Predecessours, who did keepe great honour, credite, and estimation; which in so great a measure is decayed, and diminished in vs. Now let vs compare our selves with Citizens now, whose credite wee see doeth surpasse ours, although wee bee above them, both in qualitie and richesse. Whence is this woorth of theirs, but from their industrie, and trueth; which beareth them out both to this credite, and respect, as well at home, as abroad?

Were it not (then) better in these our dayes for vs to imitate the foot-steppes of vertue in the *Italians*, that thinketh it neither dishonourable, nor disparagement vnto their greatest Princes, their Dukes, Marquesses, and Countes, to make themselves great, and get their patrimonies enlarged by their hazards at Sea? It is their glorie to bee vertuous; and may condemne our dissolutions  
and

## NEW GALLOWAY.

and idleneſſe, that may as eaſilie bee great, by ſuch honeſt and honourable endeavours.

But yet let vs come a litle nearer vnto our ſelves; and ſee the diſtreſſes aſwell amongſt the great, as the ſmall, throughout the whole Kingdome: and what increaſe there is of debts amongſt vs in theſe dayes, never heard of before amongſt our Predeceſſours, wee ſhall finde, that if wee followe not ſome other induſtrious manner of waye, to relieve them, then by menaging, in whatſome-ever, and beſt forme wee can, our revenues, that they ſhall never bee relieved.

There are three thinges that troubleth our eſtates that wee cannot live as our Predeceſſours did before vs: Firſt, the prodigalitie, both in our ſelves, our ſervants, and our houſes. Secondlie, wee have not ſuch occaſions, and vses at home for the Brethren, and ſecond ſonnes of our houſes to get them preferment as of old. Thirdlie, that vniverſall plague of Cautionarie, throughout the whole Kingdome, whereby their is ſuch a generall intercourſe of diſtreſſe, each one for another, as all are linked into it: which all in following out ſuch honorable, and honeſt indevoures abroad might bee remedied. I ſpeake not of the favoured Courteour, nor of the fortunate Stateſ-man, for they have their owne bleſſinges from GOD, and favour of their Maſter in their ſeverall places: but vnto ſuch, my noble friends, and Countrey-gentlemen, ſuch as my ſelfe is, and ſo diſtreſſed as I am; and ſpeaking out of mine owne experience; proteſting that cautionarie hath beene vnto me; vpon mine honour, and credite, the value of an Hundreth thouſand pounds; which any imployment abroad, either in the ſervice of my King, or my Countrey, might haue ſpared vnto me, and bettered the eſtate of mine Houſe. Neither doe I ſpeake ſo farre of my ſelfe, for want of abilitie to doe mine owne buſineſſe, which I praiſe GOD is knowne

## ENCOVRAGEMENTS FOR

to such, as knowe my selfe: but to giue everie man a sense, and feeling out of mine owne experience, howe I see the estate of the Kingdome.

Then (Worthie Countriemen) let vs lay these two things in the ballance, and judge vpon them: whether it is better for vs to goe there, where we may haue to live in a fruitfull Soyle, and wholesome, in all commodities abounding to our contentments, beeing onlie a litle industrious and painefull: than to live heere at home as Runnagates, vnanswerable to G O D, the King, the Lawes, to all reason, and conscience: to bee captivate as slaves, and cast in loathsome Prisons, to satisfie with our persons, when our goods hath failed vs: and especiallie, when wee haue wronged our best and kindest friendes, who out of their loves hath engaged themselves, to be distressed, and imprisoned for vs? which shoulde bee a greater grieve vnto vs, than our owne imprisonments.

And then shall wee disdaine Plantation: which to enterprise is so honourable; to prosecute so possible: to purchase so lawfull, and when attained, so profitable? No, whosoever shall reason against the same, especially such as are in distresse, may well bee reputed, either the Bastard of generositie, or the nurrling of simplicitie, or the abject of frugalitie: and shall either become for ever, the prostitute of infamie, or consecrated to perpetuall oblivion: and when hee is dead, his actions, his meanes, his name and all, shall die with himselfe; and if hee shall ever happen to bee remembred, that remembrance shall onelie bee in ignominie, as the Wretch of his Countrie, the Curse of his Kinred: and an vnthrif for himselfe.

But I speake not to such a crew, whose basenesse I knowe cannot climbe to surmount the meanest imagined difficultie, that may arise. I speake to such noble Spirits and generous mindes, in whom doeth shine the light of knowledge to discern the differences between a base  
securitie

## NEW GALLOWAY.

securitie and honourable actions, vice and vertue, stupidity, and true worth : and who in end shall not misse to rejoyce in the enjoying the fruits of their labours in themselves, and their names to bee honoured with a perpetual remembrance.

And if wee would studie to bee remembred in our posterities, heere is offered the occasion to infer vs in the bookes of memorie : for if wee would portion our second children in a plantation, and such as in nature wee are bound to helpe, and advance : both shall wee bee remembred in their ever-living successions, throughout all ensuing ages : and they prouyded in a competent beeing and meanes for them-selves, and theirs, and to bee thereafter profitable for their King and Countrie : which is better, than either to be kept at home baselie, & short of that which is befeeming their birth, and qualitie : or to bee sent to the service of the Warres of forraine Princes, and to be cutted away by the sword, and then neuer more againe remembred : and for so small meanes, as thereby yee can furnish themselves both in rayment, and foode.

Imbrace then the honours of Plantation. Doe wee dreame of difficulties ? then knowe ; that it is out of the greatest difficulties, that spring the greatest honours : & it is that Knight-hood, which is gotten vnder the banner of a King, and in the Fieldes which is most honourable ; and not that, which wee acquire by our moneyes ; as the most part is now a-dayes. And that our actions may both renowne vs, and beget vs moneyes, wee may see in the examples that I haue sette before your eyes, both of forraine nations, and of our own Countriemen, in their late plantations of *Ireland*, their estates now, their dignities, their honours, their credite, and their riches : and what they were knowne to haue beene before.

But these I leave to your judgments : onelie now, to  
make



## ENCOVRAGEMENTS FOR. &c.

make an end, I must entreate thee (*Noble and courteous Reader*) to excuse my freeness in this my homelie discourse, which I perswade my selfe the generous minde will allowe of: and for the base, the simple and the vitious; I doe not care for their censure, onelie I wishe it were a spurre to drawe them to more vertue. As for the rudenesse of my speach, I hope none will except, wherein I professe no airt, if simple I publish my good meaning and earnest affection to so goode a Worke. And wherein their is defect in mee, I hope the purpose shall bee better enlarged by him, whose Pen is more than knowne to bee famous, the principall Actor in the businesse, and to whom I principallie dedicate this my treatise: and to bee seconded by the vertues of these the Noblemen, and these worthilie honoured Gentle-men, the Knights Baronets, Vnder-takers of so faire designs: so that nowe I cease with my penne, but never with my Sword to doe them service for the advancement of so good a Worke.

\* \* \*

\* \*

\*

FINIS.













